

Veritas Storage Foundation™ for Oracle Administrator's Guide

HP-UX

5.0.1



Veritas Storage Foundation™ for Oracle Administrator's Guide

The software described in this book is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of the agreement.

Product version: 5.0.1

Document version: 5.0.1.0

Legal Notice

Copyright © 2009 Symantec Corporation. All rights reserved.

Symantec, the Symantec Logo, Veritas, Veritas Storage Foundation are trademarks or registered trademarks of Symantec Corporation or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

The product described in this document is distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying, distribution, and decompilation/reverse engineering. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Symantec Corporation and its licensors, if any.

THE DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID. SYMANTEC CORPORATION SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION. THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENTATION IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE.

The Licensed Software and Documentation are deemed to be commercial computer software as defined in FAR 12.212 and subject to restricted rights as defined in FAR Section 52.227-19 "Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights" and DFARS 227.7202, "Rights in Commercial Computer Software or Commercial Computer Software Documentation", as applicable, and any successor regulations. Any use, modification, reproduction release, performance, display or disclosure of the Licensed Software and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be solely in accordance with the terms of this Agreement.

Symantec Corporation
350 Ellis Street
Mountain View, CA 94043
<http://www.symantec.com>

Technical Support

Symantec Technical Support maintains support centers globally. Technical Support's primary role is to respond to specific queries about product features and functionality. The Technical Support group also creates content for our online Knowledge Base. The Technical Support group works collaboratively with the other functional areas within Symantec to answer your questions in a timely fashion. For example, the Technical Support group works with Product Engineering and Symantec Security Response to provide alerting services and virus definition updates.

Symantec's maintenance offerings include the following:

- A range of support options that give you the flexibility to select the right amount of service for any size organization
- Telephone and Web-based support that provides rapid response and up-to-the-minute information
- Upgrade assurance that delivers automatic software upgrade protection
- Global support that is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week
- Advanced features, including Account Management Services

For information about Symantec's Maintenance Programs, you can visit our Web site at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/techsupp/

Contacting Technical Support

Customers with a current maintenance agreement may access Technical Support information at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/assistance_care.jsp

Before contacting Technical Support, make sure you have satisfied the system requirements that are listed in your product documentation. Also, you should be at the computer on which the problem occurred, in case it is necessary to replicate the problem.

When you contact Technical Support, please have the following information available:

- Product release level
- Hardware information
- Available memory, disk space, and NIC information
- Operating system

- Version and patch level
- Network topology
- Router, gateway, and IP address information
- Problem description:
 - Error messages and log files
 - Troubleshooting that was performed before contacting Symantec
 - Recent software configuration changes and network changes

Licensing and registration

If your Symantec product requires registration or a license key, access our technical support Web page at the following URL:

<https://licensing.symantec.com>

Customer service

Customer service information is available at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/techsupp/

Customer Service is available to assist with the following types of issues:

- Questions regarding product licensing or serialization
- Product registration updates, such as address or name changes
- General product information (features, language availability, local dealers)
- Latest information about product updates and upgrades
- Information about upgrade assurance and maintenance contracts
- Information about the Symantec Buying Programs
- Advice about Symantec's technical support options
- Nontechnical presales questions
- Issues that are related to CD-ROMs or manuals

Documentation feedback

Your feedback on product documentation is important to us. Send suggestions for improvements and reports on errors or omissions. Include the title and document version (located on the second page), and chapter and section titles of the text on which you are reporting. Send feedback to:

clustering_docs@symantec.com

Maintenance agreement resources

If you want to contact Symantec regarding an existing maintenance agreement, please contact the maintenance agreement administration team for your region as follows:

Asia-Pacific and Japan	customercare_apac@symantec.com
Europe, Middle-East, and Africa	semea@symantec.com
North America and Latin America	supportolutions@symantec.com

Additional enterprise services

Symantec offers a comprehensive set of services that allow you to maximize your investment in Symantec products and to develop your knowledge, expertise, and global insight, which enable you to manage your business risks proactively.

Enterprise services that are available include the following:

Symantec Early Warning Solutions	These solutions provide early warning of cyber attacks, comprehensive threat analysis, and countermeasures to prevent attacks before they occur.
Managed Security Services	These services remove the burden of managing and monitoring security devices and events, ensuring rapid response to real threats.
Consulting Services	Symantec Consulting Services provide on-site technical expertise from Symantec and its trusted partners. Symantec Consulting Services offer a variety of prepackaged and customizable options that include assessment, design, implementation, monitoring, and management capabilities. Each is focused on establishing and maintaining the integrity and availability of your IT resources.
Educational Services	Educational Services provide a full array of technical training, security education, security certification, and awareness communication programs.

To access more information about Enterprise services, please visit our Web site at the following URL:

www.symantec.com

Select your country or language from the site index.

Contents

Technical Support	4
Chapter 1 Introducing Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle	17
About Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle	17
Components of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle	18
How Veritas Volume Manager works	20
About volumes	22
About disk groups	23
About volume layouts	23
About online relayout	26
About volume resynchronization	26
About dirty region logging	27
About SmartSync recovery accelerator	27
About volume sets	27
About volume snapshots	27
About Veritas FastResync	28
About disk group split and join	29
About hot-relocation	29
About DMP-supported disk arrays	30
About dynamic LUN expansion	30
About Storage Expert	30
About cluster functionality (optional)	31
About Veritas Volume Replicator (optional)	31
How Veritas File System works	31
About Veritas Quick I/O	32
About Veritas Cached Quick I/O	32
About Veritas Concurrent I/O	32
About extent-based allocation	33
About fast file system and database recovery	33
About online system administration	33
About cross-platform data sharing	34
Support for multi-volume file systems	35
Support for large file systems and large files (optional)	35
About Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback	35

About restoring file systems using Storage Checkpoints	36
About quotas	36
About cluster functionality (optional)	37
How Veritas Storage Mapping works	37
How Veritas Database FlashSnap works	38
How Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager works	39
How Database Dynamic Storage Tiering works	39
About the vxdbd daemon	40
About Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle graphical user interface	41
About Veritas NetBackup (optional)	42
How block-level incremental backup works	42
About Veritas Storage Foundation/High Availability for Oracle (optional)	43
Chapter 2 Setting up databases	45
Tasks for setting up new databases	45
About setting up a disk group	47
Disk group configuration guidelines	47
Creating a disk group	48
Adding disks to a disk group	50
About selecting a volume layout	51
How to choose appropriate stripe unit sizes	51
How to choose between mirroring and RAID-5	52
Volume configuration guidelines	52
Creating a volume	53
Creating a volume set	54
Adding a volume to a volume set	55
File system creation guidelines	55
Creating a VxFS file system	56
Large file system and large file support	58
Multi-volume support	58
Mounting a file system	59
Unmounting a file system	60
About fragmentation	61
How to control fragmentation	61
Types of fragmentation	61
How to monitor fragmentation	62
Defragmenting a file system	62
Resizing a file system	64
Resizing a file system and the underlying volume	65

Chapter 3	Managing the SFDB repository	67
	About the SFDB repository	67
	Runtime management tasks for the SFDB repository	68
	Starting, stopping, and checking the SFDB repository with sfua_db_config	68
	Backing up and restoring the SFDB repository with sfua_rept_adm	68
	Monitoring free space for the SFDB repository	72
	Adding a new system to an HA configuration	72
	Reconfiguring virtual IP address for repository configuration	73
	Accessing an off-host repository in a non-VCS environment	74
Chapter 4	Using Veritas Quick I/O	75
	About Quick I/O	75
	How Quick I/O works	76
	How Quick I/O improves database performance	76
	About Quick I/O requirements	77
	How to set up Quick I/O	78
	Creating database files as Quick I/O files using qiomkfile	79
	Preallocating space for Quick I/O files using the setext command	82
	Accessing regular VxFS files as Quick I/O files	83
	Converting Oracle files to Quick I/O files	84
	About sparse files	90
	Handling Oracle temporary tablespaces and Quick I/O	91
	Displaying Quick I/O status and file attributes	93
	Extending a Quick I/O file	94
	Using Oracle's AUTOEXTEND with Quick I/O files	96
	Recreating Quick I/O files after restoring a database	98
	Disabling Quick I/O	99
Chapter 5	Using Veritas Cached Quick I/O	101
	About Cached Quick I/O	101
	How Cached Quick I/O works	101
	How Cached Quick I/O improves database performance	102
	How to set up Cached Quick I/O	103
	Enabling Cached Quick I/O on a file system	103
	Enabling and disabling the qio_cache_enable flag	104
	Making Cached Quick I/O settings persistent across reboots and mounts	105
	Using vxtunefs to obtain tuning information	106

	Determining candidates for Cached Quick I/O	107
	Collecting I/O statistics	108
	About I/O statistics	109
	Effects of read-aheads on I/O statistics	110
	Other tools for analysis	111
	Enabling and disabling Cached Quick I/O for individual files	111
	Setting cache advisories for individual files	111
	Making individual file settings for Cached Quick I/O persistent	112
	Determining individual file settings for Cached Quick I/O using qoadmin	113
Chapter 6	Using Veritas Concurrent I/O	115
	About Concurrent I/O	115
	How Concurrent I/O works	116
	Oracle's filesystemio_options parameter	116
	Enabling and disabling Concurrent I/O	116
	Enabling Concurrent I/O	117
	Disabling Concurrent I/O	118
Chapter 7	Using Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager	119
	About Oracle Disk Manager	119
	How Oracle Disk Manager improves database performance	120
	About Oracle Disk Manager and Oracle Managed Files	122
	How Oracle Disk Manager works with Oracle Managed Files	123
	Setting up Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager	125
	Linking the Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager library into Oracle home	126
	How to prepare existing database storage for Oracle Disk Manager	128
	Converting Quick I/O files to Oracle Disk Manager files	129
	Verifying that Oracle Disk Manager is configured	129
	Disabling the Oracle Disk Manager feature	131
Chapter 8	Using Storage Mapping	133
	About Storage Mapping	133
	Verifying Veritas Storage Mapping setup	134
	Using vxstorage_stats	135
	Displaying Storage Mapping information	136
	Displaying I/O statistics information	137

	Using dbed_analyzer	140
	Obtaining Storage Mapping information for a list of tablespaces	141
	Oracle file mapping (ORAMAP)	142
	Mapping components	143
	Storage Mapping views	143
	Verifying Oracle file mapping setup	144
	Enabling Oracle file mapping	145
	Accessing dynamic performance views	146
	Using Oracle Enterprise Manager	147
Chapter 9	Using Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback	149
	About Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback	149
	How Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback work	150
	Space requirements for Storage Checkpoints	151
	Performance of Storage Checkpoints	153
	Storage Checkpoint allocation policies	153
	Using Storage Checkpoint allocation policies	155
	Backing up and recovering the database using Storage Checkpoints	163
	Verifying a Storage Checkpoint using the command line	164
	Backing up using a Storage Checkpoint	166
	Unmounting a Storage Checkpoint	169
	Recovering a database using a Storage Checkpoint	169
	Cloning the Oracle instance using dbed_clonedb	170
	Guidelines for Oracle recovery	174
	Using the GUI to perform Storage Checkpoint-related operations	176
Chapter 10	Converting existing database configurations to VxFS	177
	About converting LVM volume groups to VxVM disk groups	177
	Converting native file systems to VxFS for Oracle Disk Manager	178
	Converting native file systems to VxFS with Quick I/O	179
	Upgrading from earlier VxFS version layouts	179
	Converting from raw devices	180

Chapter 11	Using Database Dynamic Storage Tiering	183
	About Database Dynamic Storage Tiering	183
	Database Dynamic Storage Tiering building blocks	184
	Database Dynamic Storage Tiering in a High Availability (HA) environment	185
	Configuring Database Dynamic Storage Tiering	186
	Database Dynamic Storage Tiering command requirements	186
	Defining database parameters	187
	Setting up storage classes	189
	Converting a VxFS file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system	191
	Classifying volumes into a storage class	192
	Displaying free space on your storage classes	193
	Adding new volumes to a storage class	194
	Removing volumes from a storage class	195
	Starting or stopping I/O statistic collection	195
	Dynamic Storage Tiering policy management	196
	Relocating files	196
	Relocating tablespaces	197
	Relocating table partitions	198
	Using preset policies	199
	Running Database Dynamic Storage Tiering reports	200
	Viewing modified allocation policies	200
	Viewing audit reports	200
	Extent balancing in a database environment	201
	Extent balancing file system	202
	Database Dynamic Storage Tiering use cases for Oracle	203
	Migrating partitioned data and tablespaces	203
	Scheduling the relocation of archive and Flashback logs	205
Chapter 12	Using the Space Capacity Planning Utility for Storage Checkpoints	209
	About planning file system space for Storage Checkpoints	209
	Starting the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility	210
	Creating Capacity Planning schedules	211
	Displaying Capacity Planning schedules	214
	Displaying file system space usage information	215
	Removing Capacity Planning schedules	218

Chapter 13	Using Database FlashSnap for backup and off-host processing	223
	About Veritas Database FlashSnap	224
	Typical database problems solved with Database FlashSnap	225
	About Database FlashSnap applications	225
	Database FlashSnap	226
	Database FlashSnap commands	227
	Database FlashSnap options	228
	How to plan for Database FlashSnap	229
	Snapshot mode	229
	One or two snapshot hosts	229
	Hosts and storage for Database FlashSnap	229
	Single-host configuration	230
	Two-host or Oracle RAC configuration	230
	Host and storage requirements	231
	Creating a snapshot mirror of a volume or volume set used by the database	232
	Upgrading existing volumes to use Veritas Volume Manager 5.0	243
	Upgrading from Veritas Database Edition 3.5 for Oracle with Database FlashSnap	248
	Summary of database snapshot steps	249
	Creating a snapplan (dbed_vmchecksnap)	253
	Creating multi-mirror snapshots	260
	Validating a snapplan (dbed_vmchecksnap)	263
	Displaying, copying, and removing a snapplan (dbed_vmchecksnap)	267
	Creating a snapshot (dbed_vmsnap)	270
	Backing up the database from snapshot volumes (dbed_vmclonedb)	274
	Mounting the snapshot volumes and backing up	277
	Restoring from backup	278
	Cloning a database (dbed_vmclonedb)	278
	Using Database FlashSnap to clone a database	279
	Shutting down the clone database and unmounting file systems	284
	Restarting a clone database	285
	Recreating Oracle tempfiles	285
	Resynchronizing your database to the snapshot	287
	Resynchronizing the snapshot to your database	290
	Removing a snapshot volume	292
	Using Database FlashSnap in an HA environment	292

Chapter 14	Using Veritas NetBackup for database backup	295
	About using Veritas NetBackup for backup and restore	295
	Using Veritas NetBackup to backup and restore Quick I/O files	295
	About using Veritas NetBackup to backup and restore Oracle Disk Manager files	297
Chapter 15	Tuning for performance	299
	Additional documentation	299
	About tuning VxVM	299
	About obtaining volume I/O statistics	300
	About tuning VxFS	301
	How monitoring free space works	301
	How tuning VxFS I/O parameters works	303
	About tunable VxFS I/O parameters	303
	About obtaining file I/O statistics using the Quick I/O interface	308
	About I/O statistics data	308
	Obtaining file I/O statistics using Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager	310
	About I/O statistics	311
	About tuning Oracle databases	312
	Sequential table scans	312
	Asynchronous I/O	312
	Tuning buffer cache	313
	Setting Oracle block reads during sequential scans	313
	Setting slave parameters	314
	Configuring memory allocation	314
	About tuning HP-UX	314
	max_thread_proc	315
	asyncdsk, asyncdsk_included, and max_async_ports	315
	eqmemsize	315
	nproc	315
	maxuproc	315
	semmni	315
	semmns	316
Appendix A	Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Command Line Interface	317
	Overview of commands	317
	About the command line interface	320
	Updating the repository using dbed_update	321

Checking the database configuration environment using dbed_checkconfig	322
Saving the database configuration environment using dbed_saveconfig	326
Creating Storage Checkpoints using dbed_ckptcreate	328
Displaying Storage Checkpoints using dbed_ckptdisplay	331
Mounting Storage Checkpoints using dbed_ckptmount	333
Unmounting Storage Checkpoints using dbed_ckptumount	334
Creating and working with Storage Checkpoint allocation policies using dbed_ckptpolicy	335
Administering Storage Checkpoint quotas using dbed_ckptquota	338
Performing Storage Rollback using dbed_ckptrollback	340
Removing Storage Checkpoints using dbed_ckptremove	342
Managing the Capacity Planning Utility using dbed_ckptplan	342
Cloning the Oracle instance using dbed_clonedb	343
Creating and working with snapplans using dbed_vmchecksnap	347
Creating, resynchronizing, or reverse resynchronizing a snapshot database using dbed_vmsnap	358
Creating or shutting down a clone database using dbed_vmclonedb	363
Managing log files using edgetmsg2	371
Displaying I/O mapping and statistics using vxstorage_stats	373
Mapping tablespaces to disks using dbed_analyzer	375
Defining database parameters for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using dbdst_admin	377
Setting up storage classes for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using dbdst_admin	380
Converting a VxFS file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using dbdst_convert	381
Classifying volumes into a storage class for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using dbdst_classify	382
Displaying free space on storage classes for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using dbdst_show_fs	383
Adding new volumes to a storage class for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using dbdst_addvol	384
Removing volumes from a storage class for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using dbdst_rmvol	385

	Starting or stopping I/O statistic collection for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using <code>dbdst_fstat</code>	385
	Relocating files for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using <code>dbdst_file_move</code>	386
	Relocating tablespaces for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using <code>dbdst_tbs_move</code>	387
	Relocating table partitions for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using <code>dbdst_partition_move</code>	388
	Using preset policies for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using <code>dbdst_preset_policy</code>	388
	Recreating Quick I/O files using <code>qio_recreate</code>	390
Appendix B	Using third-party software to back up files	393
	About backing up and restoring Quick I/O files using Oracle RMAN	393
	About backing up and restoring Oracle Disk Manager files using Oracle RMAN	394
	About backing up and restoring Quick I/O files using Legato NetWorker	395
	About using backup software other than Veritas NetBackup to back up and restore ODM files	396
Appendix C	Veritas Database FlashSnap status information	397
	Database FlashSnap snapshot status and database status	397
	Snapshot status details	397
	Database status details	400
Glossary	401
Index	411

Introducing Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle](#)
- [How Veritas Volume Manager works](#)
- [How Veritas File System works](#)
- [How Veritas Storage Mapping works](#)
- [How Veritas Database FlashSnap works](#)
- [How Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager works](#)
- [How Database Dynamic Storage Tiering works](#)
- [About the vxdbd daemon](#)
- [About Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle graphical user interface](#)
- [About Veritas NetBackup \(optional\)](#)
- [About Veritas Storage Foundation/High Availability for Oracle \(optional\)](#)

About Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle

There are two versions of this product:

- Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Standard Edition
- Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Enterprise Edition
The Enterprise Edition contains everything in the Standard Edition plus Storage Mapping, Database FlashSnap, Storage Checkpoints, and Storage Rollback.

Note: Veritas Storage Foundation/High Availability (HA) for Oracle is available only with the Enterprise Edition.

Unless otherwise noted, features pertain to both the Standard and Enterprise Edition products.

Components of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle combines the strengths of the core technology products with database-specific enhancements to offer performance, availability, and manageability for Oracle database servers.

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle includes the following products:

- **Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM)**

A disk management subsystem that supports disk striping, disk mirroring, and simplified disk management for improved data availability and performance.

- **Veritas File System (VxFS)**

A high-performance, fast-recovery file system that is optimized for business-critical database applications and data-intensive workloads. VxFS offers online administration, letting you perform most frequently scheduled maintenance tasks (including online backup, resizing, and file system changes) without interrupting data or system availability. VxFS also provides support for large file systems (of more than 8 exabytes in a 64-bit environment) and large files (in the exabyte range in a 64-bit environment).

Veritas File System offers the following performance-enhancing features that are of particular interest in a database environment:

- **Veritas Quick I/O** is a VxFS feature that improves the throughput for Oracle databases built on VxFS file systems. Quick I/O delivers raw device performance to databases run on VxFS, providing the administrative advantages of using file systems without the performance penalties.
- **Veritas Cached Quick I/O** further enhances database performance by leveraging large system memory to selectively buffer the frequently accessed data.
- **Veritas Concurrent I/O** improves the performance of regular files on a VxFS file system without the need for extending namespaces and presenting the files as devices. This simplifies administrative tasks and allows relational databases (such as Oracle), which do not have a sequential read/write requirement, to access files concurrently.

- A feature of the Enterprise Edition, VxFS Storage Checkpoint technology lets you create a point-in-time image of a file system. Storage Checkpoints are treated like any other VxFS file system and can be created, mounted, unmounted, and removed with VxFS and Veritas Storage Foundation administrative utilities.
- **Veritas Storage Mapping**
Storage Mapping, a feature of the Enterprise Edition, lets you take full advantage of Oracle storage mapping to map datafiles to physical devices and display storage object I/O statistics. Oracle's file mapping (I/O topology) feature was introduced beginning with Oracle9 Release 2.
Both storage object I/O statistics and the storage structure can be displayed for a specific file using either the `vxstorage_stats` command or the Veritas Storage Foundation GUI. In addition, mapping information showing which tablespaces reside on which physical disks can be obtained for a specified database using the `dbed_analyzer` command.
- **Veritas Database FlashSnap**
Database FlashSnap, a feature of the Enterprise Edition and optionally available in the Standard Edition, lets you create, resynchronize, and reverse resynchronize an online point-in-time image of a database. You can use this image to perform backup, other maintenance tasks, or off-host processing while providing continuous data availability. Also, database administrators can perform these tasks without `root` privileges. Database FlashSnap tasks may be performed through the Veritas Storage Foundation GUI or the command line interface.
- **Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager**
Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager is a custom storage interface designed specifically for Oracle9i and 10g. Oracle Disk Manager allows Oracle9i and 10g to improve performance and manage system bandwidth through an improved Application Programming Interface (API) that contains advanced kernel support for file I/O.
Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager supports Oracle Resilvering. With Oracle Resilvering, the storage layer receives information from the Oracle database as to which regions or blocks of a mirrored datafile to resync after a system crash. When using Oracle Resilvering, you can turn off VxVM Dirty Region Logging (DRL), which increases performance.
- **Database Dynamic Storage Tiering**
Database Dynamic Storage Tiering, a feature of the Enterprise Edition, enables you to manage your data so that less-frequently used data can be moved to slower, less expensive disks, allowing frequently-accessed data to be stored on the faster disks for quicker retrieval.

- **Veritas Enterprise Administrator**
Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) is the infrastructure that allows you to access Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, Veritas Volume Manager, and Veritas File System information and features through the GUI.
- **Veritas NetBackup for Oracle Advanced BLI Agent (optional)**
The Veritas NetBackup for Oracle Advanced BLI Agent software supports Block-Level Incremental (BLI) Backup to reduce database down time, backup time, and backup volume, as well as CPU usage and network overhead. (Contact your Sales Representative for information about this optional product.)

An optional High Availability (HA) version of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Enterprise Edition, which includes Veritas Cluster Server, is available for customers who have high system-availability requirements.

How Veritas Volume Manager works

Databases require their storage media to be robust and resilient to failure. It is vital to protect against hardware and disk failures and to maximize performance using all the available hardware resources. Using a volume manager provides this necessary resilience and eases the task of management. A volume manager can help you manage hundreds of disk devices and makes spanning, striping, and mirroring easy.

Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) builds virtual devices called volumes on top of physical disks. Volumes are accessed by a file system, a database, or other applications in the same way physical disk partitions would be accessed. Using volumes, VxVM provides the following administrative benefits for databases:

Table 1-1 Veritas Volume Manager features

Feature	Benefit
Spanning of multiple disks	Eliminates media size limitations.
Striping	Increases throughput and bandwidth.
Mirroring or RAID-5	Increases data availability.
Online relayout	Allows volume layout changes without application or database downtime. Online relayout can be used to change performance or reliability characteristics of underlying storage.
Volume resynchronization	Ensures that all mirrors contain exactly the same data and that the data and parity in RAID-5 volumes agree.

Table 1-1 Veritas Volume Manager features (*continued*)

Feature	Benefit
Dirty Region Logging (DRL)	Speeds the recovery of mirrored volumes after a system crash.
SmartSync Recovery Accelerator	Increases the availability of mirrored volumes by only resynchronizing changed data.
Volume snapshots	Allows backup of volumes based on disk mirroring. VxVM provides full-sized and space-optimized instant snapshots, which are online and off-host point-in-time copy solutions.
FastResync	Separately licensed, optional feature that performs quick and efficient resynchronization of stale mirrors. FastResync is included with the Enterprise Edition and is also included as part of the Veritas FlashSnap option with the Standard Edition.
Disk group split and join	Separately licensed, optional feature that supports general disk group reorganization and allows you to move volume snapshots to another host for off-host backup. Disk group split and join is included with the Enterprise Edition and is also included as part of the Veritas FlashSnap option with the Standard Edition.
Hot-relocation	Automatically restores data redundancy in mirrored and RAID-5 volumes when a disk fails.
Dynamic multipathing (DMP)	Allows for transparent failover, load sharing, and hot plugging of physical disks.
Volume sets	Allows several volumes to be represented by a single logical mount device.
Dynamic LUN Expansion	Allows you to resize a disk after it has been initialized while preserving the existing data on the disk.
Storage Expert	Helps diagnose configuration problems with VxVM.
Cluster Volume Manager (CVM)	Separately licensed, optional feature that allows you to use VxVM in a cluster environment.

Table 1-1 Veritas Volume Manager features (*continued*)

Feature	Benefit
Veritas FlashSnap Agent for Symmetrix	Separately licensed, optional feature that includes a set of commands that allows you to use EMC TimeFinder in conjunction with VxVM disk groups and volumes that have been created on Symmetrix standard devices.
Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR)	Separately licensed, optional feature that provides data replication for disaster recovery solutions.
Free space pool management	Simplifies administration and provides flexible use of available hardware.
Online administration	Allows configuration changes without system or database down time.

For a more detailed description of VxVM and its features, refer to the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

About volumes

A volume is a virtual disk device that appears to applications, databases, and file systems like a physical disk partition without the physical limitations of a disk partition. A volume consists of one or more plexes, each holding a copy of the selected data in the volume. Due to its virtual nature, a volume is not restricted to a particular disk or a specific area of a disk. For example, a volume can span multiple disks and can be used to create a large file system.

Volumes consist of other virtual objects that can be manipulated to change the volume's configuration. Volumes and their virtual components are referred to as Volume Manager objects. You can manipulate Veritas Volume Manager objects in a variety of ways to optimize performance, provide redundancy of data, and perform backups or other administrative tasks on one or more physical disks without interrupting applications. As a result, data availability and disk subsystem throughput are improved.

You can change the configuration of a volume without causing disruption to databases or file systems that are using the volume. For example, you can mirror a volume on separate disks or move the volume to use different disk storage.

About disk groups

A disk group is a collection of disks that share a common configuration (for example, configuration objects that belong to a single database). We recommend creating one disk group for each database.

You can move a disk group and its components as a unit from one host to another host. For example, you can move volumes and file systems that belong to the same database and are created within one disk group as a unit. You must configure a given volume from disks belonging to one disk group.

In releases before Veritas Storage Foundation 4.0 for Oracle, the default disk group was `rootdg`. For VxVM to function, the `rootdg` disk group had to exist and it had to contain at least one disk. This requirement no longer exists, and VxVM can work without any disk groups configured (although you must set up at least one disk group before you can create any volumes of other VxVM objects).

About volume layouts

A Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) is a disk array in which a group of disks appears to the system as a single virtual disk or a single volume. VxVM supports several RAID implementations, as well as spanning.

The following volume layouts are available to satisfy different database configuration requirements:

- Spanning and concatenation
- Striping (RAID-0)
- Mirroring (RAID-1)
- Mirrored-Stripe Volumes (RAID-0+1)
- Striped-Mirror Volumes (RAID-1+0)
- RAID-5

Caution: Spanning or striping a volume across multiple disks increases the chance that a disk failure will result in failure of that volume. Use mirroring or RAID-5 to substantially reduce the chance of a single volume failure caused by a single disk failure.

How spanning and concatenation work

Concatenation maps data in a linear manner onto one or more subdisks in a plex. To access all of the data in a concatenated plex sequentially, data is first accessed

in the first subdisk from beginning to end. Data is then accessed in the remaining subdisks sequentially from beginning to end, until the end of the last subdisk.

You can use concatenation with multiple subdisks when there is insufficient contiguous space for the plex on any one disk. This form of concatenation can be used for load balancing between disks, and for head movement optimization on a particular disk.

Concatenation using subdisks that reside on more than one VxVM disk is called spanning.

Warning: Spanning a plex across multiple disks increases the chance that a disk failure results in failure of the assigned volume. Use mirroring (RAID-1) or striping with parity (RAID-5) to reduce the risk that a single disk failure results in a volume failure.

Spanning is useful when you need to read or write data sequentially (for example, reading from or writing to database redo logs) and there is not sufficient contiguous space.

How striping (RAID-0) works

Striping is a technique of mapping data so that the data is interleaved among multiple physical disks. Data is allocated in equal-sized units (called stripe units) that are interleaved between the disks. Each stripe unit is a set of contiguous blocks on a disk. A stripe consists of the set of stripe units at the same position across all columns. A column is a set of one or more subdisks within a striped plex.

Striping is useful if you need large amounts of data written to or read from physical disks, and performance is important. Striping is also helpful in balancing the I/O load from multi-user applications across multiple disks. By using parallel data transfer to and from multiple disks, striping significantly improves data-access performance.

When striping across multiple disks, failure of any one disk will make the entire volume unusable.

How mirroring (RAID-1) works

Mirroring is a technique of using multiple copies of the data, or mirrors, to duplicate the information contained in a volume. In the event of a physical disk failure, the mirror on the failed disk becomes unavailable, but the system continues to operate using the unaffected mirrors. For this reason, mirroring increases system reliability and availability. A volume requires at least two mirrors to

provide redundancy of data. A volume can consist of up to 32 mirrors. Each of these mirrors must contain disk space from different disks for the redundancy to be effective.

How striping plus mirroring (mirrored-stripe or RAID-0+1) works

VxVM supports the combination of mirroring above striping. The combined layout is called a mirrored-stripe layout. A mirrored-stripe layout offers the dual benefits of striping to spread data across multiple disks, while mirroring provides redundancy of data. For mirroring above striping to be effective, the striped plex and its mirrors must be allocated from separate disks.

The layout type of the data plexes in a mirror can be concatenated or striped. Even if only one is striped, the volume is still termed a mirrored-stripe volume. If they are all concatenated, the volume is termed a mirrored-concatenated volume.

How mirroring plus striping (striped-mirror, RAID-1+0 or RAID-10) works

VxVM supports the combination of striping above mirroring. This combined layout is called a striped-mirror layout and mirrors each column of the stripe. If there are multiple subdisks per column, each subdisk can be mirrored individually instead of each column. A striped-mirror volume is an example of a layered volume.

Compared to a mirrored-stripe volume, a striped-mirror volume offers the dual benefits of striping to spread data across multiple disks, while mirroring provides redundancy of data. A striped-mirror volume enhances redundancy, which makes it more tolerant of disk failure, and reduces recovery time after disk failure.

For databases that support online transaction processing (OLTP) workloads, we recommend either mirrored-stripe or striped-mirror volumes to improve database performance and reliability. For highest availability, we recommend striped-mirror volumes (RAID 1+0).

How striping with parity (RAID-5) works

RAID-5 provides data redundancy through the use of parity (a calculated value that the system uses to reconstruct data after a failure). While data is written to a RAID-5 volume, parity is also calculated by performing an exclusive OR (XOR) procedure on data. The resulting parity is then written to another part of the volume. If a portion of a RAID-5 volume fails, the data that was on that portion of the failed volume can be recreated from the remaining data and the parity.

RAID-5 offers data redundancy similar to mirroring, while requiring less disk space. RAID-5 read performance is similar to that of striping but with relatively

slow write performance. RAID-5 is useful if the database workload is read-intensive (as in many data warehousing applications). You can snapshot a RAID-5 volume and move a RAID-5 subdisk without losing redundancy.

About online relayout

As databases grow and usage patterns change, online relayout lets you change volumes to a different layout, with uninterrupted data access. Relayout is accomplished online and in place. Use online relayout to change the redundancy or performance characteristics of the storage, such as data organization (RAID levels), the number of columns for RAID-5 and striped volumes, and stripe unit size.

About volume resynchronization

When storing data redundantly, using mirrored or RAID-5 volumes, Veritas Volume Manager ensures that all copies of the data match exactly. However, if the system crashes, small amounts of the redundant data on a volume can become inconsistent or unsynchronized. For mirrored volumes, unsynchronized data can cause two reads from the same region of the volume to return different results if different mirrors are used to satisfy the read request. In the case of RAID-5 volumes, unsynchronized data can lead to parity corruption and incorrect data reconstruction.

In the event of a system crash, Veritas Volume Manager ensures that all mirrors contain exactly the same data and that the data and parity in RAID-5 volumes agree. This process is called volume resynchronization. Not all volumes require resynchronization after a system failure. VxVM notices when a volume is first written and marks it as dirty. Only volumes that are marked dirty when the system reboots require resynchronization.

The process of resynchronization can impact system and database performance. However, it does not affect the availability of the database after system reboot. You can immediately access the database after database recovery although the performance may suffer due to resynchronization. For very large volumes or for a very large number of volumes, the resynchronization process can take a long time. You can significantly reduce resynchronization time by using Dirty Region Logging (DRL) for mirrored volumes or by making sure that RAID-5 volumes have valid RAID-5 logs. However, using logs can slightly reduce the database write performance.

For most database configurations, we recommend using dirty region logs or the RAID-5 logs when mirrored or RAID-5 volumes are used. It is also advisable to evaluate the database performance requirements to determine the optimal volume configurations for the databases.

About dirty region logging

Dirty region logging (DRL), if enabled, speeds the recovery of mirrored volumes after a system crash. DRL keeps track of the regions that have changed due to I/O writes to a mirrored volume. DRL uses this information to recover only those portions of the volume that need to be recovered.

Note: If a version 20 data change object (DCO) volume is associated with a volume, a portion of the DCO volume can be used to store the DRL log. There is no need to create a separate DRL log for a volume that has a version 20 DCO volume.

For more information on DCOs and DCO volumes, see the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

About SmartSync recovery accelerator

SmartSync increases the availability of mirrored volumes by only resynchronizing changed data. SmartSync reduces the time required to restore consistency, freeing more I/O bandwidth for business-critical applications.

This feature is applicable only to databases that are configured on raw volumes. If supported by the database vendor, the SmartSync feature uses an extended interface between VxVM volumes and the database software to avoid unnecessary work during mirror resynchronization. For example, Oracle automatically takes advantage of SmartSync to perform database resynchronization when it is available.

About volume sets

Volume sets are an enhancement to VxVM that allow several volumes to be represented by a single logical mount device. All I/O from and to the underlying volumes is directed via the I/O interfaces of the volume set. The volume set feature supports the multi-device enhancement to Veritas File System (VxFS). This feature allows file systems to make best use of the different performance and availability characteristics of the underlying volumes. For example, file system metadata could be stored on volumes with higher redundancy, and user data on volumes with better performance.

About volume snapshots

A volume snapshot is a point-in-time image of a volume. Veritas Volume Manager provides three volume snapshot features based on disk mirroring:

- Full-sized instant snapshots

- Space-optimized instant snapshots
- Emulation of third-mirror snapshots

See [“About Veritas Database FlashSnap”](#) on page 224.

About Veritas FastResync

Veritas FastResync (previously called Fast Mirror Resynchronization or FMR) is included with the Enterprise Edition. It is also included as part of the Veritas FlashSnap option with the Standard Edition.

Veritas FastResync performs quick and efficient resynchronization of stale mirrors (mirrors that are not synchronized). This increases the efficiency of the VxVM snapshot mechanism, and improves the performance of operations such as backup and decision support. Typically, these operations require that the volume is quiescent, and that they are not impeded by updates to the volume by other activities on the system. To achieve these goals, the snapshot mechanism in VxVM creates an exact copy of a primary volume at an instant in time. After a snapshot is taken, it can be accessed independently of the volume from which it was taken.

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Enterprise Edition includes a feature called Database FlashSnap, which takes advantage of the FastResync and disk group split and join features. Database FlashSnap provides a quicker and easier way for database administrators to use volume snapshots.

See [“How Veritas Volume Manager works”](#) on page 20.

See [“How Veritas Database FlashSnap works”](#) on page 38.

How non-persistent FastResync works

Non-persistent FastResync allocates its change maps in memory. When non-persistent FastResync is enabled, a separate FastResync map is assigned for the original volume as well as for each snapshot volume. Unlike a dirty region log (DRL), these maps do not reside on disk nor in persistent store. The advantage is that updates to the FastResync map have little impact on I/O performance, as no disk updates need to be performed. However, if a system is rebooted, the information in the map is lost, so a full resynchronization is required when performing a snapback operation. This limitation can be overcome for volumes in cluster-shareable disk groups, provided that at least one of the nodes in the cluster remains running to preserve the FastResync map in its memory.

How persistent FastResync works

Non-persistent FastResync has been augmented by the introduction of persistent FastResync. Unlike non-persistent FastResync, Persistent FastResync keeps the

FastResync maps on disk so that they can survive system reboots and system crashes. When the disk groups are rejoined, this allows the snapshot plexes to be quickly resynchronized. This ability is not supported by non-persistent FastResync.

If persistent FastResync is enabled on a volume or on a snapshot volume, a DCO and a DCO log volume are associated with the volume.

The DCO object is used not only to manage FastResync maps, but also to manage DRL recovery maps and special maps called copy maps that allow instant snapshot operations to be resume following a system crash.

Persistent FastResync can also track the association between volumes and their snapshot volumes after they are moved into different disk groups. When the disk groups are rejoined, this allows the snapshot plexes to be quickly resynchronized. This ability is not supported by non-persistent FastResync.

About disk group split and join

Disk group split and join is included with the Enterprise Edition. It is also included as part of the Veritas FlashSnap option with the Standard Edition.

VxVM provides a disk group content reorganization feature that supports general disk group reorganization and allows you to move volume snapshots to another host for off-host backup. Additional options to the `vxchg` command enable you to take advantage of the ability to remove all VxVM objects from an imported disk group and move them to a newly created target disk group (split), and to remove all VxVM objects from an imported disk group and move them to an imported target disk group (join). The move operation enables you to move a self-contained set of VxVM objects between the imported disk groups.

About hot-relocation

In addition to providing volume layouts that help improve database performance and availability, VxVM offers features that you can use to further improve system availability in the event of a disk failure. Hot-relocation is a feature that allows a system to react automatically to I/O failures on mirrored or RAID-5 volumes and restore redundancy and access to those volumes.

VxVM detects I/O failures on volumes and relocates the affected portions to disks designated as spare disks or free space within the disk group. VxVM then reconstructs the volumes that existed before the failure and makes them redundant and accessible again.

The hot-relocation feature is enabled by default and is recommended for most database configurations. After hot-relocation occurs, we recommend verifying

the volume configuration for any possible performance impact. It is also a good idea to designate additional disks as spares to augment the spare pool.

While a disk is designated as a spare, you cannot use the space on that disk for the creation of VxVM objects within its disk group. VxVM also lets you free a spare disk for general use by removing it from the pool of hot-relocation disks.

About DMP-supported disk arrays

VxVM provides administrative utilities and driver support for disk arrays that can take advantage of its Dynamic Multipathing (DMP) feature. Some disk arrays provide multiple ports to access their disk devices. These ports, coupled with the host bus adaptor (HBA) controller and any data bus or I/O processor local to the array, make up multiple hardware paths to access the disk devices. Such disk arrays are called multipathed disk arrays. This type of disk array can be connected to host systems in many different configurations, (such as multiple ports connected to different controllers on a single host, chaining of the ports through a single controller on a host, or ports connected to different hosts simultaneously). DMP is available for multiported disk arrays from various vendors and provides improved reliability and performance by using path failover and load balancing.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Hardware Notes*.

About dynamic LUN expansion

Dynamic LUN expansion allows you to resize a disk after it has been initialized while preserving the existing data on the disk.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

About Storage Expert

Storage Expert consists of a set of simple commands that collect VxVM configuration data and compare it with “best practice.” Storage Expert then produces a summary report that shows which objects do not meet these criteria and makes recommendations for VxVM configuration improvements.

These user-configurable tools help you as an administrator to verify and validate systems and non-optimal configurations in both small and large VxVM installations.

Storage Expert components include a set of rule scripts and a rules engine. The rules engine runs the scripts and produces ASCII output, which is organized and archived by Storage Expert's report generator. This output contains information about areas of VxVM configuration that do not meet the set criteria. By default,

output is sent to the screen, but you can redirect it to a file using standard UNIX redirection.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

About cluster functionality (optional)

VxVM includes an optional, separately licensable clustering feature, known as Cluster Volume Manager, that enables VxVM to be used in a cluster environment. With the clustering option, VxVM supports up to 16 nodes per cluster.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

About Veritas Volume Replicator (optional)

Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR) is an optional, separately licensable feature of VxVM. VVR is a data replication tool designed to maintain a consistent copy of application data at a remote site. It is built to contribute to an effective disaster recovery plan. If the data center is destroyed, the application data is immediately available at the remote site, and the application can be restarted at the remote site.

VVR works as a fully integrated component of VxVM. VVR benefits from the robustness, ease of use, and high performance of VxVM and, at the same time, adds replication capability to VxVM. VVR can use existing VxVM configurations with some restrictions. Any application, even with existing data, can be configured to use VVR transparently.

See the Veritas Volume Replicator documentation.

How Veritas File System works

Veritas File System (referred to as VxFS) is an extent-based, intent logging file system intended for use in UNIX environments that deal with large volumes of data and that require high file system performance, availability, and manageability. VxFS also provides enhancements that make file systems more viable in database environments.

The VxFS file system included in this product has all the features of the optional HP OnlineJFS file system product available from HP-UX; however, VxFS also includes Quick I/O, Storage Checkpoints, and Storage Rollback. In this document, the terms “VxFS” and “HP OnlineJFS” are synonymous in all contexts except in relation to Quick I/O, Storage Checkpoints, and Storage Rollback.

The following sections provide a brief overview of VxFS concepts and features that are relevant to database administration.

See the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

About Veritas Quick I/O

Databases can run on either file systems or raw devices. Database administrators often create their databases on file systems because it makes common administrative tasks (such as moving, copying, and backing up) easier. However, running databases on most file systems significantly reduces database performance.

When performance is an issue, database administrators create their databases on raw devices. VxFS with Quick I/O presents regular, preallocated files as raw character devices to the application. Using Quick I/O, you can enjoy the management advantages of databases created on file systems and achieve the same performance as databases created on raw devices.

Quick I/O can be used on Oracle9 and Oracle 10. If you are using Oracle9 or Oracle 10, it is recommended that you use Oracle Disk Manager.

See [“About Quick I/O”](#) on page 75.

About Veritas Cached Quick I/O

Cached Quick I/O allows databases to make more efficient use of large system memory while still maintaining the performance benefits of Quick I/O. Cached Quick I/O provides an efficient, selective buffering mechanism to back asynchronous I/O. Using Cached Quick I/O, you can enjoy all the benefits of Quick I/O and achieve even better performance.

Cached Quick I/O is first enabled for the file system and then enabled on a per file basis.

See [“About Cached Quick I/O”](#) on page 101.

About Veritas Concurrent I/O

Veritas Concurrent I/O improves the performance of regular files on a VxFS file system without the need for extending namespaces and presenting the files as devices. This simplifies administrative tasks and allows databases, which do not have a sequential read/write requirement, to access files concurrently.

Veritas Concurrent I/O allows for concurrency between a single writer and multiple readers or between multiple writers. It minimizes serialization for extending writes and sends I/O requests directly to file systems.

See [“About Concurrent I/O”](#) on page 115.

About extent-based allocation

The HFS file system supplied with HP-UX uses block-based allocation schemes that provide good random access to files and acceptable latency on small files. For larger files, like database files, this block-based architecture limits throughput. This limitation makes the HFS file system a less than optimal choice for database environments.

When storage is allocated to a file on a VxFS file system, it is grouped in extents, as opposed to being allocated a block at a time as with the HFS file system.

By allocating disk space to files in extents, disk I/O to and from a file can be done in units of multiple blocks. This type of I/O can occur if storage is allocated in units of consecutive blocks. For sequential I/O, multiple block operations are considerably faster than block-at-a-time operations. Almost all disk drives accept I/O operations of multiple blocks.

The VxFS file system allocates disk space to files in groups of one or more extents. VxFS also allows applications to control some aspects of the extent allocation for a given file. Extent attributes are the extent allocation policies associated with a file.

See [“Preallocating space for Quick I/O files using the `setext` command”](#) on page 82.

About fast file system and database recovery

Veritas File System begins recovery procedures within seconds after a system failure by using a tracking feature called intent logging. This feature records pending changes to the file system structure in a circular intent log. The intent log recovery feature is not readily apparent to users or a system administrator except during a system failure. During system failure recovery, the VxFS `fsck` utility performs an intent log replay, which scans the intent log and nullifies or completes file system operations that were active when the system failed. The file system can then be mounted without completing a full structural check of the entire file system. Replaying the intent log may not completely recover the damaged file system structure if there was a disk hardware failure; hardware problems may require a complete system check using the `fsck` utility provided with Veritas File System.

About online system administration

The VxFS file system provides online system administration utilities to help resolve certain problems that impact database performance. You can defragment and resize a VxFS file system while it remains online and accessible to users.

How the defragmentation utility works

Free resources are originally aligned in the most efficient order possible and are allocated to files in a way that is considered by the system to provide optimal performance. When a file system is active for extended periods of time, new files are created, old files are removed, and existing files grow and shrink. Over time, the original ordering of free resources is lost and the file system tends to spread across the disk, leaving unused gaps or fragments between areas that are in use. This process, known as fragmentation, leads to degraded performance because the file system has fewer choices when selecting an extent (a group of contiguous data blocks) to assign to a file. You should analyze the degree of fragmentation before creating new database files.

VxFS provides the online administration utility `fsadm` to resolve fragmentation problems. The utility can be run on demand and should be scheduled regularly as a `cron` job.

How the resizing utility works

Changes in database size can result in file systems that are too large or too small for the current database. Without special utilities, expanding or shrinking a file system includes the following administrative operations: stopping applications, offloading the contents of the file system, rebuilding the file system to a new size, and then restoring the data. Data is unavailable to users while these administrative tasks are performed.

The VxFS file system utility `fsadm` provides a mechanism to resize file systems without unmounting them or interrupting users' productivity. Because the VxFS file system can only be mounted on one device, expanding a file system means that the underlying device must also be expandable while the file system is mounted. Working with VxVM, VxFS provides online expansion capability.

About cross-platform data sharing

Veritas Cross-Platform Data Sharing allows data to be serially shared among heterogeneous systems where each system has direct access to the physical devices that hold the data. This feature can be used only in conjunction with Veritas Volume Manager. Shared or parallel access is possible for read-only data.

Cross-Platform Data Sharing provides the fastest way to use Oracle's Transportable Tablespace (TTS) feature for migrating databases to different platforms in Oracle 10g or for moving sets of tablespaces between databases on the same platform in Oracle9.

See the *Veritas Storage Foundation Cross-Platform Data Sharing Administrator's Guide*.

Support for multi-volume file systems

The multi-volume file system (MVS) feature allows several volumes to be represented by a single logical object. All I/O to and from an underlying logical volume is directed by way of volume sets. A volume set is a container for multiple different volumes. This feature can be used only in conjunction with Veritas Volume Manager.

Support for large file systems and large files (optional)

Support for large file systems is included with the Enterprise Edition.

In conjunction with VxVM, VxFS can support file systems up to two terabytes in size.

For large database configurations, this eliminates the need to use multiple file systems because of the size limitations of the underlying physical devices.

Changes implemented starting with the VxFS Version 3 disk layout have greatly expanded file system scalability, including support for large files.

You can create or mount file systems with or without large files by specifying either the `largefiles` or `nolargefiles` option in `mkfs` or `mount` commands.

See [“Creating a VxFS file system ”](#) on page 56.

About Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback

The Storage Checkpoint and Storage Rollback features are included with the Enterprise Edition. With the Standard Edition, they can be purchased as part of the Veritas FlashSnap option.

Veritas File System provides a Storage Checkpoint facility that allows you to create a persistent, point-in-time image of all user files in a file system—the Storage Checkpoint remains even after the file system is unmounted or the system is rebooted. Storage Checkpoints present a view of a file system at a point in time, and subsequently identifies and maintains copies of the original file system blocks. Instead of using a disk-based mirroring method, Storage Checkpoints save disk space and significantly reduce I/O overhead by using the free space pool available to a file system.

The time required to create a Storage Checkpoint is typically only a couple of seconds. After a Storage Checkpoint is created, a consistent database backup image is made and the database can then resume its normal operation.

The Storage Rollback facility can then be used for rolling back the file system image to the point in time when the Storage Checkpoints were taken. In addition,

Storage Checkpoints also keep track of the block change information that enables incremental database backup at the block level.

Storage Checkpoints are writable, and can be created, mounted, and removed. Performance enhancements in maintaining Data Storage Checkpoints (Storage Checkpoints that are complete images of the file system) makes using the Storage Rollback feature easier and more efficient, therefore more viable for backing up large databases.

Multi-Volume File System (MVS) Storage Checkpoint creation allows database backups without having to shut down the database.

MVSs provide the ability to create and administer Storage Checkpoint allocation policies. Storage Checkpoint allocation policies specify a list of volumes and the order in which Storage Checkpoint data is allocated to them. These allocation policies can be used to control where a Storage Checkpoint is created, allowing for separating Storage Checkpoint metadata and data onto different volumes. They can also be used to isolate data allocated to a Storage Checkpoint from the primary file system, which can help prevent the Storage Checkpoint from fragmenting space in the primary file system.

See [“About Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback”](#) on page 149.

About restoring file systems using Storage Checkpoints

Storage Checkpoints can be used by backup and restore applications to restore either individual files or an entire file system. Restoring from Storage Checkpoints can recover data from incorrectly modified files, but typically cannot be used to recover from hardware damage or other file system integrity problems. File restoration can be done using the `fsckpt_restore(1M)` command.

See the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

About quotas

VxFS supports quotas, which allocate per-user and per-group quotas and limit the use of two principal resources: files and data blocks. You can assign quotas for each of these resources.

Each quota consists of two limits for each resource:

- The hard limit represents an absolute limit on data blocks or files. A user can never exceed the hard limit under any circumstances.
- The soft limit is lower than the hard limit and can be exceeded for a limited amount of time. This allows users to temporarily exceed limits as long as they fall under those limits before the allotted time expires.

You can use quotas to limit the amount of file system space used by Storage Checkpoints.

With Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, you can enable, disable, set, and display quota values for a single file system, for multiple file systems, or for all file systems in a database using the `dbed_ckptquota` command.

See “[Administering Storage Checkpoint quotas using `dbed_ckptquota`](#)” on page 338.

See the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

About cluster functionality (optional)

File system clustering is an optional, separately licensed feature of VxFS, where one system is configured as a primary server for the file system, and the remaining members of a cluster are configured as secondary servers. All servers access shared disks for file data operations. If the primary server fails, one of the secondary servers takes over the file system operations.

See the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

How Veritas Storage Mapping works

Veritas Storage Mapping is a feature included with Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Enterprise Edition.

Veritas has defined and implemented a library called Veritas Mapping Service (VxMS) that provides a mapping interface to VxFS file systems, VxVM volumes, and physical disks. With Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, you can take advantage of this feature to map datafiles or containers, depending on your database, to physical devices and display storage object I/O statistics. With the `vxstorage_stats` command, you can view the complete I/O topology mapping of datafiles or containers through intermediate layers like logical volumes down to actual physical devices. You can also use `vxstorage_stats` to view statistics for VxFS file systems, VxVM volumes, and physical devices. This information can be used to determine the exact location of a data block on a disk and to help identify hot spots.

In addition to `vxstorage_stats`, you can use the `dbed_analyzer` command to obtain tablespace-to-physical disk mapping information for all the datafiles in a specified database. The command also provides information about the amount of disk space being used by a tablespace. Because the `dbed_analyzer` command output can be long, it is written to a file for easier viewing.

This command can help you avoid I/O contention. For example, you can use the information to avoid backing up two tablespaces that share the same physical disk.

Both storage object statistics and the storage structure are displayed in the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle GUI.

See [“About Storage Mapping”](#) on page 133.

How Veritas Database FlashSnap works

Veritas Database FlashSnap is a feature included with Veritas Storage Foundation Enterprise Edition. It is also a separately licensed option available with Veritas Storage Foundation Standard Edition.

Veritas Database FlashSnap offers a flexible and efficient means of managing business-critical data. Database FlashSnap lets you capture an online image of an actively changing database at a given instant, called a point-in-time copy. You can perform system backup, upgrade, or perform other maintenance tasks on point-in-time copies while providing continuous availability of your critical data. If required, you can offload processing of the point-in-time copies onto another host to avoid contention for system resources on your production server.

Database FlashSnap takes advantage of the Persistent FastResync and Disk Group Content Reorganization features of VxVM. Database FlashSnap also streamlines database operations. Once configured, the database administrator can create snapshots, resynchronize data, and reverse resynchronize data without involving the system administrator.

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle provides three commands that can be executed by the database administrator and do not require root privileges:

- `dbed_vmchecksnap`
- `dbed_vmsnap`
- `dbed_vmclonedb`

These commands let database administrators take advantage of the VxVM snapshot functionality without having to deal with storage operations in day-to-day database uses. To use Database FlashSnap, you must configure the volumes used by the database.

See [“Hosts and storage for Database FlashSnap”](#) on page 229.

How Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager works

Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager is a custom storage interface defined by Oracle Corporation first introduced in Oracle9. Oracle Disk Manager allows Oracle9 and above to exploit system bandwidth through an improved Application Programming Interface (API) that contains advanced kernel support for file I/O. Oracle Disk Manager reduces administration overhead by providing enhanced support for the Oracle Managed Files (OMF) infrastructure also introduced beginning with Oracle9. Combining Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager with Oracle9 offers better database throughput for I/O intensive workloads due to specialized I/O features that greatly improve the I/O system call profile for such key Oracle server processes as the Log Writer and Database Writers.

With Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager, Oracle9 or Oracle 10 is able to use the same system calls for datafiles stored in the Veritas File System as they do with raw partitions. Oracle Disk Manager files look just like ordinary file system files and can be handled as such. Care is given within Oracle Disk Manager to ensure files are created with contiguous disk blocks automatically for improved sequential file access performance. Oracle Disk Manager files can be backed up and recovered through Veritas NetBackup, Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN), or other backup software.

Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager supports Oracle Resilvering. With Oracle Resilvering, the storage layer receives information from the Oracle database as to which regions or blocks of a mirrored datafile require resynchronization after a system crash. When using Oracle Resilvering, you can turn off VxVM Dirty Region Logging (DRL), which increases performance.

Oracle Resilvering is supported at the operating system and application levels.

How Database Dynamic Storage Tiering works

Today, more and more data needs to be retained. Eventually, some of the data is no longer needed as frequently, but it still takes up a large amount of disk space. Database Dynamic Storage Tiering matches data storage with the data's usage requirements so that data is relocated based on requirements determined by the database administrator (DBA). The feature enables you to manage your data so that less-frequently used data can be moved to slower, less expensive disks, allowing frequently-accessed data to be stored on the faster disks for quicker retrieval.

The DBA can create a file allocation policy based on filename extension before new files are created, which will create the datafiles on the appropriate tier during database creation.

The DBA can also create a file relocation policy for database files, which would relocate files based on how frequently a file is used.

See “[About Database Dynamic Storage Tiering](#)” on page 183.

About the vxdbd daemon

The vxdbd daemon handles communication to and from the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle software. By default, vxdbd communicates with Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle over port number 3233. If there are conflicts with this port or other port-related problems, you can change the port by changing the VXDBD_SOCKET setting located in the `/etc/vx/vxdbed/admin.properties` file.

Normally the vxdbd daemon starts automatically when the host boots up. However, if the daemon reports errors or if the daemon process dies, you may have to manually start or stop it. There is also a `status` command that reports the current state of the daemon to confirm that it is currently running.

Only the root user can stop vxdbd. Any user can start vxdbd or display its status.

Note: You must have a valid HOME directory for vxdbd to work correctly with several Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle features. If you receive the following error message, but you confirm that vxdbd is running (using `ps -ef | grep vxdbd` rather than `vxdbdctl status`), you may not have a valid HOME directory or it may not be available to vxdbd:

```
VXDBA_PRODUCT exec_remote ERROR V-81-7700 Can not connect to the vxdbd.
```

To see the status of the vxdbd daemon

- ◆ Use the `vxdbdctl status` command:

```
/opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/vxdbdctl status
```

If the daemon is running you see the following output:

```
Status of Veritas vxdbd
/opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/vxdbd ping SUCCESS
```

To start the vxdbd daemon

- ◆ Use the `vxdbdctl start` command:

```
/opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/vxdbdctl start
```


To stop the vxdbd daemon

- ◆ As root, use the `vxdbdctrl stop` command:

```
/opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/vxdbdctrl stop
```

To change the communications port used by the vxdbd daemon

- 1 As the root user, stop the vxdbd daemon:

```
/opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/vxdbdctrl stop
```

- 2 In the `/etc/vx/vxbed/admin.properties` file, change the value of the `VXDBD_SOCKET` variable to a new port number:

```
VXDBD_SOCKET=3233
```

- 3 Restart the vxdbd daemon:

```
/opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/vxdbdctrl start
```

- 4 If the system is part of a multi-host configuration, change the port on all hosts involved by repeating this procedure on each host.
- 5 Restart the DBED agent `vxpal`.

See the section "Starting the DBED agent" in the *Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Graphical User Interface Guide*.

About Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle graphical user interface

An alternative to the command line interface, the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle GUI allows you to manage the storage used by databases.

In this release, Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle offers both a Java-based GUI and a Web-based GUI. The Web-based GUI does not contain the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering functionality or the scheduler functionality.

You can use the GUI to:

- Display database, tablespace, datafile, and file system information and manage the database state.
- Manage volume and file movement with Database Dynamic Storage Tiering. With this feature, you can also get reports on file usage. (Java-based GUI only.)
- Create, display, mount, unmount, and remove Storage Checkpoints.

- Automate tasks, such as creating or cloning a database using a Storage Checkpoint, with the scheduler. (Java-based GUI only.)
- Roll back databases, tablespaces, or datafiles to Storage Checkpoints.
- Collect and display statistics on file system and Oracle space usage.
- Collect and display storage object I/O statistics and the storage structure.
- Monitor file system and Oracle datafile space usage and automatically grow the file system as needed.
- Examine volumes used by the file systems and overall system configuration.
- Start or stop instances or duplicate databases. You can duplicate a database using Storage Checkpoints or Database FlashSnap.
- Create or shut down a clone database.
- Create, modify, validate, or remove snapplans.
- Create, resynchronize, or reverse resynchronize a snapshot database.

For more information, see the appropriate online help and the *Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Graphic User Interface Guide*.

About Veritas NetBackup (optional)

Veritas NetBackup provides backup, archive, and restore capabilities for database files and directories contained on client systems in a client-server network. NetBackup server software resides on platforms that manage physical backup storage devices. The NetBackup server provides robotic control, media management, error handling, scheduling, and a repository of all client backup images.

Administrators can set up schedules for automatic, unattended full and incremental backups. These backups are managed entirely by the NetBackup server. The administrator can also manually back up clients. Client users can perform backups, archives, and restores from their client system, and once started, these operations also run under the control of the NetBackup server.

Veritas NetBackup, while not a shipped component of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, can be purchased separately.

How block-level incremental backup works

Block-Level Incremental (BLI) Backup extends the capabilities of NetBackup to back up only changed data blocks of Oracle database files. BLI Backup accomplishes this backup methodology using the Storage Checkpoint facility in the Veritas File

System (VxFS) available through Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle. BLI Backup reduces both the time required to complete a database backup and the amount of data transferred during backups. It also allows more frequent backups, resulting in more up-to-date backup images. When restoring from backups, the restore time is increased only by the extra time needed for NetBackup to apply the incremental backups after a full restore completes. However, frequent incremental backups can speed up the database recovery by reducing the number of redo logs to apply.

BLI Backup is particularly useful in a database environment where a database can be hundreds of gigabytes or terabytes. Using traditional backup methods for an offline database backup, any change in the database file—no matter how small—requires backing up the entire database file. Using BLI Backup, only modified data blocks need to be backed up.

Note: To allow BLI Backups, the database must be on VxFS file systems using the Version 4, 5, 6, or 7 layout, and you must have a valid Veritas Storage Foundation license. Use the command to determine the layout version of your file system. See the (1M) manual page for more information.

See “[Upgrading from earlier VxFS version layouts](#)” on page 179.

For information on how to install, configure, and use Veritas NetBackup for Oracle Advanced BLI Agent to perform Oracle database backups, see the *Veritas NetBackup for Oracle Advanced BLI Agent System Administrator's Guide*.

About Veritas Storage Foundation/High Availability for Oracle (optional)

Veritas Storage Foundation/High Availability (HA) (VCS) lets database administrators integrate multiple servers into high availability database configurations that can significantly reduce the down time of Oracle databases caused by a system hardware or software failure.

In addition to the Veritas products included in the base Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, Veritas Storage Foundation/HA for Oracle incorporates the following products:

- Veritas Cluster Server™ (VCS) for Oracle
- Veritas Cluster Server™ (VCS) Enterprise Agent for Oracle

Note: Veritas Storage Foundation/HA (VCS) for Oracle is available only for the Enterprise Edition.

Setting up databases

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Tasks for setting up new databases](#)
- [About setting up a disk group](#)
- [Creating a disk group](#)
- [Adding disks to a disk group](#)
- [About selecting a volume layout](#)
- [Creating a volume](#)
- [Creating a volume set](#)
- [Adding a volume to a volume set](#)
- [File system creation guidelines](#)
- [Creating a VxFS file system](#)
- [Mounting a file system](#)
- [Unmounting a file system](#)
- [About fragmentation](#)
- [Resizing a file system](#)

Tasks for setting up new databases

If you are using Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle to set up a new database, complete these tasks in the order listed below:

Determine the number and sizes of file systems you need for the database you want to create. See the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

Create volumes to meet your file system needs. You can use disk mirroring as a safeguard against disk failures and striping for better performance.

- See [“About selecting a volume layout”](#) on page 51.
- See [“Creating a volume ”](#) on page 53.
- See [“About tuning VxVM ”](#) on page 299.

If you plan to create volume snapshots for the database and use them on either the same host or a secondary one, ensure that your volume layout is consistent with Database FlashSnap requirements. See [“Hosts and storage for Database FlashSnap ”](#) on page 229.

Create the VxFS file systems you need on the volumes. See [“File system creation guidelines”](#) on page 55.

See [“Creating a VxFS file system ”](#) on page 56.

Install and configure your database. See [“About Quick I/O”](#) on page 75.

For best OLTP performance, use Oracle Disk Manager (ODM) or Quick I/O.

You must create Quick I/O files before creating the tablespaces.

If you would like the ability to view detailed storage stack topology information to ensure your storage stack configuration is optimized for the database, configure and use Storage Mapping. See [“About Storage Mapping ”](#) on page 133.

If you want to use Database FlashSnap for off-host processing after converting your database files to use Quick I/O or ODM and your volume layout is inconsistent with Database FlashSnap requirements, you will need to “relayout” your volume manager configuration after your database files have been converted. See the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

If you are using Quick I/O, convert all database files to Quick I/O files. See [“Converting Oracle files to Quick I/O files”](#) on page 84.

If using ODM, link the ODM library. See [“Setting up Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager”](#) on page 125.

If you are not currently running on VxVM and VxFS, make sure Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle is installed and convert your existing database configuration. See the *Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Installation Guide*.

For backup and recovery on the same host, you can use the Storage Checkpoint facility to create file system snapshots of the database. A Storage Checkpoint creates an exact image of a database instantly and provides a consistent image of the database from the point in time the Storage Checkpoint was created. See [“About Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback”](#) on page 149.

For off-host processing or backup, you can use the Database FlashSnap feature to create a volume snapshot for the database. Database FlashSnap lets you capture an online image of an actively changing database at a given instant, known as a snapshot. You can perform backups and off-host processing tasks on snapshots while providing continuous availability of your critical data.

About setting up a disk group

Before creating file systems for a database, set up a disk group for each database.

A disk group lets you group disks, volumes, file systems, and files that are relevant to a single database into a logical collection for easy administration. Because you can move a disk group and its components as a unit from one machine to another, you can move an entire database when all the configuration objects of the database are in one disk group. This capability is useful in a failover situation.

Disk group configuration guidelines

Follow these guidelines when setting up disk groups:

- Only disks that are online and do not already belong to a disk group can be used to create a new disk group.
- Create one disk group for each database.
- The disk group name must be unique. Name each disk group using the Oracle database instance name specified by the environment variable `$ORACLE_SID`

and a `dg` suffix. The `dg` suffix helps identify the object as a disk group. Also, each disk name must be unique within the disk group.

- Never create database files using file systems or volumes that are not in the same disk group.

In earlier releases of Veritas Volume Manager, a system installed with VxVM was configured with a default disk group, `rootdg`, that had to contain at least one disk. VxVM can now function without any disk group having been configured. Only when the first disk is placed under VxVM control must a disk group be configured.

Note: Most VxVM commands require superuser or equivalent privileges.

See “[About tuning VxVM](#)” on page 299.

Creating a disk group

You can use the `vxchg` command to create a new disk group. A disk group must contain at least one disk at the time it is created. You also have the option to create a shared disk group for use in a cluster environment.

Disks must be placed in disk groups before they can be used by VxVM. You can create disk groups to organize your disks into logical sets of disks.

Before creating a disk group, review the following:

Prerequisites

- Only disks that are online and do not belong to a disk group can be used to create a disk group.
- The disk group name must be unique in the host or cluster.
- Creating a disk group requires at least one disk.

Usage notes

- Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle only supports single disk groups.
- Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC supports shared disk groups. If you are in an Oracle RAC environment:
 - Create disk groups on the shared disks from the master node. To determine if a node is a master or slave, run the following command:

```
vxctl -c mode
```
 - RAID-5 volumes are not supported for sharing in a cluster.
 - New disks must be placed under VxVM control and then added to a dynamic disk group before they can be used for volumes.
 - When you place a disk under VxVM control, the disk is initialized. Initialization destroys any existing data on the disk.
 - For information on the `vx dg` command, see the `vx dg(1M)` manual page.

To create a new disk group

- ◆ Use the `vx dg` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vx dg init disk_group [disk_name=disk_device]
```

The following is an example of creating a disk group using the `vx dg` command:

To create a disk group named `PRODdg` on a raw disk partition `c1t2d0`, where the disk name `PRODdg01` references the disk within the disk group:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vx dg init PRODdg PRODdg01=c1t2d0
```

To create a new shared disk group in an Oracle RAC environment

- ◆ Use the `vxvg` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxvg -s init disk_group [disk_name=disk_device]
```

Where the `-s` option allows the disk group to be shared.

Note: Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC supports shared disk groups. Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Standard and Enterprise edition support both single and multiple disk groups.

To create a disk group named `PRODDg` on a raw disk partition `c1t2d0`, where the disk name `PRODDg01` references the disk within the disk group:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxvg -s init PRODDg PRODDg01=c1t2d0
```

Adding disks to a disk group

When a disk group is first created, it can contain only a single disk. You may need to add more disks to the disk group. Before adding disks, review the following:

Usage notes

- When you place a disk under VxVM control, the disk is initialized. Initialization destroys any existing data on the disk.
- Disks must be under VxVM control and in a disk group before they can be used to create volumes.
- Disks must be online before they can be added to a disk group.
- Disks that already belong to a disk group cannot be added to another disk group.

To add disks to a disk group

- ◆ Use the `vxvg` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxvg -g disk_group adddisk \  
[disk_name=disk_device]
```

The following is an example of adding disks to a disk group using the `vxvg` command:

To add disks named `PRODDg02`, `PRODDg03`, and `PRODDg04` to the disk group `PRODDg`:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxdg -g PRODDg adddisk PRODDg02=c4t0d0
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxdg -g PRODDg adddisk PRODDg03=c4t0d1
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxdg -g PRODDg adddisk PRODDg04=c4t0d2
```

About selecting a volume layout

Veritas Volume Manager offers a variety of layouts that allow you to configure your database to meet performance and availability requirements. The proper selection of volume layouts provides optimal performance for the database workload.

An important factor in database performance is the tablespace placement on the disks.

Disk I/O is one of the most important determining factors of your database's performance. Having a balanced I/O load usually means optimal performance. Designing a disk layout for the database objects to achieve balanced I/O is a crucial step in configuring a database.

When deciding where to place tablespaces, it is often difficult to anticipate future usage patterns. VxVM provides flexibility in configuring storage for the initial database set up and for continual database performance improvement as needs change. VxVM can split volumes across multiple drives to provide a finer level of granularity in data placement. By using striped volumes, I/O can be balanced across multiple disk drives. For most databases, ensuring that different containers or tablespaces, depending on which database you are using, are distributed across the available disks may be sufficient.

Striping also helps sequential table scan performance. When a table is striped across multiple devices, a high transfer bandwidth can be achieved by setting the Oracle parameter `DB_FILE_MULTIBLOCK_READ_COUNT` to a multiple of full stripe size divided by `DB_BLOCK_SIZE`.

See [“About tuning VxVM”](#) on page 299.

How to choose appropriate stripe unit sizes

When creating a striped volume, you need to decide the number of columns to form a striped volume and the stripe unit size. You also need to decide how to stripe the volume. You may stripe a volume across multiple disk drives on the same controller or across multiple disks on multiple controllers. By striping across multiple controllers, disk I/O can be balanced across multiple I/O channels. The decision is based on the disk and controller bandwidth and the database workload.

In general, for most OLTP databases, use the default stripe unit size of 64 K or smaller for striped volumes and 16 K for RAID-5 volumes.

How to choose between mirroring and RAID-5

VxVM provides two volume configuration strategies for data redundancy: mirroring and RAID-5. Both strategies allow continuous access to data in the event of disk failure. For most database configurations, we recommend using mirrored, striped volumes. If hardware cost is a significant concern, but having higher data availability is still important, use RAID-5 volumes.

RAID-5 configurations have certain performance implications you must consider. Writes to RAID-5 volumes require parity-bit recalculation, which adds significant I/O and CPU overhead. This overhead can cause considerable performance penalties in online transaction processing (OLTP) workloads. If the database has a high read ratio, however, RAID-5 performance is similar to that of a striped volume.

Volume configuration guidelines

Follow these guidelines when selecting volume layouts:

- Put the database log files on a file system created on a striped and mirrored (RAID-0+1) volume separate from the index or data tablespaces. Stripe multiple devices to create larger volumes if needed. Use mirroring to improve reliability. Do not use VxVM RAID-5 for redo logs.
- When normal system availability is acceptable, put the tablespaces on file systems created on striped volumes for most OLTP workloads.
- Create striped volumes across at least four disks. Try to stripe across disk controllers. For sequential scans, do not stripe across too many disks or controllers. The single thread that processes sequential scans may not be able to keep up with the disk speed.
- For most workloads, use the default 64 K stripe-unit size for striped volumes and 16 K for RAID-5 volumes.
- When system availability is critical, use mirroring for most write-intensive OLTP workloads. Turn on Dirty Region Logging (DRL) to allow fast volume resynchronization in the event of a system crash.
- When system availability is critical, use RAID-5 for read-intensive OLTP workloads to improve database performance and availability. Use RAID-5 logs to allow fast volume resynchronization in the event of a system crash.
- For most decision support system (DSS) workloads, where sequential scans are common, experiment with different striping strategies and stripe-unit

sizes. Put the most frequently accessed tables or tables that are accessed together on separate striped volumes to improve the bandwidth of data transfer.

See “[About tuning VxVM](#)” on page 299.

Creating a volume

Veritas Volume Manager uses logical volumes to organize and manage disk space. A volume is made up of portions of one or more physical disks, so it does not have the limitations of a physical disk.

For databases where the data storage needs to be resilient and the data layout needs to be optimized for maximum performance, we recommend using VxVM. The striping and mirroring capabilities offered by a volume manager will help you achieve your manageability, availability, and performance goals.

After you decide on a volume layout, you can use the `vxassist` command to create the volume.

Before creating a volume, make sure the following conditions are met:

- Usage notes
- Creating a volume requires a disk group name, volume name, volume size, and volume layout. You will also need to know subdisk names if you are creating a striped volume.
 - Striped or mirrored volumes require at least two disks.
 - Striped pro and concatenated pro volumes are mirrored by default, so a striped pro volume requires more disks than an unmirrored striped volume and a concatenated pro volume requires more disks than an unmirrored concatenated volume.
 - You cannot use a striped pro or concatenated pro volume for a `root` or `swap` volume.
 - A RAID-5 volume requires at least three disks. If RAID-5 logging is enabled, a RAID-5 volume requires at least four disks. RAID-5 mirroring is not supported.

To create a volume

- ◆ Use the `vxassist` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxassist -g disk_group make volume_name \  
size disk_name
```

The following is an example of creating a volume using the `vxassist` command:

To create a 1 GB mirrored volume called `db01` on the `PRODdg` disk group:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxassist -g PRODdg make db01 1g PRODdg01
```

Creating a volume set

Volume Sets enable the use of the Multi-Volume Support feature with Veritas File System (VxFS). It is also possible to use the Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) to create and administer volumes sets. For more information, see the VEA online help.

Before creating a volume set, make sure the following conditions are met:

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Before creating a volume set, you must have at least one volume created.
See “Creating a volume” on page 53.■ A maximum of 256 volumes may be configured in a volume set.■ Only Veritas File System is supported on a volume set.■ The first volume in a volume set must be larger than 20MB.■ Raw I/O from and to a volume set is not supported.■ Volume sets can be used instead of volumes with the following <code>vxsnap</code> operations on instant snapshots: <code>addmir</code>, <code>dis</code>, <code>make</code>, <code>prepare</code>, <code>reattach</code>, <code>refresh</code>, <code>restore</code>, <code>rmmir</code>, <code>split</code>, <code>syncpause</code>, <code>syncresume</code>, <code>syncstart</code>, <code>syncstop</code>, <code>syncwait</code>, and <code>unprepare</code>. The third-mirror break-off usage model for full-sized instant snapshots is supported for volume sets provided that sufficient plexes exist for each volume in the volume set. See the <i>Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide</i>.■ Most VxVM commands require superuser or equivalent privileges.■ For details regarding usage of the <code>vxvset</code> command, see the <code>vxvset (1M)</code> manual page. |
|-------------|--|

To create a volume set for use by Veritas file system (VxFS)

- ◆ Use the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/vxvset [-g diskgroup] -t vxfs make volset volume
```

where:

- `volset` is the name of the volume set
- `volume` is the name of the first volume in the volume set
- `-t` defines the content handler subdirectory for the application that is to be used with the volume. This subdirectory contains utilities that an application uses to operate on the volume set. The operation of these utilities is determined by the requirements of the application and not by VxVM.

For example, to create a volume set named `db01vset` that contains the volume `db01`, in the disk group `PRODDg`, you would use the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/vxvset -g PRODDg -t vxfs make db01vset db01
```

Adding a volume to a volume set

After creating a volume set, you can add additional volumes.

To add a volume to a volume set

- ◆ Use the `vxvset` command as follows:

```
# /usr/sbin/vxvset [-g diskgroup] [-f] addvol volset \  
volume
```

Warning: The `-f` (force) option must be specified if the volume being added, or any volume in the volume set, is either a snapshot or the parent of a snapshot. Using this option can potentially cause inconsistencies in a snapshot hierarchy if any of the volumes involved in the operation is already in a snapshot chain.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

For example, to add the volume `db02`, to the volume set `db01vset`, use the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/vxvset -g PRODDg addvol db01vset db02
```

File system creation guidelines

Follow these guidelines when creating VxFS file systems:

- Specify the maximum log size when creating file systems for databases.
- Except for specifying the maximum log size and support for large files as required, use the VxFS defaults when creating file systems for databases.
- Never disable the intent logging feature of the file system.
- For redo logs, create a single file system using a simple (and mirrored, if necessary) volume. Put the other tablespaces and database files on separate file systems created on striped, striped and mirrored, or RAID-5 volumes.
- When using the command line, use the mount points to name the underlying volumes. For example, if a file system named `/db01` is to be created on a mirrored volume, name the volume `db01` and the mirrors `db01-01` and `db01-02` to relate to the configuration objects. If you are using the `vxassist` command or the GUI, this is transparent.
- If Quick I/O is supported, select `vxfs` as the file system type to take advantage of the Quick I/O feature, online administration, fast recovery of the VxFS file system, and superior reliability features.

Choose a file system block size that matches or is a multiple of the block size of your Oracle database (`db_block_size`).

It is possible to have a file system block size that is smaller than the database block size because the database block-size limit can be bigger than the file system block size. It is fine if the file system block size is smaller than the database block size because VxFS will not perform multiple I/O operations for each database I/O operation. VxFS is capable of performing I/Os with multiple blocks. For example, if your database block size is 32K and your file system block size is 8k, VxFS can put four 8K blocks together to perform one 32K database I/O operation.

When creating the file system, set the number of file system blocks in the intent log so that the log size is 16MB. For example, if the file system block size is 8K (that is, 8192), it will take 2000 blocks to make a 16MB log (2000 x 8192 = ~16MB). If the file system block size is 4K (that is, 4096), then twice as many blocks as in the 8K case would need to be allocated (4000 in this example).

Creating a VxFS file system

Always specify `vxfs` as the file system type to take advantage of Quick I/O, Storage Rollback, online administration, fast recovery of the VxFS file system, and superior reliability features.

Before creating a file system, see the following notes:

- Usage notes
- See the `mkfs(1M)` and `mkfs_vxfs(1M)` manual pages for more information about the options and variables available for use with the `mkfs` command.
 - See the `mount(1M)` and `mount_vxfs(1M)` manual pages for more information about mount settings.

To create a VxFS file system on an existing volume

- ◆ Use the `mkfs` command as follows:

```
# /usr/sbin/mkfs -F vxfs [generic_options] \  
[-o specific_options] special [size]
```

where:

- `vxfs` is the file system type
- `generic_options` are the options common to most file systems
- `specific_options` are options specific to the VxFS file system
- `special` is the full path name of the raw character device or VxVM volume on which to create the file system (for example, `/dev/vx/rdisk/PRODDg/db01`)
- `size` is the size of the new file system (optional)

If you do not specify `size`, the file system will be as large as the underlying volume.

For example, to create a VxFS file system that has an 8 KB block size and supports files larger than 2 GB on the newly created `db01` volume:

```
# /usr/sbin/mkfs -F vxfs /dev/vx/rdisk/datadg04/datavol
```

The `-o largefiles` specific option allows you to create files larger than 2 GB.

Note: Because `size` is not specified in this example, the size of the file system will be calculated automatically to be the same size as the volume on which the file system is created.

The `mkfs` command displays output similar to the following:

```
version 7 layout  
5118976 sectors, 5118976 blocks of size 1024, log size 16384 blocks  
largefiles supported
```

You can now mount the newly created file system.

See “[Mounting a file system](#)” on page 59.

Large file system and large file support

In conjunction with VxVM, VxFS can support file systems up to 8 exabytes in size. For large database configurations, this eliminates the need to use multiple file systems because of the size limitations of the underlying physical devices.

Changes implemented with the VxFS Version 6 disk layout have greatly expanded file system scalability, including support for large files. You can create or mount file systems with or without large files by specifying either the `largefiles` or `nolargefiles` option in `mkfs` or `mount` commands. If you specify the `nolargefiles` option, a file system cannot contain files 2 GB or larger.

Before creating a VxFS file system, review the following:

- Usage notes
- See the `mount_vxfs (1M)` and `mkfs_vxfs (1M)` manual pages for detailed information on mounting and creating file systems.
 - See the `fsadm_vxfs (1M)` manual pages for detailed information about large files.

To enable large files on a file system that was created without the `largefiles` option

- ◆ Use the `fsadm` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -F vxfs -o largefiles \  
/mount_point
```

Note: Make sure the applications and tools you use can handle large files before enabling the large file capability. Applications and system administration utilities can experience problems if they are not large file aware.

Multi-volume support

The multi-volume support feature enabled by VxFS Version 6 disk layout allows several volumes to be represented by a single logical object, known as a volume set. The `vxvset` command can be used to create and administer volume sets in Veritas Volume Manager.

VxFS's multi-volume support feature can be used with volume sets. There are two VxFS commands associated with multi-volume support:

- `fsapadm` - VxFS allocation policy administration utility
- `fsvoladm` - VxFS device administration utility

See the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

Mounting a file system

After creating a VxFS file system, mount the file system using the `mount` command.

By default, the command tries to enable Quick I/O. If Quick I/O is not installed or licensed, no error messages are displayed unless you explicitly specify the `mount` option. If necessary, you can turn the Quick I/O option off at mount time or you can remount the file system with the option.

Before mounting a file system, review the following:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ A file system must exist in order to be mounted.■ DBAs must be logged in as <code>root</code> to mount a file system. |
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ The mount point must be an absolute path name (that is, it must begin with <code>/</code>).■ See the <code>mount_vxfs (1M)</code> manual page for more information about mount settings.■ See the <code>mount (1M)</code> manual page for more information about generic mount options. |

To mount a file system

- ◆ Use the `mount` command as follows:

```
# /usr/sbin/mount -F vxfs [generic_options] [-r] \  
[-o specific_options] special /mount_point
```

where:

- `generic_options` are the options common to most file systems
- `-r` mounts the file system as read only
- `specific_options` are options specific to the VxFS file system
- `special` is a block special device
- `/mount_point` is the directory where the file system will be mounted

For example, to mount a file system named `/db01` that supports large files on volume `/dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/db01`:

```
# mkdir /db01

# chown oracle:dba /db01

# /usr/sbin/mount -F vxfs -o largefiles /dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/db01 \
/db01
```

If you would like `/db01` to be mounted automatically after rebooting, add an entry for it in `/etc/fstab` as follows:

```
/dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/db01 /db01 vxfs largefiles,qio 0 2
```

If you do not need to use Quick I/O files, set `noqio` instead of `qio` as one of the options.

Unmounting a file system

If you no longer need to access the data in a file system, you can unmount the file system using the `umount` command.

Before unmounting a file system, review the following:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | ■ A file system must exist and be mounted in order to be unmounted. |
| Usage notes | ■ You cannot unmount a file system that is in use.
See the <code>umount(1M)</code> manual page for more information on mounting file systems. |

To unmount a file system

- 1 Use the `fuser` command to make sure that the file system is not being used:

```
# fuser -c /mount_point
```

where the `-c` option provides information on file system mount points and any files within mounted file systems.

If the file system is being used and you need to unmount it, use the `fuser -ck` command. See the `fuser(1M)` man page for more information.

- 2 Unmount the file system using one of the `umount` command options:

- `umount special`
- `umount /mount_point`
- `umount -f /mount_point`

where:

- `special` is a block special device
- `/mount_point` is the location where the file system is mounted
- `-f` forcibly unmounts the mount point

The following is an example of unmounting a file system:

To verify that the file system `/db01` is not in use and then unmount the file system:

```
# fuser -c /db01
/db01:
# umount /db01
```

About fragmentation

When free resources are initially allocated to files in a Veritas file system, they are aligned in the most efficient order possible to provide optimal performance. On an active file system, the original order is lost over time as files are created, removed, or resized. As space is allocated and deallocated from files, the available free space becomes broken into fragments. This means that space must be assigned to files in smaller and smaller extents. This process is known as fragmentation. Fragmentation leads to degraded performance and availability. The degree of fragmentation depends on file system usage and activity.

How to control fragmentation

VxFS provides online reporting and optimization utilities to enable you to monitor and defragment a mounted file system. These utilities are accessible through the file system administration command, `fsadm`. Using the `fsadm` command, you can track and eliminate fragmentation without interrupting user access to the file system.

Types of fragmentation

VxFS addresses two types of fragmentation:

- **Directory Fragmentation**
As files are created and removed, gaps are left in directory inodes. This is known as directory fragmentation. Directory fragmentation causes directory lookups to become slower.
- **Extent Fragmentation**

As files are created and removed, the free extent map for an allocation unit changes from having one large free area to having many smaller free areas. Extent fragmentation occurs when files cannot be allocated in contiguous chunks and more extents must be referenced to access a file. In a case of extreme fragmentation, a file system may have free space that cannot be allocated.

How to monitor fragmentation

You can monitor fragmentation in VxFS by running reports that describe fragmentation levels. Use the `fsadm` command to run reports on directory fragmentation and extent fragmentation. The `df` command, which reports on file system free space, also provides information useful in monitoring fragmentation.

Use the following commands to report fragmentation information:

- `fsadm -D`, which reports on directory fragmentation.
- `fsadm -E`, which reports on extent fragmentation.
- `/opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm [-F vxfs] -o`, which prints the number of free extents of each size.

Defragmenting a file system

You can use the online administration utility `fsadm` to defragment or reorganize file system directories and extents.

The `fsadm` utility defragments a file system mounted for read/write access by:

- Removing unused space from directories.
- Making all small files contiguous.
- Consolidating free blocks for file system.

The following options are for use with the `fsadm` utility:

`-d` Reorganizes directories. Directory entries are reordered to place subdirectory entries first, then all other entries in decreasing order of time of last access. The directory is also compacted to remove free space.

Note: If you specify `-d` and `-e`, directory reorganization is always completed first.

`-a` Use in conjunction with the `-d` option to consider files not accessed within the specified number of days as “aged” files. Aged files are moved to the end of the directory. The default is 14 days.

- `-e` Reorganizes extents. Files are reorganized to have the minimum number of extents.
Note: If you specify `-d` and `-e`, directory reorganization is always completed first.
- `-D -E` Produces reports on directory and extent fragmentation, respectively.
Note: If you use both `-D` and `-E` with the `-d` and `-e` options, the fragmentation reports are produced both before and after reorganization.
- `-v` Specifies verbose mode and reports reorganization activity.
- `-l` Specifies the size of a file that is considered large. The default is 64 blocks.
- `-t` Specifies a maximum length of time to run, in seconds.
Note: The `-t` and `-p` options control the amount of work performed by `fsadm`, either in a specified time or by a number of passes. By default, `fsadm` runs five passes. If both `-t` and `-p` are specified, `fsadm` exits if either of the terminating conditions are reached.
- `-p` Specifies a maximum number of passes to run. The default is five.
Note: The `-t` and `-p` options control the amount of work performed by `fsadm`, either in a specified time or by a number of passes. By default, `fsadm` runs five passes. If both `-t` and `-p` are specified, `fsadm` exits if either of the terminating conditions are reached.
- `-s` Prints a summary of activity at the end of each pass.
- `-r` Specifies the pathname of the raw device to read to determine file layout and fragmentation. This option is used when `fsadm` cannot determine the raw device.

Note: You must have superuser (`root`) privileges to reorganize a file system using the `fsadm` command.

To defragment a file system

- ◆ Run the `fsadm` command followed by the options specifying the type and amount of defragmentation. Complete the command by specifying the mount point or raw device to identify the file system.

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm [-d] [-D] [-e] [-E] [-s] [-v] \
[-l largesize] [-a days] [-t time] [-p pass_number] \
[-r rawdev_path] mount_point
```

Refer to the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide* for instructions and information on scheduling defragmentation. Veritas File System Administrator's Guide for instructions and information on scheduling defragmentation.

For example, to defragment a file system:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -d -D /oradata_qiovm
```

Directory Fragmentation Report

	Dirs Searched	Total Blocks	Immed Dirs	Immeds to Add	Dirs to Reduce	Blocks to Reduce
total	5	1	4	0	0	0

Directory Fragmentation Report

	Dirs Searched	Total Blocks	Immed Dirs	Immeds to Add	Dirs to Reduce	Blocks to Reduce
total	5	1	4	0	0	0

Resizing a file system

If you need to extend or shrink a VxFS file system, you can use the `fsadm` command.

If a VxFS file system requires more space, you can use this procedure to extend the size of the file system. If a VxFS File System is too large and you need the space elsewhere, you can use this procedure to shrink the file system.

Remember to increase the size of the underlying device or volume before increasing the size of the file system.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*. Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide.

Before resizing a file system, review the following:

- Prerequisites
- This task requires a mounted file system. You must know either the desired size or the amount of space to add to or subtract from the file system size.
- Usage notes
- See the (1M) manual page.
See the `fsadm_vxfs(1M)` manual page.

To resize a file system

- ◆ Use `fsadm` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -F vxfs [-b newsize] \  
[-r rawdev] /mount_point
```

where:

- `newsiz` is the size (in sectors) to which the file system will increase or shrink
- `rawdev` specifies the name of the raw device if there is no entry in and `fsadm` cannot determine the raw device
- `/mount_point` is the location where the file system is mounted

For example, to extend the file system `/db01` to 2 GB:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -F vxfs -b 2g /db01
```

Note: See the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide* and `fsadm_vxfs(1M)` manual page for information on how to perform common file system tasks using `fsadm`.

Resizing a file system and the underlying volume

The `fsadm` command resizes the file system only. If you attempt to use `fsadm` to make the file system the same size or larger than the underlying volume, the `fsadm` command will fail. To resize the file system and its underlying volume, use the `vxresize` command instead.

Warning: Resizing a volume with a usage type other than FSGEN or RAID5 can result in data loss. If such an operation is required, use the `-f` option to forcibly resize such a volume.

Before resizing a file system and the underlying volume, review the following:

- Prerequisites
- You must know the new desired size of the file system.
- Usage notes
- `vxresize` works with VxFS, JFS (derived from VxFS), and HFS file systems only.
 - If the file system is mounted and Online JFS (full VxFS), you can grow or shrink the size. If the file system is mounted and either Base JFS (Lite VxFS) or HFS, you cannot grow or shrink the size.
 - If the file system is unmounted and Online JFS (full VxFS), Base JFS (Lite VxFS), or HFS, you can grow the size only.
 - When resizing large volumes, `vxresize` may take a long time to complete.
 - Resizing a volume with a usage type other than FSGEN or RAID5 can result in data loss. If such an operation is required, use the `-f` option to forcibly resize such a volume.
 - You cannot resize a volume that contains plexes with different layout types.
 - See the `vxresize (1M)` manual page for more details.

To resize a file system and the underlying volume

- ◆ Use the `vxresize` command as follows:

```
# /etc/vx/bin/vxresize -g disk_group -b -F vxfs -t \  
homevolresize homevol volume_size disk_name disk_name
```

For example, to extend a 1-gigabyte volume, `homevol`, that contains a VxFS file system, to 10 gigabytes using the spare disks `disk10` and `disk11`, enter:

```
# /etc/vx/bin/vxresize -b -F vxfs -t homevolresize homevol 10g \  
disk10 disk11
```

The `-b` option specifies that this operation runs in the background. Its progress can be monitored by specifying the task tag `homevolresize` to the `vxtask` command.

Managing the SFDB repository

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the SFDB repository](#)
- [Runtime management tasks for the SFDB repository](#)
- [Adding a new system to an HA configuration](#)
- [Reconfiguring virtual IP address for repository configuration](#)
- [Accessing an off-host repository in a non-VCS environment](#)

About the SFDB repository

The Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository stores metadata information required by Storage Foundation for Oracle software. This information includes data about user databases, snapshot databases, storage configuration, scheduled tasks, and storage statistics.

In prior releases of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, the repository was stored on the local host as plain text files, which made the repository vulnerable to corruption or other errors. Also, repository information could not be accessed from a secondary host.

In this release of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, the repository is stored in a relational database and is managed by a lightweight embedded relational DBMS, called VxDBMS. VxDBMS is a special OEM version of a Sybase ASA (Adaptive Server Anywhere) DBMS, which is delivered and supported by Symantec. The SFDB repository database consists of a database file, `dbed_db.db`, and

transaction log files, `yymmdxxx.log`. VxDBMS supports remote client access from any host in the network that has proper authorization and configuration.

SFDB requires only occasional interaction outside of the initial installation and configuration of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle.

See the *Veritas Storage Foundation Installation Guide* for more information on configuring the SFDB repository.

Runtime management tasks for the SFDB repository

Most interactions with the SFDB repository are handled automatically by SFDB code. Administrators only need to handle SFDB backup and restore activities and to monitor the hard disk space usage of the repository. A configuration file `/etc/vx/vxdbed/admin.properties` is created during installation to record the file system and volume used for the SFDB repository. The VxDBMS server starts automatically after a system reboot via `rc` files.

Starting, stopping, and checking the SFDB repository with `sfua_db_config`

See the *Veritas Storage Foundation Installation Guide* for more information on configuring the SFDB repository.

If for any reason the VxDBMS process is not running or is having problems, use the `sfua_db_config` command to start, stop, and check the status of the repository database and its server.

To check the status of the repository

- ◆ Use the `-o dbstatus` option:

```
# /opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/sfua_db_config -o dbstatus
```

To start the repository

- ◆ Use the `-o startdb` option:

```
# /opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/sfua_db_config -o startdb
```

Backing up and restoring the SFDB repository with `sfua_rept_adm`

Use the `sfua_rept_adm` command to manage the backing up and restoring of the SFDB repository. With this command, you can:

- Create and configure a schedule for automatically backing up the SFDB repository, including specifying the type of backup (full or incremental), its start time and frequency, and the destination directory for the backed up files.
- Restore the repository from backup files.
- Disable or enable an existing backup schedule.
- Create and configure a free-space monitoring schedule that emails an alert when the free space on the file system containing the repository falls to a specified threshold.
- Disable or enable an existing free-space monitoring schedule.

Note: You must be logged in as root to use the `sfua_rept_adm` command.

Table 3-1 sfua_rept_adm command options

Option	Description
<code>-h</code>	Displays help for the command.
<code>-o backup_sched</code>	Creates a full or incremental backup schedule. The backup type is specified by the accompanying <code>-t</code> option. Only one full and one incremental backup schedule can be created. Creating a second schedule overwrites any existing backup schedule of that same type. After a backup schedule is created it is automatically enabled.
<code>-o backup_enable</code>	Re-enables the existing full or incremental backup schedule, as specified by the <code>-t</code> option.
<code>-o backup_disable</code>	Disables the existing full or incremental backup schedule, as specified by the <code>-t</code> option.
<code>-o restore</code>	Restores the SFDB repository from the backup files in the directory specified by the <code>-m</code> option.
<code>-o space_monitor</code>	Creates and configures a free-space monitoring schedule that emails a warning when the free space on the file system containing the SFDB repository reaches or goes below a threshold specified by the <code>-w</code> option.
<code>-o space_monitor_enable</code>	Enables the free-space monitoring schedule, if one exists.

Table 3-1 sfua_rept_adm command options (*continued*)

Option	Description
<code>-o space_monitor_disable</code>	Disables the free-space monitoring schedule, if one exists.
<code>-t full incr</code>	<p>Specifies the type of backup schedule being created, enabled, or disabled by the accompanying <code>-o</code> option. Specify <code>full</code> for a full backup or <code>incr</code> for an incremental backup. An incremental backup copies the SFDB repository database transaction logs to the directory specified by the <code>-m</code> option. A full backup copies these transaction log files and the database file.</p> <p>No more than two backup schedules can be enabled simultaneously, one incremental backup and one full backup. For example, you cannot have two different incremental backup schedules.</p>
<code>-f backup_freq</code>	Specifies the frequency of the scheduled backups as <code>h</code> (hours), <code>d</code> (days), or <code>w</code> (weeks) from the start time specified by the <code>-s</code> option. By default, the backup frequency value is assumed to be hours (<code>h</code>).
<code>-s start_time</code>	Specifies the time to start the backup process in <code>hh:mm:ss</code> format.
<code>-m backup_dest</code>	<p>Specifies the directory where the backup files are stored.</p> <p>In a Veritas Storage Foundation for RAC environment, this directory must be a Cluster File System (CFS) and be mounted on all nodes of the cluster.</p>
<code>-w warn_threshold</code>	Specifies the warning threshold for the free-space monitoring schedule, as a number representing the percentage of free space on the file system containing the backup files. If the percentage of free space falls to this value or lower, then a warning is emailed according to the other settings in this free-space monitoring schedule.
<code>-e notify_email</code>	Specifies the email address to send the warning message when the repository file system free space falls below the threshold specified by the <code>-w</code> option.

Table 3-1 sfua_rept_adm command options (*continued*)

Option	Description
<code>-u smtp_sender</code>	Specifies the SMTP sender in whose name the warning email is emailed when the repository file system free space falls below the threshold specified by the <code>-w</code> option.
<code>-s smtp_server</code>	specifies the SMTP email server to use when sending the warning message when the repository file system free space falls below the threshold specified by the <code>-w</code> option.

To create a backup schedule for the SFDB repository

- ◆ Use the `sfua_rept_adm -o backup_sched` command:

```
sfua_rept_adm -o backup_sched -t full|incr -f backup_freq \  
-s start_time -m backup_dest
```

After a backup schedule is created, it is automatically enabled. You can create only one of each type of backup schedule, incremental (`-t incr`) and full (`-t full`). If you create a new backup schedule, it automatically replaces any currently-enabled backup schedule. You can disable the current backup schedule with the `-o backup_disable` command, and re-enable it with `-o backup_enable`.

In a Veritas Storage Foundation for RAC environment, the backup destination directory `-m backup_dest` must be a Cluster File System (CFS) that is mounted on all nodes of the cluster.

In an HA environment, use NFS to mount the backup destination directory on all nodes.

To restore the SFDB repository from a backup

- ◆ Use the `sfua_rept_adm -o restore` command:

```
sfua_rept_adm -o restore -m backup_dest
```

This command restores the repository using the full backup and all incremental backup files from the backup directory specified by `-m backup_dest`.

To determine if a repository backup has failed

- ◆ Use either of these methods:

- Check the system console for error messages received at the time the backup was scheduled.
- Verify the existence of the proper backup files in the backup directory (specified by `-m backup_dest`). The type of repository backup you schedule determines which files should be found in this directory. If an incremental backup, only repository transaction log files (`yyymmddxx.log`) are created there. If a full backup, both transaction log files and a repository database file (`dbed_db.db`) are created.

Monitoring free space for the SFDB repository

To guard against the SFDB repository failing by filling its file system, use the `sfua_rept_adm -o space_monitor` command to create a monitoring schedule.

Table 3-1 shows all options for the `sfua_rept_adm` command, including those used for creating, disabling, and re-enabling a free space monitoring schedule.

This schedule monitors the available free space on the repository file system. If the free space falls below a specified threshold (a percentage value), a warning is emailed to a specified user.

Note: You must be logged in as root to use the `sfua_rept_adm` command.

To create a free-space monitoring schedule for the repository file system

- ◆ Use the `sfua_rept_adm -o space_monitor` command:

```
sfua_rept_adm -o space_monitor -w warn_threshold -e notify_email \  
-u smtp_sender -s smtp_server [ -i interval ]
```

After a free-space monitoring schedule is created, it is automatically enabled. When the free space on the file system containing the SFDB repository falls below the threshold specified by `-w warn_threshold`, a warning is sent to the email address specified by `-e notify_email`.

Adding a new system to an HA configuration

When adding a new system to an existing HA configuration, you must also add the system to the existing SFDB repository so that it can share the same repository data.

To add a new system to the SFDB repository

- 1 After installing Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, add the new system to the cluster.

See the *Veritas Cluster Server User's Guide*.

- 2 Make sure the system is running using the `hasys` command:

```
# hasys -state
```

- 3 Add the system to the `Sfua_Base` group by running the following command sequence:

```
# haconf -makerw
```

```
# hagrpl -modify Sfua_Base SystemList -add new_sys sys_id
```

```
# hares -modify sfua_ip Device new_sys_NIC -sys new_sys
```

```
# haconf -dump -makero
```

- 4 Copy the `/etc/vx/vxdbed/.odbc.ini` file from an existing node to the new system using a remote file copy utility such as `rcp`, `tcp`, or `scp`.

For example, to use `rcp`:

```
# rcp /etc/vx/vxdbed/.odbc.ini new_sys:/etc/vx/vxdbed
```

Reconfiguring virtual IP address for repository configuration

When configuring a two-node cluster, use the following steps to change the virtual IP address.

To change the virtual IP address for a standalone instance:

- 1 Change the IP address.
- 2 Update the new IP information for SFUA repository access by running the `sfua_db_config` command:

```
# /opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/sfua_db_config
```

To change the virtual IP address for a cluster environment

- 1 Change the IP address for the cluster.
- 2 Update the IP address for the repository configuration in HA environment by running the following set of commands.
- 3 Unconfigure the SFUA repository.

```
# /opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/sfua_db_config -o unconfig_cluster
```

- 4 Import the repository disk group.
- 5 Start the repository disk volume.
- 6 Mount the repository file system.
- 7 Run the following command.

```
# /opt/VRTSdbcom/bin/sfua_db_config
```

- 8 When prompted, select the option to change the configuration parameters for the cluster configuration. Enter the new cluster IP address for the cluster configuration.

Accessing an off-host repository in a non-VCS environment

When creating an off-host clone database in a non-VCS environment, you must make sure that the secondary host has access to the SFDB repository located on the primary host. Because there is no cluster file system to ensure this shared access, you must establish access by copying the primary host's `.odbc.ini` file to the secondary host.

To share an off-host SFDB repository in a non-VCS environment

- ◆ Copy the DNS file `/etc/vx/vxdbed/.odbc.ini` from the primary host (where the repository exists and is mounted) to the corresponding location on the secondary host. Use a remote file copy utility such as `rscp`, `tcp`, or `scp` to make this copy.

For example, to use `rscp` from the primary host:

```
# rscp /etc/vx/vxdbed/.odbc.ini second_host:/etc/vx/vxdbed
```

Using Veritas Quick I/O

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Quick I/O](#)
- [Creating database files as Quick I/O files using qiomkfile](#)
- [Preallocating space for Quick I/O files using the setext command](#)
- [Accessing regular VxFS files as Quick I/O files](#)
- [Converting Oracle files to Quick I/O files](#)
- [About sparse files](#)
- [Handling Oracle temporary tablespaces and Quick I/O](#)
- [Displaying Quick I/O status and file attributes](#)
- [Extending a Quick I/O file](#)
- [Using Oracle's AUTOEXTEND with Quick I/O files](#)
- [Recreating Quick I/O files after restoring a database](#)
- [Disabling Quick I/O](#)

About Quick I/O

Veritas Quick I/O is a VxFS feature included in Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle that lets applications access preallocated VxFS files as raw character devices. Quick I/O provides the administrative benefits of running databases on file systems without the typically associated degradation in performance.

Note: Veritas recommends that you use Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager. See [“Setting up Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager”](#) on page 125.

How Quick I/O works

Veritas Quick I/O supports direct I/O and kernel asynchronous I/O and allows databases to access regular files on a VxFS file system as raw character devices.

The benefits of using Quick I/O are:

- Improved performance and processing throughput by having Quick I/O files act as raw devices.
- Ability to manage Quick I/O files as regular files, which simplifies administrative tasks such as allocating, moving, copying, resizing, and backing up datafiles.

Note: Veritas recommends using Oracle Disk Manager.

See [“Converting Quick I/O files to Oracle Disk Manager files”](#) on page 129.

How Quick I/O improves database performance

Quick I/O's ability to access regular files as raw devices improves database performance by:

- Supporting asynchronous I/O
- Supporting direct I/O
- Avoiding kernel write locks on database files
- Avoiding double buffering

Supporting asynchronous I/O

Asynchronous I/O is a form of I/O that performs non-blocking system level reads and writes, allowing the system to handle multiple I/O requests simultaneously. Operating systems such as HP-UX provide kernel support for asynchronous I/O on raw devices, but not on regular files. As a result, even if the database server is capable of using asynchronous I/O, it cannot issue asynchronous I/O requests when the database runs on file systems. Lack of asynchronous I/O significantly degrades performance. Quick I/O lets the database server take advantage of kernel-supported asynchronous I/O on file system files accessed using the Quick I/O interface.

Supporting direct I/O

I/O on files using `read()` and `write()` system calls typically results in data being copied twice: once between user and kernel space, and later between kernel space and disk. In contrast, I/O on raw devices is direct. That is, data is copied directly between user space and disk, saving one level of copying. As with I/O on raw devices, Quick I/O avoids extra copying.

Avoiding kernel write locks

When database I/O is performed using the `write()` system call, each system call acquires and releases a write lock inside the kernel. This lock prevents multiple simultaneous write operations on the same file. Because database systems usually implement their own locking to manage concurrent access to files, per file writer locks unnecessarily serialize I/O operations. Quick I/O bypasses file system per file locking and lets the database server control data access.

Avoiding double buffering

Most database servers maintain their own buffer cache and do not need the file system buffer cache. Database data cached in the file system buffer is therefore redundant and results in wasted memory and extra system CPU utilization to manage the buffer. By supporting direct I/O, Quick I/O eliminates double buffering. Data is copied directly between the relational database management system (RDBMS) cache and disk, which lowers CPU utilization and frees up memory that can then be used by the database server buffer cache to further improve transaction processing throughput.

About Quick I/O requirements

To use Quick I/O, you must:

- Preallocate files on a VxFS file system
- Use a special file naming convention to access the files

Preallocating files

Preallocating database files for Quick I/O allocates contiguous space for the files. The file system space reservation algorithms attempt to allocate space for an entire file as a single contiguous extent. When this is not possible due to lack of contiguous space on the file system, the file is created as a series of direct extents. Accessing a file using direct extents is inherently faster than accessing the same data using indirect extents. Internal tests have shown performance degradation

in OLTP throughput when using indirect extent access. In addition, this type of preallocation causes no fragmentation of the file system.

You must preallocate Quick I/O files because they cannot be extended through writes using their Quick I/O interfaces. They are initially limited to the maximum size you specify at the time of creation.

See [“Extending a Quick I/O file”](#) on page 94.

About Quick I/O naming conventions

VxFS uses a special naming convention to recognize and access Quick I/O files as raw character devices. VxFS recognizes the file when you add the following extension to a file name:

```
::cdev:vxfs:
```

Whenever an application opens an existing VxFS file with the extension

```
::cdev:vxfs:
```

 (cdev being an acronym for character device), the file is treated as if it were a raw device. For example, if the file `temp01` is a regular VxFS file, then an application can access `temp01` as a raw character device by opening it with the name:

```
.temp01::cdev:vxfs:
```

Note: We recommend reserving the `::cdev:vxfs:` extension only for Quick I/O files. If you are not using Quick I/O, you could technically create a regular file with this extension; however, doing so can cause problems if you later enable Quick I/O.

How to set up Quick I/O

Quick I/O is included in the VxFS package shipped with Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle. By default, Quick I/O is enabled when you mount a VxFS file system.

If Quick I/O is not available in the kernel, or the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle license is not installed, a file system mounts without Quick I/O by default, the Quick I/O file name is treated as a regular file, and no error message is displayed. If, however, you specify the `-o qio` option, the `mount` command prints the following error message and terminates without mounting the file system.

```
VxFDD: You don't have a license to run this program
vxfs mount: Quick I/O not available
```

Depending on whether you are creating a new database or are converting an existing database to use Quick I/O, you have the following options:

If you are creating a new database:

- You can use the `qiomkfile` command to preallocate space for database files and make them accessible to the Quick I/O interface.
See “[Creating database files as Quick I/O files using `qiomkfile`](#)” on page 79.
- You can use the `setext` command to preallocate space for database files and create the Quick I/O files.
See “[Preallocating space for Quick I/O files using the `setext` command](#)” on page 82.

If you are converting an existing database:

- You can create symbolic links for existing VxFS files, and use these symbolic links to access the files as Quick I/O files.
See “[Accessing regular VxFS files as Quick I/O files](#)” on page 83.
- You can convert your existing Oracle database files to use the Quick I/O interface using the `qio_getdbfiles` and `qio_convertdbfiles` commands.
See “[Converting Oracle files to Quick I/O files](#)” on page 84.

Creating database files as Quick I/O files using `qiomkfile`

The best way to preallocate space for tablespace containers and to make them accessible using the Quick I/O interface is to use the `qiomkfile`. You can use the `qiomkfile` to create the Quick I/O files for either temporary or permanent tablespaces.

Prerequisites	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ You can create Quick I/O files only on VxFS file systems.■ If you are creating database files on an existing file system, run <code>fsadm</code> (or similar utility) to report and eliminate fragmentation.■ You must have read/write permissions on the directory in which you intend to create Oracle Quick I/O files.
Usage notes	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ The <code>qiomkfile</code> command creates two files: a regular file with preallocated, contiguous space, and a file that is a symbolic link pointing to the Quick I/O name extension.■ See the <code>qiomkfile(1M)</code> manual page for more information.
-a	Creates a symbolic link with an absolute path name for a specified file. Use the <code>-a</code> option when absolute path names are required. However, the default is to create a symbolic link with a relative path name.

- `-e` Extends a file by a specified amount to allow Oracle tablespace resizing. See “[Extending a Quick I/O file](#)” on page 94.
- `-h` Specifies the Oracle datafile header size. This option specifies a header that will be allocated in addition to the size specified because Oracle requires one additional database block for all its datafiles. If this option is used, the resulting file can be used as an Oracle datafile. When creating an Oracle datafile, the header size should be equal to the Oracle block size (as determined by the `DB_BLOCK_SIZE` parameter). If the header size is missing when the `-h` option is used, a 32K header will be allocated.
- `-r` Increases the file to a specified size to allow Oracle tablespace resizing. See “[Extending a Quick I/O file](#)” on page 94.
- `-s` Specifies the space to preallocate for a file in bytes, kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or sectors (1024 bytes) by adding a `k`, `K`, `m`, `M`, `g`, `G`, `s`, or `S` suffix. The default is bytes—you do not need to attach a suffix to specify the value in bytes. The size of the file that is preallocated is the total size of the file (including the header) rounded to the nearest multiple of the file system block size.

Warning: Exercise caution when using absolute path names. Extra steps may be required during database backup and restore procedures to preserve symbolic links. If you restore files to directories different from the original paths, you must change the symbolic links that use absolute path names to point to the new path names before the database is restarted.

To create a database file as a Quick I/O file using qiomkfile

1 Create a database file using the qiomkfile command:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -h headersize -s file_size  
/mount_point/filename
```

2 Change the owner and group permissions on the file:

```
# chown oracle:dba .filename  
  
# chmod 660 .filename
```

3 Create tablespaces on this file using SQL*Plus statements.

For example:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog  
  
SQL> connect / as sysdba  
  
SQL> create tablespace ts1 datafile '/mount_point/filename.dbf'  
size 100M reuse;  
  
exit;
```

An example to show how to create a 100MB database file named `dbfile` on the VxFS file system `/db01` using a relative path name:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -h 32k -s 100m /db01/dbfile  
  
# ls -al  
  
-rw-r--r--  1 oracle  dba    104890368   Oct 2 13:42  .dbfile  
lrwxrwxrwx  1 oracle  dba         19   Oct 2 13:42  dbfile -> \  
.dbfile::cdev:vxfs:
```

In the example, `qiomkfile` creates a regular file named `/db01/.dbfile`, which has the real space allocated. Then, `qiomkfile` creates a symbolic link named `/db01/dbfile`. This symbolic link is a relative link to the Quick I/O interface for `/db01/.dbfile`, that is, to the `.dbfile::cdev:vxfs:` file. The symbolic link allows `.dbfile` to be accessed by any database or application using its Quick I/O interface.

Preallocating space for Quick I/O files using the `setext` command

As an alternative to using the `qiomkfile` command, you can also use the VxFS `setext` command to preallocate space for database files.

Before preallocating space with `setext`, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Prerequisites | ■ The <code>setext</code> command requires superuser (<code>root</code>) privileges. |
| Usage notes | ■ You can use the <code>chown</code> command to change the owner and group permissions on the file after you create it.
See the <code>setext (1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

To create a Quick I/O database file using `setext`

- 1 Access the VxFS mount point and create a file:

```
# cd /mount_point  
  
# touch .filename
```

- 2 Use the `setext` command to preallocate space for the file:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/setext -r size -f noreserve -f chgsize \  
.filename
```

- 3 Create a symbolic link to allow databases or applications access to the file using its Quick I/O interface:

```
# ln -s .filename::cdev:vxfs: filename
```

- 4 Change the owner and group permissions on the file:

```
# chown oracle:dba .filename
```

```
# chmod 660 .filename
```

An example to show how to access the mount point /db01, create a datafile, preallocate the space, and change the permissions:

```
# cd /db01
# touch .dbfile
# /opt/VRTS/bin/setext -r 100M -f noreserve -f chgsize .dbfile
# ln -s .dbfile::cdev:vxfs: dbfile

# chown oracle:dba .dbfile

# chmod 660 .dbfile
```

Accessing regular VxFS files as Quick I/O files

You can access regular VxFS files as Quick I/O files using the `::cdev:vxfs: name` extension.

While symbolic links are recommended because they provide easy file system management and location transparency of database files, the drawback of using symbolic links is that you must manage two sets of files (for instance, during database backup and restore).

Usage notes

- When possible, use relative path names instead of absolute path names when creating symbolic links to access regular files as Quick I/O files. Using relative path names prevents copies of the symbolic link from referring to the original file when the directory is copied. This is important if you are backing up or moving database files with a command that preserves the symbolic link. However, some applications require absolute path names. If a file is then relocated to another directory, you must change the symbolic link to use the new absolute path. Alternatively, you can put all the symbolic links in a directory separate from the data directories. For example, you can create a directory named `/database` and put all the symbolic links there, with the symbolic links pointing to absolute path names.

To access an existing regular file as a Quick I/O file on a VxFS file system

- 1 Access the VxFS file system mount point containing the regular files:

```
$ cd /mount_point
```

- 2 Create the symbolic link:

```
$ mv filename .filename  
$ ln -s .filename::cdev:vxfs: filename
```

This example shows how to access the VxFS file `dbfile` as a Quick I/O file:

```
$ cd /db01  
$ mv dbfile .dbfile  
$ ln -s .dbfile::cdev:vxfs: dbfile
```

This example shows how to confirm the symbolic link was created:

```
$ ls -lo .dbfile dbfile  
  
lrwxr-xr-x  1 oracle   18 Jul 22 06:01 dbfile ->  
.dbfile::cdev:vxfs:  
lrwxr-xr-x  1 oracle   22 Jul 22 06:27 dbfile.dbf ->  
.dbfile.dbf::cdev:vxfs:
```

Converting Oracle files to Quick I/O files

Special commands, available in the `/opt/VRTSdbed/bin` directory, are provided to assist you in converting an existing database to use Quick I/O. You can use the `qio_getdbfiles` command to extract a list of file names from the database system

tables and the `qio_convertdbfiles` command to convert this list of database files to use Quick I/O.

Note: It is recommended that you create a Storage Checkpoint before converting to or from Quick I/O.

See [“Creating Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptcreate`”](#) on page 328.

Before converting database files to Quick I/O files, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- Log in as the Database Administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`) to run the `qio_getdbfiles` and `qio_convertdbfiles` commands.
 - You must predefine the Oracle environment variable `$ORACLE_SID`. Change to the `ORACLE_SID` environment variable must be defined.
 - Files you want to convert must be regular files on VxFS file systems or links that point to regular VxFS files

Usage notes

- Converting existing database files to Quick I/O files may not be the best choice if the files are fragmented. Use the `-f` option to determine the fragmentation levels and choose one of two approaches: Either exclude files that are highly fragmented and do not have sufficient contiguous extents for Quick I/O use, or create new files with the `qiomkfile` command, rather than convert them with the `qio_convertdbfiles` command.
- If you choose to create new files, they will be contiguous. You must then move data from the old files to the new files using the `dd(1M)` command or a database import facility, and then define the new files to the database.
- By default, `qio_getdbfiles` skips any tablespaces marked `TEMPORARY`. Tablespaces marked `TEMPORARY` can be sparse, which means that not all blocks in the file are allocated. Quick I/O files cannot be sparse, as Quick I/O provides a raw-type interface to storage. If a sparse file is converted to a Quick I/O file, the Oracle instance can fail if Oracle attempts to write into one of these unallocated blocks.
See [“Handling Oracle temporary tablespaces and Quick I/O”](#) on page 91.
- You may also want to consider creating Quick I/O files for temporary tablespaces.
See [“Creating database files as Quick I/O files using qiomkfile”](#) on page 79.
- The `qio_convertdbfiles` command exits and prints an error message if any of the database files are not on a VxFS file system. If this happens, you must remove any non-VxFS files from the `mkqio.dat` file before running the `qio_convertdbfiles` command.
- Instead of using the `qio_getdbfiles` command, you can manually create the `mkqio.dat` file containing the Oracle database filenames that you want to convert to Quick I/O files.

The following options are available for the `qio_getdbfiles` command:

- a Lets you include all datafiles, including those that are potentially sparse.

(Use this option only for debugging purposes, as sparse files are not candidates for use with Quick I/O.)

-T Lets you specify the type of database as `ora`. Specify this option only in environments where the type of database is ambiguous (for example, when multiple types of database environment variables, such as `$ORACLE_SID`, `SYBASE`, `DSQUERY`, and `$DB2INSTANCE`, are present on a server).

The following options are available for the `qio_convertdbfiles` command:

- a Changes regular files to Quick I/O files using absolute path names. Use this option when symbolic links need to point to absolute path names (for example, at a site that uses SAP).
- f Reports on the current fragmentation levels for database files listed in the `mkqio.dat` file. Fragmentation is reported as not fragmented, slightly fragmented, fragmented, highly fragmented.
- h Displays a help message.
- Creates the extra links for all datafiles and log files in the `/dev` directory to support SAP's `brbackup`.
- T Lets you specify the type of database as `ora`. Specify this option only in environments where the type of database is ambiguous (for example, when multiple types of database environment variables, such as `$ORACLE_SID`, `SYBASE`, `DSQUERY`, and `$DB2INSTANCE` are present on a server).
- u Changes Quick I/O files back to regular files. Use this option to undo changes made by a previous run of the `qio_convertdbfiles` script.

To extract a list of Oracle files to convert

- ◆ With the database instance up and running, run the `qio_getdbfiles` command from a directory for which you have write permission:

```
$ cd /extract_directory  
  
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/qio_getdbfiles -T ora
```

The `qio_getdbfiles` command extracts the list file names from the database system tables and stores the file names and their size in bytes in a file called `mkqio.dat` under the current directory.

Note: Alternatively, you can manually create the `mkqio.dat` file containing the Oracle database file names that you want to convert to use Quick I/O. You can also manually edit the `mkqio.dat` file generated by `qio_getdbfiles`, and remove files that you do not want to convert to Quick I/O files.

Note: To run the `qio_getdbfiles` command, you must have permission to access the database and permission to write to the `/extract_directory`.

The `mkqio.dat` list file should look similar to the following:

```
/data11r1/VRTS11r1/redo01.log 52428800  
/data11r1/VRTS11r1/redo02.log 52428800  
/data11r1/VRTS11r1/redo03.log 52428800  
/data11r1/VRTS11r1/sysaux01.dbf 632553472  
/data11r1/VRTS11r1/system01.dbf 754974720  
/data11r1/VRTS11r1/undotbs01.dbf 47185920  
/data11r1/VRTS11r1/users01.dbf 5242880  
/data11r1/nqio1.dbf 104857600
```


To convert the Oracle database files to Quick I/O files

- 1 Shut down the database.
- 2 Run the `qio_convertdbfiles` command from the directory containing the `mkqio.dat` file:

```
$ cd /extract_directory
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/qio_convertdbfiles
```

The list of files in the `mkqio.dat` file is displayed. For example:

```
file1 --> .file1::cdev:vxfs:
file2 --> .file2::cdev:vxfs:
file3 --> .file3::cdev:vxfs:
file4 --> .file4::cdev:vxfs:
file5 --> .file5::cdev:vxfs:
```

Run the `qio_convertdbfiles` command (with no options specified) to rename the file *filename* to `.filename` and creates a symbolic link to `.filename` with the Quick I/O extension. By default, the symbolic link uses a relative path name.

The `qio_convertdbfiles` script exits and prints an error message if any of the database files are not on a VxFS file system. If this happens, you must remove any non-VxFS files from the `mkqio.dat` file before running the `qio_convertdbfiles` command again.

- 3 Start up the database.
- 4 You can now access these database files using the Quick I/O interface.

To undo the previous run of `qio_convertdbfiles` and change Quick I/O files back to regular VxFS files

- 1 If the database is running, shut it down.
- 2 Run the following command from the directory containing the `mkqio.dat` file:

```
$ cd /extract_directory  
  
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/qio_convertdbfiles -u
```

The list of Quick I/O files in the `mkqio.dat` file is displayed. For example:

```
.file1::cdev:vxfs: --> file1  
.file2::cdev:vxfs: --> file2  
.file3::cdev:vxfs: --> file3  
.file4::cdev:vxfs: --> file4  
.file5::cdev:vxfs: --> file5
```

The `qio_convertdbfiles` command with the undo option (`-u`) specified renames the files from `<.filename>` to `<filename>` and undoes the symbolic link to `.filename` that was created along with the Quick I/O files.

About sparse files

Support for sparse files lets applications store information (in inodes) to identify data blocks that have only zeroes, so that only blocks containing non-zero data have to be allocated on disk.

For example, if a file is 10KB, it typically means that there are blocks on disk covering the whole 10KB. Assume that you always want the first 9K to be zeroes. The application can go to an offset of 9KB and write 1KB worth of data. Only a block for the 1KB that was written is allocated, but the size of the file is still 10KB.

The file is now sparse. It has a hole from offset 0 to 9KB. If the application reads any part of the file within this range, it will see a string of zeroes.

If the application subsequently writes a 1KB block to the file from an offset of 4KB, for example, the file system will allocate another block.

The file then looks like:

- 0-4KB - hole
- 4-5KB - data block
- 5-9KB - hole
- 9-10KB - data block

So a 1TB file system can potentially store up to 2TB worth of files if there are sufficient blocks containing zeroes. Quick I/O files cannot be sparse and will always have all blocks specified allocated to them.

Handling Oracle temporary tablespaces and Quick I/O

You can create a new temporary tablespace using Quick I/O files. However, you cannot convert existing temporary tablespaces which use regular files to Quick I/O with the `qio_getdbfiles` command on Oracle9.

By default, `qio_getdbfiles` skips any tablespaces marked `TEMPORARY` because they can be sparse, which means that not all blocks in the file are allocated. Quick I/O files cannot be sparse, as Quick I/O provides a raw-type interface to storage. If a sparse file is converted to a Quick I/O file, the Oracle instance can fail if Oracle attempts to write into one of these unallocated blocks. When you initially create a temporary tablespace on Quick I/O files, however, Oracle sees them as raw devices and does not create sparse files.

To convert a temporary tablespace using regular files to Quick I/O files, you can drop your existing temporary tablespaces which use regular files and recreate them using Quick I/O files. You can also leave the temporary tablespaces as regular files.

To obtain a list of file names that are not temporary

- ◆ Use the following SQL statements:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba;
SQL> select file_name from dba_data_files a,
         dba_tablespaces b where a.tablespace_name =
         b.tablespace_name and b.contents <> 'TEMPORARY';
```

To drop an existing temporary tablespace and recreate using Quick I/O files

1 Drop the temporary tablespace, including its contents:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba;
SQL> drop tablespace tablespace_name including contents;
```

2 Create a Quick I/O file on a VxFS file system:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -h header_size -s size \  
/mount_point/filename.dbf
```

3 Change the owner and group permissions on the file

```
# chown oracle:dba .filename
# chmod 660 .filename
```

4 Create a new temporary tablespace using the `create temporary tablespace` command.

To use the `create temporary tablespace` command:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba;
SQL> create temporary tablespace tablespace_name \  
tempfile '/mount_point/new_filename.dbf' size size reuse;
```

This example shows how to drop tablespace `temptps`, create a Quick I/O file `temp01.dbf`, change permissions and then create a new temporary tablespace `temptps` using the `create temporary tablespace` command:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba;
SQL> drop tablespace temptps including contents;
Tablespace dropped.
# /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -h 32k -s 100M /db01/temp01.dbf

# chown oracle:dba .temp01
# chmod 660 .temp01

$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect / as dba;
SQL> create temporary tablespace temptps \  
tempfile '/db01/temp01.dbf' \  

```

```
size 100M reuse;  
Tablespace created.
```

Displaying Quick I/O status and file attributes

You can obtain and display information about Quick I/O status and file attributes using various options of the `ls` command:

- al** Lists all files on a file system, including Quick I/O files and their links.
- lL** Shows if Quick I/O was successfully installed and enabled.
- a1L** Shows how a Quick I/O file name is resolved to that of a raw device.

To list all files on the current file system, including Quick I/O files and their links

- ◆ Use the `ls -al` command with the file names:

```
$ ls -al filename .filename
```

The following example shows how to use the `-a` option to display the absolute path name created using `qiomkfile`:

```
$ ls -al d* .d*  
  
lrwxr-xr-x 1 root sys 18 Jul 22 06:00 .dbfile -  
> .dbfile::cdev:vxfs:  
-rw-r----- 1 oracle dba 104865792 Jul 22 06:21 .dbfile.dbf  
lrwxr-xr-x 1 oracle dba 18 Jul 22 06:01 dbfile -  
> .dbfile::cdev:vxfs:  
lrwxr-xr-x 1 oracle dba 22 Jul 22 06:27 dbfile.dbf -  
> .dbfile.dbf::cdev:vxfs:
```

To determine if a datafile has been converted to Quick I/O

- ◆ Use the `ls` command as follows:

```
$ ls -lL filename
```

The following example shows how to determine if Quick I/O is installed and enabled:

```
$ ls -lL dbfile

crw-r--r--  1 oracle  dba    45, 1           Oct 2 13:42  dbfile

crw-r--r--  1 oracle  dba   237 0x000004  Oct 2 13:42  dbfile
```

where the first character, `c`, indicates it is a raw character device file, and the major and minor device numbers are displayed in the size field. If you see the raw device indication (`c`) and the size field is zero, Quick I/O did not install properly or does not have a valid license key.

To show a Quick I/O file resolved to a raw device

- ◆ Use the `ls` command with the file names as follows:

```
$ ls -alL filename .filename
```

The following example shows how the Quick I/O file name `dbfile` is resolved to that of a raw device:

```
$ ls -alL d* .d*

-rw-r-----  1 oracle  dba    104865792  Jul 22 06:21  .dbfile.dbf
crw-r-----  1 oracle  dba     145 0x000001  Jul 22 06:21  dbfile.dbf
```

Extending a Quick I/O file

Although Quick I/O files must be preallocated, they are not limited to the preallocated sizes. You can grow or “extend” a Quick I/O file by a specific amount or to a specific size, using options to the `qiomkfile` command. Extending Quick I/O files is a fast, online operation and offers a significant advantage over using raw devices.

Before extending a Quick I/O file, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- Prerequisites
- You must have sufficient space on the file system to extend the Quick I/O file.

- Usage notes
- You can also grow VxFS file systems online (provided the underlying disk or volume can be extended) using the `fsadm` command. You can expand the underlying volume and the filesystem with the `vxresize` command.
 - You must have superuser (`root`) privileges to resize VxFS file systems using the `fsadm` command.
 - See the `fsadm_vxfs(1M)` and `qiomkfile(1M)` manual pages for more information.

The following options are available with the `qiomkfile` command:

- e Extends the file by a specified amount to allow Oracle tablespace resizing.
- r Increases the file to a specified size to allow Oracle tablespace resizing.

To extend a Quick I/O file

- 1 If required, ensure the underlying storage device is large enough to contain a larger VxFS file system (see the `vxassist(1M)` manual page for more information), and resize the VxFS file system using `fsadm` command:

where:

- `-b` is the option for changing size
- `<newsize>` is the new size of the file system in bytes, kilobytes, megabytes, blocks, or sectors

- <mount_point> is the file system's mount point

2 Extend the Quick I/O file using the `qiomkfile` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -e extend_amount /mount_point/filename
```

or

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -r newsize /mount_point/filename
```

An example to show how to grow VxFS file system /db01 to 500MB and extend the `emp.dbf` Quick I/O file by 20MB:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -b 500M /db01
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -e 20M /db01/emp.dbf
```

An example to show how to grow VxFS file system /db01 to 500MB and resize the `emp.dbf` Quick I/O file to 300MB:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -b 500M /db01
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -r 300M /db01/emp.dbf
```

Using Oracle's AUTOEXTEND with Quick I/O files

Oracle supports an automatic extend feature that automatically grows a database file by a prespecified amount, up to a prespecified maximum size.

For regular file system files, `AUTOEXTEND` works transparently, provided the underlying file system has enough space. For example, suppose the current size of a database file `emp.dbf` is 100MB, but this file is expected to triple in size over time. To accommodate this growth using `AUTOEXTEND` feature, you can specify the `next size` at 20MB and `maxsize` at 300MB. This will automatically grow the file by 20MB until its size reaches 300MB. For example:

```
alter database datafile 'emp.dbf' autoextend on next 20m\  
maxsize 300m;
```

(See the Oracle Server SQL Reference Guide for more information about the

Note: You must have sufficient space on the underlying file system to `AUTOEXTEND` a file, and the underlying storage device must be large enough to contain the new, larger file system.

For Quick I/O files or raw devices, `AUTOEXTEND` does not know how to grow the underlying Quick I/O files or devices. Therefore, the Quick I/O file size must be large enough to accommodate the new size before `AUTOEXTEND` can grow the datafile.

You can use `AUTOEXTEND` with Quick I/O files in the following ways:

- Preallocate the Quick I/O file to a size at least as big as the maximum growth size expected for this database file.

Using this method, you would need to preallocate the Quick I/O file `emp.dbf` for the entire 300MB. The drawback is that this can unnecessarily lock up excess disk space. Raw devices have a similar requirement.

- Monitor the free space available in the Quick I/O file, and grow the file as necessary with the `qiomkfile` command.

Unlike raw devices, you can easily extend Quick I/O files online. Using this method, you can monitor the free space available in the Oracle datafiles and use the `qiomkfile` command to grow the Quick I/O files online as and when needed (typically when the file is about 80 to 90 percent full). This method does not require you to lock out unused disk space for Quick I/O files. The free space on the file system is available for use by other applications.

The following options are available for the `qiomkfile` command:

- e Extends the file by a specified amount to allow Oracle tablespace resizing.
- r Increases the file to a specified size to allow Oracle tablespace resizing.

You can grow underlying VxFS file systems online (provided the underlying disk or volume can be extended) using the `fsadm` command. See the `fsadm_vxfs(1M)` manual page for more information.

To monitor the free space available in an Oracle tablespace

- ◆ Check the free space currently available in the Oracle tablespace using the following Oracle SQL command:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba;
SQL> select * from dba_free_space where \
tablespace_name = 'tablespace_name';
SQL> exit
```

To extend a Quick I/O file using `qiomkfile`

- ◆ If the datafile is running low on free blocks, use the `qiomkfile` command to extend the Quick I/O file:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -e extend_amount \  
/mount_point/filename
```

The following example shows how to monitor the free space on the tablespace `EMP` on file system `/db01`:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog  
SQL> connect / as sysdba;  
SQL> select * from dba_free_space where tablespace_name = 'EMP';  
SQL> exit
```

The following example shows how to extend the Oracle datafile `emp.dbf` by 20MB (the specified `next` size) using the `qiomkfile` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiomkfile -e 20M /db01/emp.dbf
```

Recreating Quick I/O files after restoring a database

If you need to restore your database and were using Quick I/O files, you can use the `qio_recreate` command to automatically recreate the Quick I/O files after you have performed a full database recovery. The `qio_recreate` command uses the `mkqio.dat` file, which contains a list of the Quick I/O files used by the database and the file sizes.

For information on recovering your database, refer to the documentation that came with your database software.

Before recreating Quick I/O with the `qio_recreate` command, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Recover your database before attempting to recreate the Quick I/O files.■ You may be logged in as either the database administrator or <code>root</code> to run the <code>qio_recreate</code> command.■ In the directory from which you run the <code>qio_recreate</code> command, you must have an existing <code>mkqio.dat</code> file.■ The <code>ORACLE_SID</code> environment variable must be set. See “Converting Oracle files to Quick I/O files” on page 84. |
|---------------|--|

- Usage notes
- The `qio_recreate` command supports only conventional Quick I/O files.
 - Refer to the `qio_recreate(1M)` manual page for more information.

To recreate Quick I/O files after recovering a database

- ◆ Use the `qio_recreate` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/qio_recreate -T ora
```

You will not see any output if the command is successful.

When you run the `qio_recreate` command, the following actions occur:

If...	Then...
a Quick I/O file is missing	the Quick I/O file is recreated.
a symbolic link from a regular VxFS file to a Quick I/O file is missing	the symbolic link is recreated.
a symbolic link and its associated Quick I/O file are missing	both the link and the Quick I/O file are recreated.
a Quick I/O file is missing and the regular VxFS file that it is symbolically linked to is not the original VxFS file	the Quick I/O file is not recreated and a warning message is displayed.
a Quick I/O file is smaller than the size listed in the <code>mkqio.dat</code> file	the Quick I/O file is not recreated and a warning message is displayed.

Disabling Quick I/O

If you need to disable the Quick I/O feature, you first need to convert any Quick I/O files back to regular VxFS files. Then, remount the VxFS file system using a special mount option.

Before disabling Quick I/O, make sure the following condition has been met:

- Prerequisite The file system you are planning to remount must be located in the `/etc/filesystems` file.

To disable Quick I/O

- 1 If the database is running, shut it down.
- 2 To change Quick I/O files back to regular VxFS files, run the following command from the directory containing the `mkqio.dat` list:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/qio_convertdbfiles -u
```

The list of Quick I/O files in the `mkqio.dat` file is displayed. For example:

```
.file1::cdev:vxfs: --> file1  
.file2::cdev:vxfs: --> file2  
.file3::cdev:vxfs: --> file3  
.file4::cdev:vxfs: --> file4  
.file5::cdev:vxfs: --> file5
```

The `qio_convertdbfiles` command with the `undo` option (`-u`) renames the files from `.filename` to `filename` and removes the symbolic link to `.filename` that was created along with the Quick I/O files.

- 3 To remount the file system with Quick I/O disabled, use the `mount -o noqio` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/mount -F vxfs -o remount,noqio /mount_point
```

Using Veritas Cached Quick I/O

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Cached Quick I/O](#)
- [Enabling Cached Quick I/O on a file system](#)
- [Determining candidates for Cached Quick I/O](#)
- [Enabling and disabling Cached Quick I/O for individual files](#)

About Cached Quick I/O

Veritas Cached Quick I/O maintains and extends the database performance benefits of Veritas Quick I/O by making more efficient use of large, unused system memory through a selective buffering mechanism. Cached Quick I/O also supports features that support buffering behavior, such as file system read-ahead.

How Cached Quick I/O works

Cached Quick I/O is a specialized external caching mechanism specifically suitable to 32-bit ports of the Oracle server. Cached Quick I/O can be used on 64-bit ports of the Oracle server, but the benefits are not as great. Cached Quick I/O can be selectively applied to datafiles that are suffering an undesirable amount of physical disk I/O due to insufficient Oracle System Global Area (SGA). Cached Quick I/O works by taking advantage of the available physical memory that is left over after the operating system reserves the amount it needs and the Oracle SGA disk block buffers cache has been sized to the maximum capacity allowed within a 32-bit virtual address space. This extra memory serves as a cache to store file data, effectively serving as a second-level cache backing the SGA.

For example, consider a system configured with 12GB of physical memory, an operating system using 1GB, and a total Oracle size of 3.5GB. Unless you have other applications running on your system, the remaining 7.5GB of memory is unused. If you enable Cached Quick I/O, these remaining 7.5GB become available for caching database files.

Note: You cannot allocate specific amounts of the available memory to Cached Quick I/O. When enabled, Cached Quick I/O takes advantage of available memory.

Cached Quick I/O is not beneficial for all files in a database. Turning on caching for all database files can degrade performance due to extra memory management overhead (double buffer copying). You must use file I/O statistics to determine which individual database files benefit from caching, and then enable or disable Cached Quick I/O for individual files.

If you understand the applications that generate load on your database and how this load changes at different times during the day, you can use Cached Quick I/O to maximize performance. By enabling or disabling Cached Quick I/O on a per-file basis at different times during the day, you are using Cached Quick I/O to dynamically tune the performance of a database.

For example, files that store historical data are not generally used during normal business hours in a transaction processing environment. Reports that make use of this historical data are generally run during off-peak hours when interactive database use is at a minimum. During normal business hours, you can disable Cached Quick I/O for database files that store historical data in order to maximize memory available to other user applications. Then, during off-peak hours, you can enable Cached Quick I/O on the same files when they are used for report generation. This will provide extra memory resources to the database server without changing any database configuration parameters. Enabling file system read-ahead in this manner and buffering read data can provide great performance benefits, especially in large sequential scans.

You can automate the enabling and disabling of Cached Quick I/O on a per-file basis using scripts, allowing the same job that produces reports to tune the file system behavior and make the best use of system resources. You can specify different sets of files for different jobs to maximize file system and database performance.

How Cached Quick I/O improves database performance

Enabling Cached Quick I/O on suitable Quick I/O files improves database performance by using the file system buffer cache to store data. This data storage

speeds up system reads by accessing the system buffer cache and avoiding disk I/O when searching for information.

Having data at the cache level improves database performance in the following ways:

- For read operations, Cached Quick I/O caches database blocks in the system buffer cache, which can reduce the number of physical I/O operations and therefore improve read performance.
- For write operations, Cached Quick I/O uses a direct-write, copy-behind technique to preserve its buffer copy of the data. After the direct I/O is scheduled and while it is waiting for the completion of the I/O, the file system updates its buffer to reflect the changed data being written out. For online transaction processing, Cached Quick I/O achieves better than raw device performance in database throughput on large platforms with very large physical memories.
- For sequential table scans, Cached Quick I/O can significantly reduce the query response time because of the read-ahead algorithm used by Veritas File System. If a user needs to read the same range in the file while the data is still in cache, the system is likely to return an immediate cache hit rather than scan for data on the disk.

How to set up Cached Quick I/O

To set up and use Cached Quick I/O, you should do the following in the order in which they are listed:

- Enable Cached Quick I/O on the underlying file systems used for your database.
- Exercise the system in your production environment to generate file I/O statistics.
- Collect the file I/O statistics while the files are in use.
- Analyze the file I/O statistics to determine which files benefit from Cached Quick I/O.
- Disable Cached Quick I/O on files that do not benefit from caching.

Enabling Cached Quick I/O on a file system

Cached Quick I/O depends on Veritas Quick I/O running as an underlying system enhancement in order to function correctly. Follow the procedures listed here to ensure that you have the correct setup to use Cached Quick I/O successfully.

Prerequisites

- You must have permission to change file system behavior using the `vxtunefs` command to enable or disable Cached Quick I/O. By default, you need superuser (`root`) permissions to run the `vxtunefs` command, but other system users do not. Superuser (`root`) must specifically grant database administrators permission to use this command as follows:

```
# chown root:dba /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs
# chmod 4550 /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs
```

where users belonging to the `dba` group are granted permission to run the `vxtunefs` command. We recommend this selective, more secure approach for granting access to powerful commands.

- You must enable Quick I/O on the file system. Quick I/O is enabled automatically at file system mount time.

If you have correctly enabled Quick I/O on your system, you can proceed to enable Cached Quick I/O as follows:

- Set the file system Cached Quick I/O flag, which enables Cached Quick I/O for all files in the file system.
- Setting the file system Cached Quick I/O flag enables caching for all files in the file system. You must disable Cached Quick I/O on individual Quick I/O files that do not benefit from caching to avoid consuming memory unnecessarily. This final task occurs at the end of the enabling process.

Usage notes

- Do not enable Cached Quick I/O if Oracle is using Oracle Disk Manager.

Enabling and disabling the `qio_cache_enable` flag

As superuser (`root`), set the `qio_cache_enable` flag using the `vxtunefs` command after you mount the file system.

To enable the `qio_cache_enable` flag for a file system

- ◆ Use the `vxtunefs` command as follows:

```
# /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs -s -o qio_cache_enable=1 /  
mount_point
```

For example:

```
# /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs -s -o qio_cache_enable=1 /db02
```

where `/db02` is a VxFS file system containing the Quick I/O files and setting the `qio_cache_enable` flag to “1” enables Cached Quick I/O. This command enables caching for all the Quick I/O files on this file system.

To disable the flag on the same file system

- ◆ Use the `vxtunefs` command as follows:

```
# /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs -s -o qio_cache_enable=0 /mount_point
```

For example:

```
# /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs -s -o qio_cache_enable=0 /db02
```

where `/db02` is a VxFS file system containing the Quick I/O files and setting the `qio_cache_enable` flag to “0” disables Cached Quick I/O. This command disables caching for all the Quick I/O files on this file system.

Making Cached Quick I/O settings persistent across reboots and mounts

You can make the Cached Quick I/O system setting persistent across reboots and mounts by adding a file system entry in the `/etc/vx/tunefstab` file.

Note: The `tunefstab` file is a user-created file. For information on how to create the file and add tuning parameters, see the `tunefstab(4)` manual page.

To enable a file system after rebooting

- ◆ Put the file system in the `/etc/vx/tunefstab` file and set the flag entry:

```
/dev/vx/dsk/dgname/volname qio_cache_enable=1
```

where:

- `/dev/vx/dsk/dgname/volname` is the name of a block device
- `dgname` is the name of the disk group

- *volname* is the name of the volume

For example:

```
/dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/db01 qio_cache_enable=1  
/dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/db02 qio_cache_enable=1
```

where `/dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/db01` is the block device on which the file system resides.

The `tunefstab (4)` manual pages contain information on how to add tuning parameters.

See the `tunefstab (4)` manual page.

Note: `vxtunefs` can specify a mount point or a block device; `tunefstab` must always specify a block device only.

Using `vxtunefs` to obtain tuning information

Check the setting of the `qio_cache_enable` flag for each file system using the `vxtunefs` command.

To obtain information on only the `qio_cache_enable` flag setting

- ◆ Use the `grep` command with `vxtunefs`:

```
# /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs /mount_point | grep qio_cache_enable
```

For example:

```
# /sbin/fs/vxfs5.0/vxtunefs /db01 | grep qio_cache_enable
```

where `/db01` is the name of the file system. This command displays only the `qio_cache_enable` setting as follows:

```
qio_cache_enable = 0
```

You can also use the `vxtunefs` command to obtain a more complete list of I/O characteristics and tuning statistics.

See the `vxtunefs (1)` manual page.

To obtain information on all `vxtunefs` system parameters

- ◆ Use the `vxtunefs` command without `grep`:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxtunefs /mount_point
```

For example:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxtunefs /db01
```

The `vxtunefs` command displays output similar to the following:

```
Filesystem i/o parameters for /db01
read_pref_io = 2097152
read_nstream = 1
read_unit_io = 2097152
write_pref_io = 2097152
write_nstream = 1
write_unit_io = 2097152
pref_strength = 10
buf_breakup_size = 2097152
discovered_direct_iosz = 262144
max_direct_iosz = 1048576
default_indir_size = 8192
qio_cache_enable = 1
write_throttle = 0
max_diskq = 33554432
initial_extent_size = 8
max_seqio_extent_size = 2048
max_buf_data_size = 8192
hsm_write_prealloc = 0
read_ahead = 1
inode_aging_size = 0
inode_aging_count = 0
fcl_maxalloc = 222425088
fcl_keeptime = 0
fcl_winterval = 3600
fcl_ointerval = 600
oltp_load = 0
```

The `vxtunefs(1)` manual pages contain a complete description of `vxtunefs` parameters and the tuning instructions.

See the `vxtunefs(1)` manual page.

Determining candidates for Cached Quick I/O

Determining which files can benefit from Cached Quick I/O is an iterative process that varies with each application. For this reason, you may need to complete the

following steps more than once to determine the best possible candidates for Cached Quick I/O.

Before determining candidate files for Quick I/O, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- Prerequisites ■ You must enable Cached Quick I/O for the file systems. See [“Enabling Cached Quick I/O on a file system”](#) on page 103.
- Usage notes ■ See the `qiostat (1M)` manual page for more information.

Collecting I/O statistics

Once you have enabled Cached Quick I/O on a file system, you need to collect statistics to determine and designate the files that can best take advantage of its benefits.

To collect statistics needed to determine files that benefit from Cached Quick I/O

- 1 Reset the `qiostat` counters by entering:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiostat -r /mount_point/filenames
```

- 2 Run the database under full normal load and through a complete cycle (24 to 48 hours in most cases) to determine your system I/O patterns and database traffic in different usage categories (for example, OLTP, reports, and backups) at different times of the day.
- 3 While the database is running, run `qiostat -l` to report the caching statistics as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiostat -l /mount_point/filenames
```

or, use the `-i` option to see statistic reports at specified intervals:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiostat -i n /mount_point/filenames
```

where `n` is time in seconds

For example:

To collect I/O statistics from all database files on file system `/db01`:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qiostat -l /db01/*.dbf
```

About I/O statistics

The output of the `qiostat` command is the primary source of information to use in deciding whether to enable or disable Cached Quick I/O on specific files. Statistics are printed in two lines per object.

The second line of information is defined as follows:

- **CREAD** is the number of reads from the VxFS cache (or total number of reads to Quick I/O files with cache advisory on)
- **PREAD** is the number of reads going to the disk for Quick I/O files with the cache advisory on
- **HIT RATIO** is displayed as a percentage and is the number of **CREADS** minus the number of **PREADS** times 100 divided by the total number of **CREADS**. The formula looks like this:

$$(\text{CREADS} - \text{PREADS}) * 100 / \text{CREADS}$$

The `qiostat -l` command output looks similar to the following:

```

                                OPERATIONS  FILE BLOCKS  AVG TIME(ms)
CACHE_STATISTICS

FILE NAME          READ  WRITE    READ WRITE    READ WRITE
CREAD  PREAD  HIT RATIO
-----
/db01/cust.dbf    17128 9634    68509 38536    24.8 0.4
17124 15728  8.2

/db01/system.dbf  6      1       21     4        10.0 0.0
6      6      0.0

/db01/stk.dbf    62552 38498   250213 153992   21.9 0.4
62567 49060 21.6

                                OPERATIONS  FILE BLOCKS  AVG TIME(ms)
CACHE_STATISTICS

FILE NAME          READ  WRITE    READ WRITE    READ WRITE
CREAD  PREAD  HIT RATIO
-----

                                OPERATIONS  FILE BLOCKS  AVG TIME(ms)
CACHE_STATISTICS

FILE NAME          READ  WRITE    READ WRITE    READ WRITE
CREAD  PREAD  HIT RATIO
-----
```

Analyze the output to find out where the cache-hit ratio is above a given threshold. A cache-hit ratio above 20 percent on a file for a given application may be sufficient to justify caching on that file. For systems with larger loads, the acceptable ratio may be 30 percent or above. Cache-hit-ratio thresholds vary according to the database type and load.

Using the sample output above as an example, the file `/db01/system.dbf` does not benefit from the caching because the cache-hit ratio is zero. In addition, the file receives very little I/O during the sampling duration.

However, the file `/db01/stk.dbf` has a cache-hit ratio of 21.6 percent. If you have determined that, for your system and load, this figure is above the acceptable threshold, it means the database can benefit from caching. Also, study the numbers reported for the read and write operations. When you compare the number of reads and writes for the `/db01/stk.dbf` file, you see that the number of reads is roughly twice the number of writes. You can achieve the greatest performance gains with Cached Quick I/O when using it for files that have higher read than write activity.

Based on these two factors, `/db01/stk.dbf` is a prime candidate for Cached Quick I/O.

See [“Enabling and disabling Cached Quick I/O for individual files”](#) on page 111.

Effects of read-aheads on I/O statistics

The number of `CREADS` in the `qiostat` output is the total number of reads performed, including Cached Quick I/O, and the number of `PREADS` is the number of physical reads. The difference between `CREADS` and `PREADS` (`CREADS - PREADS`) is the number of reads satisfied from the data in the file system cache. Thus, you expect that the number of `PREADS` would always be equal to or lower than the number of `CREADS`.

However, the `PREADS` counter also increases when the file system performs read-aheads. These read-aheads occur when the file system detects sequential reads. In isolated cases where cache hits are extremely low, the output from `qiostat` could show that the number of `CREADS` is lower than the number of `PREADS`. The cache-hit ratio calculated against these `CREAD/PREAD` values is misleading when used to determine whether Cached Quick I/O should be enabled or disabled.

Under these circumstances, you can make a more accurate decision based on a collective set of statistics by gathering multiple sets of data points. Consequently, you might want to enable Cached Quick I/O for all the data files in a given tablespace, even if just one of the files exhibited a high cache-hit ratio.

Other tools for analysis

While the output of the `qiostat` command is the primary source of information to use in deciding whether to enable Cached Quick I/O on specific files, we also recommend using other tools in conjunction with `qiostat`. For example, benchmarking software that measures database throughput is also helpful. If a benchmark test in which Cached Quick I/O was enabled for a certain set of data files resulted in improved performance, you can also use those results as the basis for enabling Cached Quick I/O.

Enabling and disabling Cached Quick I/O for individual files

After using `qiostat` or other analysis tools to determine the appropriate files for Cached Quick I/O, you need to disable Cached Quick I/O for those individual files that do not benefit from caching using the `qioadmin` command.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Prerequisites | ■ Enable Cached Quick I/O for the file system before enabling or disabling Cached Quick I/O at the individual file level. |
| Usage notes | ■ You can enable or disable Cached Quick I/O for individual files while the database is online.
■ You should monitor files regularly using <code>qiostat</code> to ensure that a file's cache-hit ratio has not changed enough to reconsider enabling or disabling Cached Quick I/O for the file.
■ Enabling or disabling Cached Quick I/O for an individual file is also referred to as setting the cache advisory on or off.
■ See the <code>qioadmin(1)</code> manual page. |

Setting cache advisories for individual files

You can enable and disable Cached Quick I/O for individual files by changing the cache advisory settings for those files.

To disable Cached Quick I/O for an individual file

- ◆ Use the `qioadmin` command to set the cache advisory to `OFF` as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qioadmin -S filename=OFF /mount_point
```

For example, to disable Cached Quick I/O for the file `/db01/system.dbf`, set the cache advisory to `OFF`:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qioadmin -S system.dbf=OFF /db01
```

To enable Cached Quick I/O for an individual file

- ◆ Use the `qioadmin` command to set the cache advisory to `ON` as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qioadmin -S filename=ON /mount_point
```

For example, running `qiostat` shows the cache hit ratio for the file `/db01/system.dbf` reaches a level that would benefit from caching. To enable Cached Quick I/O for the file `/db01/system.dbf`, set the cache advisory to `ON`:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qioadmin -S system.dbf=ON /db01
```

Making individual file settings for Cached Quick I/O persistent

You can make the enable or disable individual file settings for Cached Quick I/O persistent across reboots and mounts by adding cache advisory entries in the `/etc/vx/qioadmin` file.

Cache advisories set using the `qioadmin` command are stored as extended attributes of the file in the inode. These settings persist across file system remounts and system reboots, but these attributes are not backed up by the usual backup methods, so they cannot be restored. Therefore, always be sure to reset cache advisories after each file restore. This is not necessary if you maintain the cache advisories for Quick I/O files in the `/etc/vx/qioadmin` file.

To enable or disable individual file settings for Cached Quick I/O automatically after a reboot or mount

- ◆ Add cache advisory entries in the `/etc/vx/qioadmin` file as follows:

```
device=/dev/vx/dsk/<diskgroup>/<volume>

filename,OFF

filename,OFF

filename,OFF

filename,ON
```

For example, to make the Cached Quick I/O settings for individual files in the `/db01` file system persistent, edit the `/etc/vx/qioadmin` file similar to the following:

```
#
# List of files to cache in /db01 file system
#
device=/dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/db01

cust.dbf,OFF
system.dbf,OFF
stk.dbf,ON
```

Determining individual file settings for Cached Quick I/O using `qioadmin`

You can determine whether Cached Quick I/O is enabled or disabled for individual files by displaying the file's cache advisory setting using the `qioadmin` command.

Note: To verify caching, always check the setting of the flag `qio_cache_enable` using `vxtunefs`, along with the individual cache advisories for each file.

To display the current cache advisory settings for a file

- ◆ Use the `qioadmin` command with the `-P` option as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qioadmin -P filename /mount_point
```

For example, to display the current cache advisory setting for the file `cust.dbf` in the `/db01` file system:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/qioadmin -P cust.dbf /db01  
cust.dbf,OFF
```

Using Veritas Concurrent I/O

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Concurrent I/O](#)
- [Enabling and disabling Concurrent I/O](#)

About Concurrent I/O

Veritas Concurrent I/O improves the performance of regular files on a VxFS file system without the need for extending namespaces and presenting the files as devices. This simplifies administrative tasks and allows databases, which do not have a sequential read/write requirement, to access files concurrently. This chapter describes how to use the Concurrent I/O feature.

Quick I/O is still an alternative solution for DMS tablespaces.

See [“About Quick I/O”](#) on page 75.

In some cases (for example, if the system has extra memory), Cached Quick I/O may further enhance performance.

See [“About Cached Quick I/O”](#) on page 101.

If you are using Oracle 8 and do not need file-level tunable caching, you should use the Concurrent I/O feature. You should use Quick I/O or Cached Quick I/O if you need file-level tunable caching on Oracle 8. If you are using Oracle9 or Oracle 10, we recommend that you use Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager.

How Concurrent I/O works

Traditionally, UNIX semantics require that read and write operations on a file occur in a serialized order. Because of this, a file system must enforce strict ordering of overlapping read and write operations. However, databases do not usually require this level of control and implement concurrency control internally, without using a file system for order enforcement.

The Veritas Concurrent I/O feature removes these semantics from the read and write operations for databases and other applications that do not require serialization.

The benefits of using Concurrent I/O are:

- Concurrency between a single writer and multiple readers
- Concurrency among multiple writers
- Minimalization of serialization for extending writes
- All I/Os are direct and do not use file system caching
- I/O requests are sent directly to file systems
- Inode locking is avoided
- Concurrent I/O can be used for control files, temporary datafiles, and archive logs

Oracle's `filesystemio_options` parameter

In Oracle9 Release 2 (9.2), you can use the `filesystemio_optionsinit.ora` parameter to enable or disable asynchronous I/O, direct I/O, or Concurrent I/O on file system files. This parameter is used on files that reside in non-VxFS filesystems only. This parameter is not applicable to VxFS files, ODM files, or Quick I/O files.

See your Oracle documentation for more details.

Enabling and disabling Concurrent I/O

Concurrent I/O is not turned on by default and must be enabled manually. You will also have to manually disable Concurrent I/O if you choose not to use it in the future.

Enabling Concurrent I/O

Because you do not need to extend name spaces and present the files as devices, you can enable Concurrent I/O on regular files.

Before enabling Concurrent I/O, review the following:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To use the Concurrent I/O feature, the file system must be a VxFS file system. ■ Make sure the mount point on which you plan to mount the file system exists. ■ Make sure the DBA can access the mount point. |
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ When a file system is mounted with the Concurrent I/O option, do not enable ODM. If you try to enable ODM on a file system mounted with the Concurrent I/O option, you will get an error message similar to the following: <pre style="margin-left: 20px;">ORA-600: internal error code, arguments: [ksfd_odmcr8], [ODM ERROR V-41-4-2-200-22 Invalid argument], [], [], [], [], [], []</pre> ■ If Quick I/O is available and a file system is mounted with the Concurrent I/O option, do not enable Quick I/O. (Quick I/O is not available on Linux.) Oracle will not be able to open the Quick I/O files and the instance start up will fail. If you try to enable Quick I/O on a file system mounted with the Concurrent I/O option, you will receive an error message similar to the following: <pre style="margin-left: 20px;">ORA-01157: can not identify/lock datafile <i>filename</i> - see DBWR \ trace file ORA-01110: datafile <i>filename</i>: '/path_name/qio.f'</pre> ■ If the Quick I/O feature is available, do not use any Quick I/O tools if the database is using Concurrent I/O. ■ See the (1M) manual page for more information about mount settings. |

To enable Concurrent I/O on a file system using mount with the -o cio option

- ◆ Mount the file system using the `mount` command as follows:

```
# /usr/sbin/mount -F vxfs -o cio special /mount_point
```

where:

- *special* is a block special device

- */mount_point* is the directory where the file system will be mounted.

For example, to mount a file system named `/datavol` on a mount point named `/oradata`:

```
# /usr/sbin/mount -F vxfs -o cio /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/datavol \  
/oradata
```

Disabling Concurrent I/O

If you need to disable Concurrent I/O, unmount the VxFS file system and mount it again without the mount option.

To disable Concurrent I/O on a file system using the mount command

- 1 Shutdown the Oracle instance.
- 2 Unmount the file system using the `umount` command.
- 3 Mount the file system again using the `mount` command without using the `-o cio` option.

Using Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Oracle Disk Manager](#)
- [About Oracle Disk Manager and Oracle Managed Files](#)
- [Setting up Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager](#)
- [How to prepare existing database storage for Oracle Disk Manager](#)
- [Converting Quick I/O files to Oracle Disk Manager files](#)
- [Verifying that Oracle Disk Manager is configured](#)
- [Disabling the Oracle Disk Manager feature](#)

About Oracle Disk Manager

Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager is specifically designed for Oracle9i or later to enhance file management and disk I/O throughput. The features of Oracle Disk Manager are best suited for databases that reside in a file system contained in Veritas File System. Oracle Disk Manager allows Oracle9i or later users to improve database throughput for I/O intensive workloads with special I/O optimization.

Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager supports Oracle Resilvering. With Oracle Resilvering, the storage layer receives information from the Oracle database as to which regions or blocks of a mirrored datafile to resync after a system crash. Oracle Resilvering avoids overhead from the VxVM DRL, which increases performance.

Oracle Disk Manager reduces administrative overhead by providing enhanced support for Oracle Managed Files. Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager has Quick I/O-like capabilities, but is transparent to the user. Unlike Veritas Quick I/O, files managed using Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager do not require special file naming conventions. The Oracle Disk Manager interface uses regular database files. If you are upgrading to Oracle9i or later, you should convert from Quick I/O to Oracle Disk Manager.

Database administrators can choose the datafile type used with the Oracle product. Historically, choosing between file system files and raw devices was based on manageability and performance. The exception to this is a database intended for use with Oracle Parallel Server, which requires raw devices on most platforms. If performance is not as important as administrative ease, file system files are typically the preferred file type. However, while an application may not have substantial I/O requirements when it is first implemented, I/O requirements may change. If an application becomes dependent upon I/O throughput, converting datafiles from file system to raw devices is often necessary.

Oracle Disk Manager was designed to work with Oracle9i or later to provide both performance and manageability. Oracle Disk Manager provides support for Oracle's file management and I/O calls for database storage on VxFS file systems and on raw volumes or partitions. This feature is provided as a dynamically-loaded shared library with which Oracle binds when it is loaded. The Oracle Disk Manager library works with an Oracle Disk Manager driver that is loaded in the kernel to perform its functions.

If you are upgrading to Oracle9i or later, you should convert from Quick I/O to Oracle Disk Manager.

The benefits of using Oracle Disk Manager are as follows:

- True kernel asynchronous I/O for files and raw devices
- Reduced system call overhead
- Improved file system layout by preallocating contiguous files on a VxFS file system
- Performance on file system files that is equivalent to raw devices
- Transparent to users
- Contiguous datafile allocation

How Oracle Disk Manager improves database performance

Oracle Disk Manager improves database I/O performance to VxFS file systems by:

- Supporting kernel asynchronous I/O
- Supporting direct I/O and avoiding double buffering
- Avoiding kernel write locks on database files
- Supporting many concurrent I/Os in one system call
- Avoiding duplicate opening of files per Oracle instance
- Allocating contiguous datafiles

About kernel asynchronous I/O support

Asynchronous I/O performs non-blocking system level reads and writes, allowing the system to perform multiple I/O requests simultaneously. Kernel asynchronous I/O is better than library asynchronous I/O because the I/O is queued to the disk device drivers in the kernel, minimizing context switches to accomplish the work.

About direct I/O support and avoiding double buffering

I/O on files using `read()` and `write()` system calls typically results in data being copied twice: once between the user and kernel space, and the other between kernel space and the disk. In contrast, I/O on raw devices is copied directly between user space and disk, saving one level of copying. As with I/O on raw devices, Oracle Disk Manager I/O avoids the extra copying. Oracle Disk Manager bypasses the system cache and accesses the files with the same efficiency as raw devices. Avoiding double buffering reduces the memory overhead on the system. Eliminating the copies from kernel to user address space significantly reduces kernel mode processor utilization freeing more processor cycles to execute the application code.

About avoiding kernel write locks on database files

When database I/O is performed by way of the `write()` system call, each system call acquires and releases a kernel write lock on the file. This lock prevents simultaneous write operations on the same file. Because database systems usually implement their own locks for managing concurrent access to files, write locks unnecessarily serialize I/O writes. Oracle Disk Manager bypasses file system locking and lets the database server control data access.

About supporting many concurrent I/Os in one system call

When performing asynchronous I/O, an Oracle process may try to issue additional I/O requests while collecting completed I/Os, or it may try to wait for particular I/O requests synchronously, as it can do no other work until the I/O is completed. The Oracle process may also try to issue requests to different files. All this activity

can be accomplished with one system call when Oracle uses the Oracle Disk Manager I/O interface. This interface reduces the number of system calls performed to accomplish the same work, reducing the number of user space/kernel space context switches.

About avoiding duplicate file opens

Oracle Disk Manager allows files to be opened once, providing a “file identifier.” This is called “identifying” the files. The same file identifiers can be used by any other processes in the Oracle instance. The file status is maintained by the Oracle Disk Manager driver in the kernel. The reduction in file open calls reduces processing overhead at process initialization and termination, and it reduces the number of file status structures required in the kernel.

About allocating contiguous datafiles

Oracle Disk Manager can improve performance for queries, such as sort and parallel queries, that use temporary tablespaces. Without Oracle Disk Manager, Oracle does not initialize the datafiles for the temporary tablespaces. Therefore, the datafiles become sparse files and are generally fragmented. Sparse or fragmented files lead to poor query performance. When using Oracle Disk Manager, the datafiles are initialized for the temporary tablespaces and are allocated in a contiguous fashion, so that they are not sparse.

About Oracle Disk Manager and Oracle Managed Files

Oracle9i or later offers a feature known as Oracle Managed Files (OMF). OMF manages datafile attributes such as file names, file location, storage attributes, and whether or not the file is in use by the database. OMF is only supported for databases that reside in file systems. OMF functionality is greatly enhanced by Oracle Disk Manager.

The main requirement for OMF is that the database be placed in file system files. There are additional prerequisites imposed upon the file system itself.

OMF is a file management feature that:

- Eliminates the task of providing unique file names
- Offers dynamic space management by way of the tablespace auto-extend functionality of Oracle9i or later

OMF should only be used in file systems that reside within striped logical volumes, which support dynamic file system growth. File systems intended for OMF use must also support large, extensible files in order to facilitate tablespace auto-extension. Raw partitions cannot be used for OMF.

By default, OMF datafiles are created with auto-extend capability. This attribute reduces capacity planning associated with maintaining existing databases and implementing new applications. Due to disk fragmentation that occurs as the tablespace grows over time, database administrators have been somewhat cautious when considering auto-extensible tablespaces. Oracle Disk Manager eliminates this concern.

When Oracle Disk Manager is used in conjunction with OMF, special care is given within Veritas Extension for Disk Manager to ensure that contiguous disk space is allocated to datafiles, including space allocated to a tablespace when it is auto-extended. The table and index scan throughput does not decay as the tablespace grows.

How Oracle Disk Manager works with Oracle Managed Files

The following example illustrates the relationship between Oracle Disk Manager and Oracle Managed Files (OMF). The example shows the `init.ora` contents and the command for starting the database instance. To simplify Oracle UNDO management, the new Oracle9i or later `init.ora` parameter `UNDO_MANAGEMENT` is set to `AUTO`. This is known as System-Managed Undo.

Note: Before building an OMF database, you need the appropriate `init.ora` default values. These values control the location of the `SYSTEM` tablespace, online redo logs, and control files after the `CREATE DATABASE` statement is executed.

```
$ cat initPROD.ora
UNDO_MANAGEMENT = AUTO
DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST = '/PROD'
DB_CREATE_ONLINE_LOG_DEST_1 = '/PROD'
db_block_size = 4096
db_name = PROD
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba
SQL> startup nomount pfile= initPROD.ora
```

The Oracle instance starts.

```
Total System Global Area 93094616 bytes
Fixed Size 279256 bytes
Variable Size 41943040 bytes
Database Buffers 50331648 bytes
Redo Buffers 540672 bytes
```

To implement a layout that places files associated with the `EMP_TABLE` tablespace in a directory separate from the `EMP_INDEX` tablespace, use the `ALTER SYSTEM` statement. This example shows how OMF handles file names and storage clauses and paths. The layout allows you to think of the tablespaces as objects in a file system as opposed to a collection of datafiles. Since OMF uses the Oracle Disk Manager file resize function, the tablespace files are initially created with the default size of 100MB and grow as needed. Use the `MAXSIZE` attribute to limit growth.

The following example shows the commands for creating an OMF database and for creating the `EMP_TABLE` and `EMP_INDEX` tablespaces in their own locale.

Note: The directory must exist for OMF to work, so the `SQL*Plus HOST` command is used to create the directories:

```
SQL> create database PROD;
```

The database is created.

```
SQL> HOST mkdir /PROD/EMP_TABLE;
```

```
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM SET DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST = '/PROD/EMP_TABLE';
```

The system is altered.

```
SQL> create tablespace EMP_TABLE DATAFILE AUTOEXTEND ON MAXSIZE \
500M;
```

A tablespace is created.

```
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM SET DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST = '/PROD/EMP_INDEX';
```

The system is altered.

```
SQL> create tablespace EMP_INDEX DATAFILE AUTOEXTEND ON MAXSIZE \
100M;
```

A tablespace is created.

Use the `ls` command to show the newly created database:

```
$ ls -lFR
total 638062
drwxr-xr-x 2 oracle9i dba 96 May  3 15:43 EMP_INDEX/
drwxr-xr-x 2 oracle9i dba 96 May  3 15:43 EMP_TABLE/
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 104858112 May  3 17:28 ora_1_BehYgc0m.log
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 104858112 May  3 17:27 ora_2_BehYu4NA.log
```

```
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 806912 May 3 15:43 ora_BEahlfUX.ctl
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 10489856 May 3 15:43 ora_sys_undo_BEajPSVq.dbf
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 104861696 May 3 15:4 ora_system_BEaiFE8v.dbf
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 186 May 3 15:03 PROD.ora

./EMP_INDEX:
total 204808
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 104861696 May 3 15:43
ora_emp_inde_BEakGfun.dbf

./EMP_TABLE:
total 204808
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle9i dba 104861696 May 3 15:43
ora_emp_tabl_BEak1LqK.dbf
```

Setting up Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager

Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager is part of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle. Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager is enabled once Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle and Oracle9i or later are installed, and the Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager library is linked to the library in the `{ORACLE_HOME}/lib` directory.

Before setting up Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager, the following conditions must be met:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle must be installed on your system.■ Oracle9i, or later, must be installed on your system.■ If Cached Quick I/O is available, do not enable Oracle Disk Manager when Cached Quick I/O is enabled for datafiles. |
| Usage Notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ When the Quick I/O feature is available, Oracle Disk Manager uses the Quick I/O driver to perform asynchronous I/O. Do not turn off the Quick I/O mount option, which is the default.■ Oracle uses default file access methods if Oracle9i or later or Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle is not installed, or VxFS 5.0 is not available in the kernel. |

Linking the Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager library into Oracle home

If the Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager library is not linked into Oracle home, perform the following procedure. The steps vary depending on the Oracle version.

To link the Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager library into Oracle home for Oracle 11g

- 1 Shut down the database instance before linking the Oracle Disk Manager library.
- 2 Use the `mv` and `ln` commands as follows.

For HP-UX PA, enter:

```
# mv ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.sl.orig  
# ln -s /opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.sl
```

For HP-UX IA, enter:

```
# mv ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.so \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.so.orig  
# ln -s /opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.so
```

- 3 Start the database instance after linking the Oracle Disk Manager library.

To link the Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager library into Oracle home for Oracle 10g

- 1 Shut down the database instance before linking the Oracle Disk Manager library.
- 2 Use the `mv` and `ln` commands as follows:

For HP-UX PA, enter:

```
# mv ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.sl.orig  
# ln -s /opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.sl
```

For HP-UX IA, enter:

```
# mv ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.so \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.so.orig  
# ln -s /opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.so
```

- 3 Start the database instance after linking the Oracle Disk Manager library.

To link the Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager library into Oracle home for Oracle9i

- 1 Shut down the database instance before linking the Oracle Disk Manager library.
- 2 Use the `mv` and `ln` commands as follows.

For HP-UX PA, enter:

```
# mv ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.sl.orig  
# ln -s /opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.sl
```

For HP-UX IA, enter:

```
# mv ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.so \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.so.orig  
# ln -s /opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl \  
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.so
```

When Oracle Disk Manager is enabled, a message similar to the following is sent to the alert log: "Oracle instance running with ODM: Veritas #.# ODM Library, Version #.#."

When the system and instance are configured correctly, the Oracle Disk Manager feature is used, by default, for accessing any database storage.

- 3 Start the database instance after linking the Oracle Disk Manager library.

How to prepare existing database storage for Oracle Disk Manager

Non-Quick I/O files in a VxFS file system work with Oracle Disk Manager without any changes. The files are found and identified for Oracle Disk Manager I/O by default. To take full advantage of Oracle Disk Manager datafiles, files should not be fragmented.

If you are using Quick I/O files in a VxFS file system and you want to move to Oracle Disk Manager, convert the Quick I/O files to normal files using the `qio_convertdbfiles -u` command.

You must be running Oracle9i or later to use Oracle Disk Manager.

Converting Quick I/O files to Oracle Disk Manager files

If you plan to run Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle with Oracle9i or later, and you have been using Quick I/O files, it is recommended that you convert your Quick I/O files to regular files. This should be done after you upgrade Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle.

Note: If you are running an earlier version of Oracle (Oracle 8.x or lower), you should not convert your Quick I/O files because Oracle Disk Manager is for Oracle9i or later only.

Because Oracle Disk Manager uses the Quick I/O driver to perform asynchronous I/O, do not turn off the Quick I/O mount option, which is the default.

To convert Quick I/O files to Oracle Disk Manager files

- 1 Run `qio_getdbfiles` to retrieve a list of all datafiles.

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/qio_getdbfiles -T ora -a
```

The list is compiled in a file named `mkqio.dat`.

- 2 Shutdown the database.
- 3 Run `qio_convertdbfiles` in the directory containing the `mkqio.dat` file. The `qio_convertdbfiles` script converts all Quick I/O files to ODM files.

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/qio_convertdbfiles -T ora -u
```

- 4 Restart the database instance.

Verifying that Oracle Disk Manager is configured

Before verifying that Oracle Disk Manager is configured, make sure that the following conditions are met:

- Prerequisites
- `/opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl` must exist.
 - If you are using Oracle9i, `$ORACLE_HOME/lib/libodm9.sl` is linked to `/opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl`.
 - If you are using Oracle 10g, `$ORACLE_HOME/lib/libodm10.sl` is linked to `/opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl`.
 - The VRTSdbed license must be valid.
 - The VRTSodm package must be installed.

Note: In addition to the following procedure, you can instead check the conditions using the `dbed_checkconfig` command, which is installed with Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle.

See the `dbed_checkconfig(1M)` manual page for more information.

To verify that Oracle Disk Manager is configured

1 Check the VRTSdbed license:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxlictest -n "VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle" \  
-f "ODM"  
  
ODM feature is licensed
```

2 Check that the VRTSodm package is installed:

```
(root@slias19)[/] swlist VRTSodm  
# Initializing...  
# Contacting target "slias19"...  
#  
# Target:  slias19:/  
#  
  
# VRTSodm          5.0.31.5.%20090322 Veritas Oracle Disk Manager  
VRTSodm.ODM-KRN   5.0.31.5.%20090322 Veritas ODM kernel files  
VRTSodm.ODM-MAN   5.0.31.5.%20090322 Veritas ODM manual pages  
VRTSodm.ODM-RUN   5.0.31.5.%20090322 Veritas ODM commands
```

3 Check that `libodm.sl` is present.

```
# ls -lL /opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl  
-rw-r--r-- 1 root sys 14336 Apr 25 18:42  
/opt/VRTSodm/lib/libodm.sl
```

See [“Checking the database configuration environment using dbed_checkconfig”](#) on page 322.

To verify that Oracle Disk Manager is running

- 1 Start the Oracle database.
- 2 Check that the instance is using the Oracle Disk Manager function:

```
# cat /dev/odm/stats
# echo $?
0
```

- 3 Verify that the Oracle Disk Manager is loaded:

```
# /usr/sbin/kcmodule -P state odm
state loaded
```

- 4 In the alert log, verify the Oracle instance is running. The log should contain output similar to the following:

```
Oracle instance running with ODM: Veritas ## ODM Library,
Version ##
```

Disabling the Oracle Disk Manager feature

Since the Oracle Disk Manager feature uses regular files, you can access these files as regular VxFS files as soon as the feature is disabled.

Note: To convert to VxFS with Quick I/O, disable Oracle Disk Manager using the following procedure, then convert the files to Quick I/O files.

See [“Converting Quick I/O files to Oracle Disk Manager files”](#) on page 129.

Before disabling the Oracle Disk Manager feature, you may want to back up your files.

To disable the Oracle Disk Manager feature in an Oracle instance

- 1 Shut down the database instance.
- 2 Use the `rm` and `ln` commands to remove the link to the Oracle Disk Manager Library.

For HP-UX PA

For Oracle 11g, enter:

```
# rm ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.sl
# ln -s ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodmd11.sl \
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.sl
```

For Oracle 10g, enter:

```
# rm ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.sl
# ln -s ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodmd10.sl \
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.sl
```

For Oracle9i, enter:

```
# rm ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.sl
# ln -s ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodmd9.sl \
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.sl
```

For HP-UX IA

For Oracle 11g, enter:

```
# rm ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.so
# ln -s ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodmd11.sl \
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm11.so
```

For Oracle 10g, enter:

```
# rm ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.so
# ln -s ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodmd10.sl \
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm10.so
```

For Oracle9i, enter:

```
# rm ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.so
# ln -s ${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodmd9.sl \
${ORACLE_HOME}/lib/libodm9.so
```

- 3 Restart the database instance.

Using Storage Mapping

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Storage Mapping](#)
- [Verifying Veritas Storage Mapping setup](#)
- [Using vxstorage_stats](#)
- [Using dbed_analyzer](#)
- [Oracle file mapping \(ORAMAP\)](#)

About Storage Mapping

Storage mapping is included with Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Enterprise Edition.

Storage mapping enables you to map datafiles, tablespaces, and tables to physical devices. You may obtain and view detailed storage topology information using the `vxstorage_stats` and `dbed_analyzer` commands or the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle GUI. You may also use the Oracle Enterprise Manager for Oracle 9i to access storage mapping information.

Access to mapping information is important since it allows for a detailed understanding of the storage hierarchy in which files reside, information that is critical for effectively evaluating I/O performance.

Mapping files to their underlying device is straightforward when datafiles are created directly on a raw device. With the introduction of host-based volume managers and sophisticated storage subsystems that provide RAID features, however, mapping files to physical devices has become more difficult.

With the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Storage Mapping option, you can map datafiles to physical devices. Veritas Storage Mapping relies on Veritas

Mapping Service (VxMS), a library that assists in the development of distributed SAN applications that must share information about the physical location of files and volumes on a disk.

The Veritas Storage Mapping option supports Oracle's set of storage APIs called Oracle Mapping ("ORAMAP" for short) that lets Oracle determine the mapping information for files and devices.

Oracle provides a set of dynamic performance views (v\$ views) that shows the complete mapping of a file to intermediate layers of logical volumes and physical devices. These views enable you to locate the exact disk on which any specific block of a file resides. You can use these mappings, along with device statistics, to evaluate I/O performance.

You can view storage mapping topology information and I/O statistics using:

- The `vxstorage_stats` command. This command displays the complete I/O topology mapping of specific datafiles through intermediate layers like logical volumes down to actual physical devices.
- The `dbed_analyzer` command. This command retrieves tablespace-to-physical and table-to-physical disk mapping information for all the datafiles in a specified database. It also provides information about the amount of disk space being used by a tablespace.
- The Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle GUI. The GUI performs file mapping and displays both storage mapping topology information and I/O statistics.

In addition, you can also use the Oracle Enterprise Manager GUI to display storage mapping information after file mapping has occurred. Oracle Enterprise Manager does not display I/O statistics information. Unlike the information displayed in the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle GUI, the information displayed in Oracle Enterprise Manager may be "stale," that is, it may not be the latest information.

Verifying Veritas Storage Mapping setup

Before using the Veritas Storage Mapping option, verify that the features are set up correctly.

To verify that your system is using the Veritas Storage Mapping option

1 Verify that you have a license key for the Storage Mapping option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxlictest -n "VERITAS Mapping Services" -f \  
"Found_Edi_map"  
  
Found_Edi_map feature is licensed
```

2 Verify that the VRTSvxmsa package is installed.

```
# swlist VRTSvxmsa  
# VRTSvxmsa 4.5.000.002 VxMS Application Deployment Package  
VRTSvxmsa.ADMIN 4.5.000.002 VERITAS Federated Mapping Service  
VRTSvxmsa.LIBRARIES 4.5.000.002 libraries  
VRTSvxmsa.LOGGING 4.5.000.002 logging  
VRTSvxmsa.PLUGINS 4.5.000.002 plugins
```

Using vxstorage_stats

The `vxstorage_stats` command displays detailed storage mapping information and I/O statistics about an individual VxFS file. The mapping information and I/O statistics are recorded only for VxFS files and VxVM volumes.

In `vxstorage_stats` command output, I/O topology information appears first followed by summary statistics for each object.

The command syntax is as follows:

```
/opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -m [-s] [-i interval \  
-c count] -f filename  
  
/opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats [-m] -s [-i interval \  
-c count] -f filename
```

Prerequisites

- You must log in as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`) or `root`.

Usage notes

- The `-s` option displays the file statistics for the specified file.
- The `-c count` option specifies the number of times to display statistics within the interval specified by `-i interval`.
- The `-i interval` option specifies the interval frequency for displaying updated I/O statistics.
- The `-f filename` option specifies the file to display I/O mapping and statistics for.
- For more information, see the `vxstorage_stats(1m)` online manual page.
- The `-m` option displays the I/O topology for the specified file.

Displaying Storage Mapping information

Use the `vxstorage_stats -m` command to display storage mapping information.

To display Storage Mapping information

- ◆ Use the `vxstorage_stats` command with the `-m` option to display storage mapping information:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -m -f file_name
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -m -f /oradata/system01.dbf
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

TY NAME	NSUB	DESCRIPTION	SIZE (sectors)	OFFSET (sectors)	PROPERTIES
fi /oradata/system01.dbf	1	FILE	2621442048 (B)	4718592 (B)	Extents:3 Sparse
v myindex	1	MIRROR	16777216	0	
pl vxvm:mydb/myindex-01	3	STRIPE	16779264	0	Stripe_size:2048
rd /dev/vx/rdmp/c3t1d3s3	1	PARTITION	5593088	0	
sd /dev/rdisk/c3t1d3s3	1	PARTITION	17674560	960	
sd c3t1d3	2	MIRROR	17677440	0	
da EMC000184502242:02:0c:02	0	DISK	143113019	0	
da EMC000184502242:31:0c:02	0	DISK	143113019	0	
rd /dev/vx/rdmp/c3t1d15s4	1	PARTITION	5593088	0	
sd /dev/rdisk/c3t1d15s4	1	PARTITION	17669760	5760	
sd c3t1d15	2	MIRROR	17677440	0	
da EMC000184502242:01:0c:02	0	DISK	143113019	0	
da EMC000184502242:32:0c:02	0	DISK	143113019	0	
rd /dev/vx/rdmp/c3t1d2s4	1	PARTITION	5593088	0	
sd /dev/rdisk/c3t1d2s4	1	PARTITION	17671680	3840	
sd c3t1d2	2	MIRROR	17677440	0	
da EMC000184502242:16:0c:02	0	DISK	143113019	0	
da EMC000184502242:17:0c:02	0	DISK	143113019	0	

Note: For file type (*fi*), the *SIZE* column is number of bytes, and for volume (*v*), plex (*pl*), sub-disk (*sd*), and physical disk (*da*), the *SIZE* column is in 512-byte blocks. Stripe sizes are given in sectors.

Displaying I/O statistics information

Use the `vxstorage_stats -s` command to display I/O statistics information. To see this information updated at regular intervals, also use the `-i` and `-c` options.

To display I/O statistics information

- ◆ Use the vxstorage_stats command with the -s option:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -s -f file_name
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -s -f \  
/data/system01.dbf
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

I/O OPERATIONS		I/O BLOCKS (512 byte)			AVG TIME (ms)		
OBJECT	READ	WRITE	B_READ	B_WRITE	AVG_RD	AVG_WR	
/data/system01.dbf			2	2479	8	5068810	0.00 53.28
/dev/vx/rdisk/mydb/myindex			101	2497	1592	5069056	12.18 52.78
vxvm:mydb/myindex-01			101	2497	1592	5069056	12.18 52.76
/dev/rdisk/c3t1d3s3			131	1656	2096	1689696	14.43 39.09
c3t1d3			131	1656	2096	1689696	14.43 39.09
EMC000184502242:02:0c:02			8480	231019	275952	23296162	- -
EMC000184502242:31:0c:02			3244	232131	54808	23451325	- -
/dev/rdisk/c3t1d15s4			0	1652	0	1689606	0.00 46.47
c3t1d15	0	1652	0	1689606	0.00	46.47	
EMC000184502242:01:0c:02			23824	1188997	1038336	32407727	- -
EMC000184502242:32:0c:02			5085	852384	135672	29956179	- -
/dev/rdisk/c3t1d2s4			14	1668	200	1689834	18.57 34.19
c3t1d2			14	1668	200	1689834	18.57 34.19
EMC000184502242:16:0c:02			4406	271155	121368	23463948	- -
EMC000184502242:17:0c:02			3290	269281	55432	23304619	- -

To display Storage Mapping and I/O statistics information at repeated intervals

- ◆ Use the `vxstorage_stats` command with the `-i interval` and `-c count` options to display storage mapping and I/O statistics information at repeated intervals. The `-i interval` option specifies the interval frequency for displaying updated I/O statistics and the `-c count` option specifies the number of times to display statistics.

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -m [-s] \  
[-i interval -c count ] -f file_name
```

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats [-m] -s \  
[-i interval -c count ] -f file_name
```

For example, to display statistics twice with a time interval of two seconds:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -s -i2 -c2 \  
-f /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/system01.dbf
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

I/O OPERATIONS		I/O BLOCKS (512 byte)		AVG TIME (ms)		
OBJECT	READ	WRITE	B_READ	B_WRITE	AVG_RD	AVG_WR
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/system01.dbf	27740	7370	255998	78336	2.10	2511688.04
/dev/vx/rdisk/flashdg12/datavol	289925	185184	4472384	4306008	1.03	9.36
vxvm:flashdg12/datavol-01	310820	185184	9821504	4306008	1.22	9.16
/dev/rdisk/c5t1d0	310820	185184	9821504	4306008	1.22	9.16
vxvm:flashdg12/datavol-02	0	143456	0	2115024	0.00	0.55
/dev/rdisk/c5t3d0	40	143458	129	2115072	0.18	0.55

I/O OPERATIONS		I/O BLOCKS (512 byte)		AVG TIME (ms)		
OBJECT	READ	WRITE	B_READ	B_WRITE	AVG_RD	AVG_WR
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/system01.dbf	0	0	0	0	0.00	0.00
/dev/vx/rdisk/flashdg12/datavol	1	3	16	48	0.19	0.67
vm:flashdg12/datavol-01	1	3	16	48	0.16	0.58
/dev/rdisk/c5t1d0	1	3	16	48	0.16	0.54
vxvm:flashdg12/datavol-02	0	3	0	48	0.00	0.63
/dev/rdisk/c5t3d0	0	3	0	48	0.00	0.63

Using `dbed_analyzer`

This release adds table-level mapping, with which for a given table `dbed_analyzer` lists the disks on which it resides and the space it occupies on each disk. Use the `-o sort=table` option to use this enhancement.

Users previously could find which tablespace resides on which disk, but with table-level mapping a user can learn on which disk a heavily-used table resides. This information can help database administrators and system administrators determine the allocation of storage, to assess backup priorities for the disk, and to identify performance bottlenecks.

Effectively performing a parallel backup requires an understanding of which tablespaces and tables reside on which disks. If two tablespaces or two tables reside on the same disk, for example, backing them up in parallel will not reduce their downtime.

The `dbed_analyzer` command provides tablespace-to-physical and table-to-physical disk mapping information for all the datafiles in a specified tablespace, list of tablespaces, or an entire database. (In contrast, the `vxstorage_stats` command provides this information on a per-file basis only.) In addition, `dbed_analyzer` provides information about the amount of disk space they are using.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | ■ You must log in as the database administrator (typically, the user ID <code>oracle</code>). |
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ The <code>-o sort=tbs</code> option provides the layout of the specified tablespaces on the physical disk as well as the amount of disk space they are using.■ The <code>-o sort=disk</code> option provides the name of the disks containing the specified tablespaces as well as the amount of disk space the tablespaces are using.■ The <code>-o sort=table</code> option identifies the disk and the space occupied on it by the specified table or list of tables.■ The <code>-f filename</code> option specifies the name of a file containing a list of the tables, tablespaces or disk names for which to obtain mapping information.■ The <code>-t</code> option specifies the name of a specified tablespace (when used with <code>-o sort=tbs</code>) or table (when used with <code>-o sort=table</code>) for which to obtain mapping information.■ If <code>-f filename</code> or <code>-t tablespace</code> is not specified then all the tablespaces in the database will be analyzed.■ For more information, see the <code>dbed_analyzer(1M)</code> online manual page. |

Obtaining Storage Mapping information for a list of tablespaces

To obtain Storage Mapping information sorted by tablespace

- ◆ Use the `dbed_analyzer` command with the `-f filename` and `-o sort=tbs` options:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/dbed_analyzer -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME \
-o sort=tbs -f filename
```

For example,

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/dbed_analyzer -S PROD -H /usr1/oracle \
-o sort=tbs -f /tmp/tbsfile
```

Output similar to the following is displayed in the file `tbsfile`:

TABLESPACE	DATAFILE	DEVICE	SIZE(sectors)
SYSTEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/PROD.dbf	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	819216
TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	2048016
SYSAUX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/sysaux.dbf	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	819216
ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
PRODID_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/prodid_idx_3000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ORDERS	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/orders_4000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ORD_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/ord_idx_10000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7002	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	4096016

To obtain Storage Mapping information sorted by disk

- ◆ Use the `dbed_analyzer` command with the `-f filename` and `-o sort=disk` options:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/dbed_analyzer -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME \
-o sort=disk -f filename
```

For example,

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/dbed_analyzer -S PROD -H /usr1/oracle \
-o sort=disk -f /tmp/tbsfile
```

Output similar to the following is displayed in the file `tbsfile`:

DEVICE	TABLESPACE	DATAFILE	SIZE (sectors)
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	SYSTEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/PROD.dbf	819216
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20001	2048016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	SYSAUX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/sysaux.dbf	819216
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	PRODID_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/prodid_idx_3000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ORDERS	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/orders_4000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ORD_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/ord_idx_10000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7002	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1001	4096016

Oracle file mapping (ORAMAP)

Veritas has defined and implemented two libraries: `libvxoramap_64.so` for HPUX PA and `libvxoramap_64.sl` for HPUX IA architecture.

These two libraries provide a mapping interface to Oracle9 release 2 or later. The `libvxoramap_64.so` library serves as a bridge between Oracle's set of storage APIs (known as "ORAMAP") and Veritas Federated Mapping Service (VxMS), a library that assists in the development of distributed SAN applications that must share information about the physical location of files and volumes on a disk.

With Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Storage Mapping option, you can view the complete I/O topology mapping of datafiles through intermediate layers like logical volumes down to actual physical devices. This information can be used to determine the exact location of an Oracle data block on a physical device and to help identify hot spots.

Note: To use the mapping functionality, you must be using Oracle 9.2.0.3 or later.

Mapping components

You need to understand the mapping components in the System Global Area (SGA) and Oracle's representation of these components before you can interpret the mapping information in Oracle's dynamic performance views.

The mapping information in Oracle's dynamic performance views consists of:

- File components

A mapping file component is a mapping structure describing a file. It provides a set of attributes for a file, including the file's size, number of extents, and type. File components are exported to the user through `V$MAP_FILE`.

- File extent components

A mapping file extent component describes a contiguous group of blocks residing on one element. The description specifies the device offset, the extent size, the file offset, the extent type (`Data` or `Parity`), and the name of the element where the extent resides.

- Element components

A mapping element component is a mapping structure that describes a storage component within the I/O stack. Elements can be mirrors, stripes, partitions, RAID5, concatenated elements, and disks.

This component contains information about the element's mapping structure, such as the element's size, type, number of subelements, and a brief description. Element components are exported to the user through `V$MAP_ELEMENT`.

- Subelement components

A mapping subelement component describes the link between an element and the next element in the I/O stack. The subelement component contains the subelement number, size, the element name for the subelement, and the element offset. Subelement components are exported to the user through `V$MAP_SUBELEMENT`.

These mapping components completely describe the mapping information for an Oracle instance.

Storage Mapping views

The mapping information that is captured is presented in Oracle's dynamic performance views. Brief descriptions of these views are provided in [Table 8-1](#).

For more detailed information refer to your Oracle documentation.

Table 8-1 Storage mapping information in Oracle dynamic performance views

View	Description
V\$MAP_LIBRARY	Contains a list of all the mapping libraries that have been dynamically loaded by the external process.
V\$MAP_FILE	Contains a list of all the file mapping structures in the shared memory of the instance.
V\$MAP_FILE_EXTENT	Contains a list of all the file extent mapping structures in the shared memory of the instance.
V\$MAP_ELEMENT	Contains a list of all the element mapping structures in the SGA of the instance.
V\$MAP_EXT_ELEMENT	Contains supplementary information for all element mapping structures.
V\$MAP_SUBELEMENT	Contains a list of all subelement mapping structures in the shared memory of the instance.
V\$MAP_COMP_LIST	Describes the component list associated with the element name.
V\$MAP_FILE_IO_STACK	Contains the hierarchical arrangement of storage containers for the file. This information is displayed as a series of rows. Each row represents a level in the hierarchy.

Verifying Oracle file mapping setup

Before you enable Oracle file mapping, verify that \$ORACLE_HOME and ORCLfmap directories are properly set up.

To verify that \$ORACLE_HOME is set up for Oracle file mapping (ORAMAP)

1 Enter:

```
# cd $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/filemap/bin
# ls -l
-r-xr-x--- 1 root system 900616 Apr 08 19:16 fmpu1
-r-sr-xr-x 1 root system 14614 Apr 08 19:16 fmpu1hp
```

2 Verify that:

- fmpu1hp is owned by root and that the setuid bit is set.
- The permissions for fmpu1hp are set to -r-sr-xr-x.

- The permissions for `fmpu1` are set to `-r-xr-x---`.
- 3 If any of these items is not set as specified, make the appropriate corrections.

To verify the ORCLfmap directories are set up properly

- 1 Enter:

```
# cd /opt/ORCLfmap
# ls -ld prot1_32 prot1_64
```

- 2 Verify that both directories are owned by `root` and are writable only by `root` (have `drwxr-xr-x` permissions).
- 3 If needed, change the ownership and permissions for these directories.

Enabling Oracle file mapping

You need to explicitly enable Oracle file mapping. By default it is initially disabled.

To enable Oracle file mapping with the Veritas Storage Mapping option

- 1 Ensure that the file `filemap.ora` exists and contains a valid entry for the Veritas mapping library for Oracle file mapping.

```
# cd $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/filemap/etc
# cat filemap.ora
```

For 64-bit Oracle, the `filemap.ora` file should contain the following setting:

```
lib=Veritas:/opt/VRTSdbed/lib/libvxoramap_64.so
lib=Veritas:/opt/VRTSdbed/lib/libvxoramap_64.so for PA
lib=Veritas:/opt/VRTSdbed/lib/libvxoramap_64.sl for IA
```

- 2 After verifying that the system is using the Veritas library for Oracle file mapping, set the `file_mapping` initialization parameter to `true`.

```
SQL> alter system set file_mapping=true;
```

The `file_mapping` initialization parameter is set to `false` by default. You do not need to shut down the instance to set this parameter. Setting `file_mapping=true` starts the `FMON` background process.

If you want storage mapping to be enabled whenever you start up an instance, set the `file_mapping` initialization parameter to `true` in the `init.ora` file.

Accessing dynamic performance views

After enabling file mapping, map Oracle datafiles with the `DBMS_STORAGE_MAP` package and use SQL commands to display the mapping information captured in Oracle's dynamic performance views.

To access dynamic performance views

- 1 Confirm that the Veritas mapping library for Oracle file mapping has been enabled.

```
SQL> select lib_idx idx, lib_name name, vendor_name vname, \
path_name path from v$map_library;
```

- 2 After file mapping has been enabled, Oracle datafiles can be mapped using the `DBMS_STORAGE_MAP` package.

For example, this shows how to map a datafile using SQL:

```
SQL> execute dbms_storage_map.map_file('/oracle/dbs/qio10m.dbf', \
'DATAFILE', TRUE);
```

For more information about various features and capabilities of the `DBMS_STORAGE_MAP` package, see your Oracle documentation.

- 3 Use SQL commands to display the mapping information that is captured in Oracle's dynamic performance views.

To display the contents of `v$map_file` for a Quick I/O file:

```
SQL> select file_name name, file_map_idx idx, \
file_status status, file_type type, file_structure str, \
file_size fsize, file_nexts nexts from v$map_file;
```

To display the contents of `v$map_file_extent`:

```
SQL> select elem_idx idx, elem_name, elem_type type, elem_size, \
elem_nsubelem nsub, elem_descr, stripe_size from v$map_element;
```

To display the contents of `v$map_element`:

To display the contents of `v$map_subelement`:

```
SQL> select * from v$map_subelement;
```

To display all the elements within the I/O stack for a specific file:

Using Oracle Enterprise Manager

Oracle Enterprise Manager is a web-based GUI for managing Oracle databases. You can use this GUI to perform a variety of administrative tasks such as creating tablespaces, tables, and indexes; managing user security; and backing up and recovering your database. You can also use Oracle Enterprise Manager to view performance and status information about your database instance.

From Oracle Enterprise Manager, you can view storage mapping information and a graphical display of the storage layout. Storage mapping information cannot be viewed with the Oracle 10g version of the Oracle Enterprise Manager client. However, the Oracle9i version of Oracle Enterprise Manager can be used with Oracle 10g to view storage mapping information.

For more information about Oracle Enterprise Manager, refer to your Oracle documentation.

To view storage information with Oracle Enterprise Manager

- 1 To view storage information, start Oracle Enterprise Manager and select a database from the left navigational pane (the object tree) of the Oracle Enterprise Manager Console.
- 2 Expand the Databases icon and select the desired database.
The Database Connect Information window appears.
- 3 Enter a user name and password to log in to the database and click **OK**.
- 4 In the object tree, expand the **Storage** icon.
- 5 Under the **Storage** icon, expand the **Datafiles** icon.
- 6 Select the datafile for which you want to view storage layout information.
- 7 In the right pane, click the **Storage Layout** tab.

Using Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback](#)
- [Space requirements for Storage Checkpoints](#)
- [Performance of Storage Checkpoints](#)
- [Storage Checkpoint allocation policies](#)
- [Backing up and recovering the database using Storage Checkpoints](#)
- [Cloning the Oracle instance using dbed_clonedb](#)
- [Guidelines for Oracle recovery](#)
- [Using the GUI to perform Storage Checkpoint-related operations](#)

About Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback

The Veritas Storage Checkpoint feature is available with the Enterprise Edition as part of the Veritas File System package and is used for the efficient backup and recovery of Oracle databases. Storage Checkpoints can also be mounted, allowing regular file system operations to be performed. This chapter describes what Storage Checkpoints and storage rollback are and how to make use of these technologies through Veritas Storage Foundation.

The Storage Checkpoint facility is similar to the snapshot file system mechanism; however, a Storage Checkpoint persists after a system reboot. A Storage Checkpoint creates an exact image of a database instantly and provides a consistent image of the database from the point in time the Storage Checkpoint was created. The

Storage Checkpoint image is managed and available through the GUI, or the Veritas Storage Foundation command line interface (CLI).

Veritas NetBackup also makes use of Storage Checkpoints to provide a very efficient Oracle backup mechanism.

See the *Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Graphical User Interface Guide*.

A direct application of the Storage Checkpoint facility is Storage Rollback. Because each Storage Checkpoint is a consistent, point-in-time image of a file system, Storage Rollback is the restore facility for these on-disk backups. Storage Rollback rolls back changed blocks contained in a Storage Checkpoint into the primary file system for restoring the database faster.

For more information on Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback, see the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

How Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback work

A Storage Checkpoint is a disk and I/O efficient snapshot technology for creating a “clone” of a currently mounted file system (the primary file system). Like a snapshot file system, a Storage Checkpoint appears as an exact image of the snapped file system at the time the Storage Checkpoint was made. However, unlike a snapshot file system that uses separate disk space, all Storage Checkpoints share the same free space pool where the primary file system resides unless a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy is assigned. A Storage Checkpoint can be mounted as read-only or read-write, allowing access to the files as if it were a regular file system. A Storage Checkpoint is created using the `dbed_ckptcreate` command or the GUI.

Initially, a Storage Checkpoint contains no data—it contains only the inode list and the block map of the primary fileset. This block map points to the actual data on the primary file system. Because only the inode list and block map are needed and no data is copied, creating a Storage Checkpoint takes only a few seconds and very little space.

A Storage Checkpoint initially satisfies read requests by finding the data on the primary file system, using its block map copy, and returning the data to the requesting process. When a write operation changes a data block "n" in the primary file system, the old data is first copied to the Storage Checkpoint, and then the primary file system is updated with the new data. The Storage Checkpoint maintains the exact view of the primary file system at the time the Storage Checkpoint was taken. Subsequent writes to block "n" on the primary file system do not result in additional copies to the Storage Checkpoint because the old data only needs to be saved once. As data blocks are changed on the primary file system, the Storage Checkpoint gradually fills with the original data copied from the

primary file system, and less and less of the block map in the Storage Checkpoint points back to blocks on the primary file system.

You can set a quota to limit how much space a file system will give to all storage checkpoints, to prevent the checkpoints from consuming all free space. See the command `dbed_ckptquota` for more information.

Storage Rollback restores a database, a tablespace, or datafiles on the primary file systems to the point-in-time image created during a Storage Checkpoint. Storage Rollback is accomplished by copying the “before” images from the appropriate Storage Checkpoint back to the primary file system. As with Storage Checkpoints, Storage Rollback restores at the block level, rather than at the file level. Storage Rollback is executed using the `dbed_ckptrollback` command or the GUI.

Note: You must make sure the storage checkpoint is not mounted when the `dbed_ckptrollback` command is issued.

Note: You must run the `dbed_update` command after upgrading to Veritas Storage Foundation Product version: 5.0.1 from a previous release. This will allow you to roll back to a Storage Checkpoint that was created with an earlier version of this product. Moreover, whenever you change the structure of the database (for example, by adding or deleting datafiles, converting `PFILE` to `SPFILE`, or converting `SPFILE` to `PFILE`), you must run `dbed_update`.

Mountable Storage Checkpoints can be used for a wide range of application solutions, including backup, investigations into data integrity, staging upgrades or database modifications, and data replication solutions.

If you mount a Storage Checkpoint as read-write, the GUI will not allow you to roll back to this Storage Checkpoint. This ensures that any Storage Checkpoint data that has been modified incorrectly cannot be a source of any database corruption. When a Storage Checkpoint is mounted as read-write, the `dbed_ckptmount` command creates a “shadow” Storage Checkpoint of and mounts this “shadow” Storage Checkpoint as read-write. This allows the database to still be rolled back to the original Storage Checkpoint. The `dbed_ckptumount` command unmounts a Storage Checkpoint.

Space requirements for Storage Checkpoints

To support Block-level Incremental (BLI) Backup and storage rollback, the file systems need extra disk space to store the Storage Checkpoints. The extra space

needed depends on how the Storage Checkpoints are used. Storage Checkpoints that are used to keep track of the block changes contain only file system block maps, and therefore require very little additional space (less than 1 percent of the file system size).

When you use Veritas NetBackup to back up your database, Veritas NetBackup creates one set of Storage Checkpoints to provide a consistent view of the file systems for the database backups. The space required to hold this additional set of Storage Checkpoints depends on how busy the database load is when the backup is running. If the database is offline during the entire backup window, there is no additional space required.

If the database is online while the backup is running, the additional space required by each file system for Storage Checkpoints depends on the duration of the backup and the database workload. If workload is light during the backup or the backup window is relatively short (for example, for incremental backups), for most database configurations, an additional 10 percent of the file system size will be sufficient. If the database has a busy workload while a full backup is running, the file systems may require more space.

To support Storage Checkpoints and storage rollback, VxFS needs to keep track of the original block contents when the Storage Checkpoints were created. The additional space needed is proportional to the number of blocks that have been changed since a Storage Checkpoint was taken. The number of blocks changed may not be identical to the number of changes. For example, if a data block has been changed many times, only the first change requires a new block to be allocated to store the original block content. Subsequent changes to the same block require no overhead or block allocation.

If a file system that has Storage Checkpoints runs out of space, by default VxFS removes the oldest Storage Checkpoint automatically instead of returning an `ENOSPC` error code (UNIX `errno 28- No space left on device`), which can cause the Oracle instance to fail. Removing Storage Checkpoints automatically ensures the expected I/O semantics, but at the same time, eliminates a key recovery mechanism.

When restoring a file system that has data-full Storage Checkpoints from tape or other offline media, you need extra free space on the file system. The extra space is needed to accommodate the copy-on-write algorithm needed for preserving the consistent image of the Storage Checkpoints. The amount of free space required depends on the size of the restore and the number of Storage Checkpoints on the file system.

If you are restoring the entire file system, in most cases, you no longer need the existing Storage Checkpoint. You can simply re-make the file system using the `mkfs` command, and then restore the file system from tape or other offline media.

If you are restoring some of the files in the file system, you should first remove the data-full Storage Checkpoints that are no longer needed. If you have very limited free space on the file system, you may have to remove all data-full Storage Checkpoints in order for the restore to succeed.

Always reserve free disk space for growing volumes and file systems. You can also preallocate sufficient space for each file system when the file system is first created or manually grow the file system and logical volume where the file system resides.

See the `vxassist(1)` and `fsadm_vxfs(1)` manual pages for more information.

Performance of Storage Checkpoints

Veritas File System attempts to optimize the read and write access performance on both the Storage Checkpoint and the primary file system. Reads from a Storage Checkpoint typically perform at nearly the throughput of reads from a normal VxFS file system, allowing backups to proceed at the full speed of the VxFS file system.

Writes to the primary file system are typically affected by the Storage Checkpoints because the initial write to a data block requires a read of the old data, a write of the data to the Storage Checkpoint, and finally, the write of the new data to the primary file system. Having multiple Storage Checkpoints on the same file system, however, will not make writes slower. Only the initial write to a block suffers this penalty, allowing operations like writes to the intent log or inode updates to proceed at normal speed after the initial write.

The performance impact of Storage Checkpoints on a database is less when the database files are Direct I/O files. A performance degradation of less than 5% in throughput has been observed in a typical OLTP workload when the Storage Checkpoints only keep track of changed information. For Storage Checkpoints that are used for Storage Rollback, higher performance degradation (approximately 10 to 20 percent) has been observed in an OLTP workload. The degradation should be lower in most decision-support or data warehousing environments.

Reads from the Storage Checkpoint are impacted if the primary file system is busy, because the reads on the Storage Checkpoint are slowed by all of the disk I/O associated with the primary file system. Therefore, performing database backup when the database is less active is recommended.

Storage Checkpoint allocation policies

The Veritas File System provides Multi-Volume File Systems (MVS) when used in conjunction with the Volumes Set feature in Veritas Volume Manager. A volume set is a container for multiple different volumes. MVS enables creation of a single

file system over multiple volumes, each volume with properties of its own. This helps administrators specify which data goes on which volume types. For more details about MVS, see *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*. Setting up a storage configuration for MVS operations is a system administrator's responsibility and requires superuser (`root`) privileges.

Note: Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC does not support storage checkpoint allocation policies.

Multi-Volume File Systems provide a database administrator, through the checkpoint administration interface, the ability to create Storage Checkpoint Allocation Policies.

A Storage Checkpoint Allocation policy specifies a list of volumes and the order in which to attempt allocations. Once defined, a database administrator can use these policies to:

- Control where the storage checkpoint should be created, enabling separation of metadata and data of a storage checkpoint to different volumes.
- Separate storage checkpoints so that data allocated to a storage checkpoint is isolated from the primary file system. This helps control the space used by the checkpoint and prevents the checkpoint from fragmenting the space in the primary fileset.

When policies are assigned to a storage checkpoint, the database administrator must specify the mapping to both metadata and file data. If no policies are specified for the storage checkpoint, the data is placed randomly within the primary file system. Data and metadata of storage checkpoints can have different policies assigned to them or use the same policy to be applied to data and metadata. Multiple checkpoints can be assigned the same checkpoint allocation policy. A partial policy is also allowed; a partial policy means that the policy does not exist on all file systems used by the database.

Once the policy is assigned to checkpoints, the allocation mechanism attempts to satisfy the request from each device in the policy in the order the devices are defined. If the request cannot be satisfied from any of the devices in the policy, the request will fail, even if other devices exist in the file system which have space. Only those devices can provide allocation that are listed in the policy. This implementation is the mechanism for preventing allocation requests from using space in other devices which are not specified in the policy. It is recommended that you allocate sufficient space for the volumes defined in the Storage Checkpoint policy or update the policy to include additional volumes. This also helps in retaining the old Storage Checkpoints.

Once the assigned policy is deleted, the allocation for metadata and file data for subsequent requests of storage checkpoint will return to the no policy assigned state.

For VxFS file systems disk layout Version 7, the volumes on the VxFS Multi-Volume File System can be either one of these types: `dataonly` and `metadataok`. Only `metadataok` volumes can be used to store checkpoint metadata. By default, only the first volume that is being added to the VxVM volume set is a `metadataok` volume. This means only the first volume that is being added to the VxVM volume set can be specified in the `ckpt_metadata_policy` by default. Use the following file system command to change the default setting. To check the flags of each volume in a VxFS Multi-Volume File System, execute the following file system command as `root`:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/fsvoladm queryflags mountpoint
```

To change a `dataonly` volume to a `metadataok` volume, execute the following file system command as `root`:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/fsvoladm clearflags dataonly mountpoint  
vol-name
```

The following are usage notes for Storage Checkpoint allocation policies:

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Since the Storage Checkpoint allocation policies feature is associated with the MVS file system, it is available only on file systems using disk layout Version 6 and beyond.■ Storage Checkpoint allocation policy requires VxVM Volume Set and VxFS Multi-Volume File Systems features to be enabled. These features are included in the Enterprise Edition of Storage Foundation.
See the Multi-Volume File System chapter in the <i>Veritas File System Administrator's Guide</i> for creating Volume Sets and MVS file systems for the primary file systems used by the database datafiles.■ Data allocation is done by the volumes in the order that was assigned in the policy.■ The maximum length of a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy name is 64 characters. |
|-------------|--|

Using Storage Checkpoint allocation policies

You can use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command to manage Storage Checkpoint allocation policies.

See [“Creating and working with Storage Checkpoint allocation policies using dbed_ckptpolicy”](#) on page 335.

Note: You cannot administer Storage Checkpoint allocation policies through the GUI.

The following are usage notes for the `dbed_ckptpolicy` and `dbed_ckptcreate` commands:

- Usage notes
- See the `dbed_ckptpolicy(1M)` and `dbed_ckptcreate(1M)` manual pages for more information.
 - The `dbed_ckptpolicy` command needs to be executed by the Oracle database administrator.

In the following example, the file systems for database datafiles are set up as follows:

- Two MVS file systems `/mvsfs/v1` and `/mvsfs/v2` used for database datafiles.
- File system `/mvsfs/v1` is created on volume set `mvsvset1`.
- File system `/mvsfs/v2` is created on volume set `mvsvset2`.
- Volume set `mvsvset1` contains volumes `mvsv1`, `mvsv2`, and `mvsv3`.
- Volume set `mvsvset2` contains volumes `mvsv4` and `mvsv5`.

Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command with the following options.

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID [ -H ORACLE_HOME ] [-n] [-h] options
```

Where *options* could be any of the following parameters:

```
-o create|update|remove -p ckpt_policy  
-o display [-c ckpt_name | -p ckpt_policy]  
-o assign -c ckpt_name -p \  
    ckpt_data_policy[,ckpt_metadata_policy]
```

Creating a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

Create a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy with the `-o create` option to `dbed_ckptpolicy`.

To create a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID \  
-o create -p ckpt_policy
```

Note: A partial policy indicates that the Storage Checkpoint allocation policy does not include all the file systems used by the database.

This example shows how to create a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy with the name `ckpt_sample` database for a database named `PROD`:

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S PROD -o create -p ckpt_sample
```

Output similar to the following is displayed.

```
File System: /mvsfs/v2 (MVS volumes: mvsv4,mvsv5)
```

```
Assigned Data Policy: (MVS Volumes: )
```

```
Assigned Meta Data Policy: (MVS Volumes: )
```

```
Please enter the volume name(s), separated by space, for the  
policy ckpt_sample [skip,quit]: mvsv4
```

```
The following information will be used to create policy ckpt_sample
```

```
ckpt_sample      /mvsfs/v2      mvsv4
```

Assigning a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

You can use either of the following methods to assign an allocation policy to a Storage Checkpoint:

- Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command to assign allocation policies to an existing Storage Checkpoint.
- Use the `-p ckpt_data_policy[,ckpt_metadata_policy]` option to the `dbed_ckptcreate` command to supply policies when executed. The command automatically assigns the policies when the Storage Checkpoint is created.

Note: You must run the `dbed_update` command once before creating the checkpoint.

The following procedure uses `dbed_ckptpolicy` to assign an allocation policy to an existing Storage Checkpoint. This example uses `PROD` as the database name and `Checkpoint_1096060202` as a sample Storage Checkpoint.

To assign an allocation policy to an existing Storage Checkpoint

- 1** Create an online Storage Checkpoint for database `PROD`.

```
$ dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD -H ORACLE_HOME -o online
```

As a result, `Checkpoint_1096060202` is created.

- 2** Assign a Storage Checkpoint policy to the `Checkpoint_1096060202`.

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S PROD -n -o assign \  
-c Checkpoint_1096060202 -p ckpt_data,ckpt_metadata
```

- 3** Display the details of the Storage Checkpoint allocation policy assigned to `Checkpoint_1096060202`.

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S PROD -n -o display -c Checkpoint_1096060202
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

Storage Checkpoint	File System	Data Policy	Meta Data Policy
Checkpoint_1096060202	/mvsfs/v2	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata
Checkpoint_1096060202	/mvsfs/v1	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata

To assign an allocation policy to a new Storage Checkpoint

- 1 Use `dbed_ckptcreate` to assign an allocation policy to a new Storage Checkpoint.

```
$ dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD -H $ORACLE_HOME -o online \  
-p ckpt_data,ckpt_metadata
```

As a result, a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy is assigned to Checkpoint_1096060122, which is a new Storage Checkpoint.

- 2 Display the details of the Storage Checkpoint allocation policy assigned to checkpoint 1096060122.

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S PROD -n -o display \  
-c Checkpoint_1096060122
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

Storage Checkpoint	File System	Data Policy	Meta Data Policy
-----	-----	-----	-----
Checkpoint_1096060122	/mvsfs/v2	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata
Checkpoint_1096060122	/mvsfs/v1	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata

Displaying a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

To verify that the Storage Checkpoint allocation policy is correct, you can display the policy.

To display a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the `-o display` option to list all the Storage Checkpoint allocation policies contained in the file systems used by the database.

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S FLAS11r1 -n -o display
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/users01.dbf
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/undotbs01.dbf
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/sysaux01.dbf
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/system01.dbf

Policy Name          File System Coverage
-----
ckpt_new             Complete
ckpt_sample          Complete
```

Note: Partial in the File System Coverage column indicates that the Storage Checkpoint allocation policy does not include one or more of the file systems used by the database.

To display Storage Checkpoint allocation policy information

- ◆ Use the `-o display -p checkpointpolicy_name` option to display information related to a specific Storage Checkpoint allocation policy.

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID -n -o display \
-p checkpointpolicy_name
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
Policy Name          File System          MVS volumes
-----
ckpt_sample          /mvsfs/v2            mvsv4
ckpt_sample          /mvsfs/v1            mvsv2
```


To display the allocation policies assigned to a Storage Checkpoint

- ◆ Use the `-o display -c checkpoint_XXXXXXXXXX` option to display the allocation policies assigned to the Storage Checkpoint.

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID -n -o display \
-c checkpoint_XXXXXXXXXX
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

Storage Checkpoint	File System	Data Policy	Meta Data Policy
-----	-----	-----	-----
Checkpoint_1095125037	/mvsfs/v2	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata
Checkpoint_1095125037	/mvsfs/v1	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata

Updating a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

After creating a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy, you can make changes at a later time.

To update a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the `-o update -p checkpoint_policy_name` option to update an allocation policy.

This example shows how to update a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy named `ckpt_sample`:

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S FLAS11r1 -n -o update -p ckpt_sample
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
File System: /snap_data11r1 (MVS volumes: datavol-b4vset,
datavol1,datavol2)
```

```
Policy: ckpt_sample (MVS volumes: datavol1)
```

```
Please enter the volume name(s), separated by space, for the
policy ckpt_sample [skip,quit]: datavol2
```

```
The following information will be used to update policy ckpt_sample
```

```
ckpt_sample      /snap_data11r1      datavol2
```

The output displays the volumes that are currently assigned in the Storage Checkpoint allocation policy.

You are prompted to enter any new volumes to which you would want to assign the Storage Checkpoint allocation policy.

Removing a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

If a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy no longer meets your needs, you can remove the policy.

To remove a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the following command to remove a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy:

```
$ dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID -n -o remove \  
-p checkpointpolicy_name
```

Converting from regular VxFS file system to MVS

The following procedure describes the conversion of a regular VxFS file system to MVS file system and optionally add new volume to it. Converting a regular VxFS to MVS requires superuser (`root`) privileges.

For further details on creating and administrating the VxVM Volume Sets and VxFS Multi-Volume Files System, refer to the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide* and *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide*.

To convert from a regular VxFS file system to MVS

- 1 Select a non-MVS file system to convert to MVS and unmount it:

```
# umount /mnt1
```

- 2 Create the volume set:

```
# vxvset -g dname make myvset old_vol
```

- 3 Mount the volume set:

```
# mount -F vxfs /dev/vx/dsk/dname/myvset /mnt1
```

- 4 Upgrade the volume set's file system to Version 6 disk layout:

```
# vxupgrade -n 6 /mnt1
```

See the *Veritas File System Installation Guide* and the `vxfsconvert(1M)` and `vxupgrade(1M)` manual pages for information on upgrading VxFS disk layouts:

- 5 Add the new volume to the volume set:

```
# vxvset -g dgrname addvol myvset new_vol
```

- 6 Add the new volume to the file system. You must specify the size of the volume:

```
# fsvoladm add /mnt1 new_vol 2g
```

where `new_vol` is the name of the newly added volume and `2g` is the size of the volume:

- 7 Verify the new volume in the file system:

```
# fsvoladm list /mnt1
```

Backing up and recovering the database using Storage Checkpoints

Storage Checkpoints can be created by specifying one of the following options: online, offline, or instant. To create a Storage Checkpoint with the online option, the database should be online and you must enable `ARCHIVELOG` mode for the database. For the offline option, the database should be offline. For the instant option, the database should be online and it can be running in either `ARCHIVELOG` or `NOARCHIVELOG` mode.

During the creation of the Storage Checkpoint, the tablespaces are placed in backup mode. Because it only takes a few seconds to take a Storage Checkpoint, the extra redo logs generated while the tablespaces are in online-backup mode are very small. You can roll back the entire database or individual tablespaces or datafiles to an online or offline Storage Checkpoint. After the rollback is complete, you may roll the database forward to recover the database if you have used an online Storage Checkpoint.

You can only roll back the entire database to an instant Storage Checkpoint. Rolling back individual tablespaces or datafiles to an instant Storage Checkpoint is not possible. After the rollback is complete, you need to perform database recovery. Rolling the database forward is not supported; that is, you cannot apply archived redo logs.

Note: Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC configurations do not support rollbacks using instant Storage Checkpoint.

To allow the easiest recovery, always keep `ARCHIVELOG` mode enabled, regardless of whether the database is online or offline when you create Storage Checkpoints.

Verifying a Storage Checkpoint using the command line

After creating a Storage Checkpoint and before using it to back up or restore a database, you can verify that the Storage Checkpoint is free of errors.

The following are usage notes for verifying a Storage Checkpoint:

- Usage notes
- See the `dbed_ckptcreate(1M)` and `dbed_ckptmount(1M)` manual pages for more information.

To verify that a Storage Checkpoint is error-free using the command line

1 Create and mount a Storage Checkpoint:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME -o online
Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_1244189082 created.

$ mkdir /tmp/ckptMnt

$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptmount -S $ORACLE_SID -c Checkpoint_1244189082
-m /tmp/ckptMnt -o rw

Creating Storage Checkpoint on /tmp/ckptMnt/data with name
Checkpoint_1244189082_wr001
```

If the specified mount point directory does not exist, then `dbed_ckptmount` creates it before mounting the Storage Checkpoint, as long as the Oracle DBA user has permission to create it.

2 Examine the contents of the Storage Checkpoint:

```
$ ls -la /tmp/ckptMnt/data/orclbdb
total 0
drwxr-x---  2 oracle  users          1024 Jun  3 01:28 .
drwxr-xr-x  3 oracle  dba              96 Jun  3 01:26 ..
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        9748480 Jun  5 02:04 control01.ctl
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        9748480 Jun  5 02:04 control02.ctl
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        9748480 Jun  5 02:04 control03.ctl
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        52429824 Jun  4 16:00 redo01.log
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        52429824 Jun  5 02:04 redo02.log
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        52429824 Jun  3 23:00 redo03.log
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        610017280 Jun  5 02:04 sysaux01.dbf
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        713039872 Jun  5 02:04 system01.dbf
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        20979712 Jun  4 22:00 temp01.dbf
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        31465472 Jun  5 02:04 undotbs01.dbf
-rw-r-----  1 oracle  users        5251072 Jun  5 02:04 users01.dbf
```

3 Run the dbv tool against the datafile undotbs01.dbf

```
$ $ORACLE_HOME/bin/dbv file=/tmp/ckptMnt/data/orcldb/undotbs01.dbf

DBVERIFY: Release 11.1.0.6.0 - Production on Fri Jun 5 02:08:20 2009

Copyright (c) 1982, 2007, Oracle. All rights reserved.

DBVERIFY - Verification starting : FILE = /tmp/ckptMnt/data \
orcldb/undotbs01.dbf

DBVERIFY - Verification complete

Total Pages Examined          : 3840
Total Pages Processed (Data)  : 0
Total Pages Failing (Data)    : 0
Total Pages Processed (Index) : 0
Total Pages Failing (Index)   : 0
Total Pages Processed (Other) : 3610
Total Pages Processed (Seg)   : 0
Total Pages Failing (Seg)     : 0
Total Pages Empty             : 230
Total Pages Marked Corrupt    : 0
Total Pages Influx            : 0
Total Pages Encrypted         : 0
Highest block SCN             : 1013504 (0.1013504)
```

Storage Checkpoints can only be used to restore from logical errors (for example, a human error). Because all the data blocks are on the same physical device, Storage Checkpoints cannot be used to restore files due to a media failure. A media failure requires a database restore from a tape backup or a copy of the database files kept on a separate medium. The combination of data redundancy (disk mirroring) and Storage Checkpoints is recommended for highly critical data to protect them from both physical media failure and logical errors.

Backing up using a Storage Checkpoint

You can back up a database by creating a Storage Checkpoint using the `dbed_ckptcreate` command, mount the Storage Checkpoint as read-only using the `dbed_ckptmount` command, and then back it up using tools such as `tar` or `cpio`.

The following are usage notes for backing up a database with the `dbed_ckptcreate` command:

- Usage notes
- See the `dbed_ckptcreate(1M)`, `dbed_ckptmount(1M)`, `dbed_ckptumount(1M)`, `tar(1)`, and `cpio(1)` manual pages for more information.

To back up a frozen database image using the command line

- 1 Assuming all the database datafiles in this example reside on one VxFS file system named /db01, create a Storage Checkpoint using the `dbed_ckptcreate` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD -H /oracle/product \  
-o online  
  
Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_903937870 created.
```

- 2 Mount the Storage Checkpoint using the `dbed_ckptmount` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptmount -S PROD -c Checkpoint_903937870 \  
-m /tmp/ckpt_ro
```

If the specified mount point directory does not exist, then `dbed_ckptmount` creates it before mounting the Storage Checkpoint, as long as the Oracle DBA user has permission to create it.

- 3 Use `tar` to back up the Storage Checkpoint:

```
$ cd /tmp/ckpt_ro  
$ ls  
db01  
$ tar cvf /tmp/PROD_db01_903937870.tar ./db01
```

For example:

```
a ./db01/PROD/users01.dbf 10256 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/undotbs01.dbf 92176 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/sysaux01.dbf 1264400 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/system01.dbf 1474576 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/control01ctl 40672 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/control02ctl 40672 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/control03ctl 40672 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/redo01.log 102402 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/redo02.log 102402 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/redo03.log 102402 blocks  
a ./db01/PROD/temp01.dbf 40976 blocks
```


Unmounting a Storage Checkpoint

To unmount a Storage Checkpoint for an Oracle database, use the `dbed_ckptumount` command as follows:

```
◆ $ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptumount -S ORACLE_SID -c CKPT_NAME \  
  [ -m MOUNT_POINT ] [ -h ]
```

See the `dbed_ckptumount(1M)` manual page for more information.

Recovering a database using a Storage Checkpoint

Because Storage Checkpoints record the before images of blocks that have changed, you can use them to do a file-system-based storage rollback to the exact time when the Storage Checkpoint was taken. You can consider Storage Checkpoints as backups that are online, and you can use them to roll back an entire database, a tablespace, or a single database file. Rolling back to or restoring from any Storage Checkpoint is generally very fast because only the changed data blocks need to be restored.

Note: Some database changes made after a Storage Checkpoint was taken may make it impossible to perform an incomplete recovery of the databases after Storage Rollback of an online or offline Storage Checkpoint using the current control files. For example, you cannot perform incomplete recovery of the database to the point right before the control files have recorded the addition or removal of datafiles. To provide recovery options, a backup copy of the control file for the database is saved in a temporary location when Storage Checkpoint rollback is performed. Use extreme caution when recovering your database using alternate control files.

Suppose a user deletes a table by mistake right after 4:00 p.m., and you want to recover the database to a state just before the mistake. You created a Storage Checkpoint (`Checkpoint_903937870`) while the database was running at 11:00 a.m., and you have `ARCHIVELOG` mode enabled.

To recover the database using a Storage Checkpoint

- 1 Ensure that the affected datafiles, tablespaces, or database are offline, and use Storage Rollback to roll back any datafiles in the database that contained the table data from the Storage Checkpoint you created at 11:00 a.m.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptrollback -H /oracle/product/9i -S PROD \  
-c Checkpoint_903937870
```

- 2 Start up the database instance if it is down.
- 3 Use `recover database until cancel`, `recover database until change`, or `recover database until time` to re-apply archive logs to the point before the table was deleted to recover the database to 4:00 p.m.
- 4 Open the database with `alter database open resetlogs`.
- 5 Delete the Storage Checkpoint you created at 11:00 a.m. and any other Storage Checkpoints created before that time.
- 6 Create a new Storage Checkpoint.

Cloning the Oracle instance using `dbed_clonedb`

You can use the `dbed_clonedb` command to clone an Oracle instance using a Storage Checkpoint.

Cloning an existing database using a Storage Checkpoint must be done on the same host. However, you can clone on any host within an Oracle RAC database cluster.

You have the option to manually or automatically recover the database when using the `dbed_clonedb` command:

- Manual (interactive) recovery, which requires using the `-i` option, of the clone database allows the user to control the degree of recovery by specifying which archive log files are to be replayed.
- Automatic (non-interactive) recovery, which is the default usage of the command, recovers the entire database and replays all of the archive logs. You will not be prompted for any archive log names.

Before cloning the Oracle instance, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites**
- You must first create a Storage Checkpoint. See [“Creating Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptcreate`”](#) on page 328.
 - You must be logged in as the database administrator.
 - Make sure you have enough space and system resources to create a clone database on your system.
 - A clone database takes up as much memory and machine resources as the primary database.
- Usage notes**
- The `dbed_clonedb` command is used to create a copy of a database, cloning all existing database files to new locations.
 - The `ORACLE_SID` and `ORACLE_HOME` environment variables must be set to the primary database.
 - In an Oracle RAC configuration, the clone database is started as a single instance on the node where the `dbed_clonedb` command is executed.
 - Cloning an Oracle RAC database with an instant storage checkpoint is not supported.
 - It is assumed that the user has a basic understanding of the database recovery process.
 - See the `dbed_clonedb(1M)` manual page for more information.

Options for the `dbed_clonedb` command are:

Table 9-1 `dbed_clonedb` command options

Option	Description
<code>-S CLONE_SID</code>	Specifies the name of the new Oracle SID, which will be the name of the new database instance.
<code>-m MOUNT_POINT</code>	Indicates the new mount point of the Storage Checkpoint.
<code>-c CKPT_NAME</code>	Indicates the name of the Storage Checkpoint.
<code>-i</code>	Runs the command in interactive mode where you must respond to prompts by the system. The default mode is non-interactive. (Optional)
<code>-o umount</code>	Shuts down the clone database and unmounts the Storage Checkpoint file system.
<code>-o restartdb</code>	Mounts the Storage Checkpoint file system and starts the clone database. The <code>-o restartdb</code> option will not attempt to recover the clone database.

Table 9-1 dbed_clonedb command options (*continued*)

Option	Description
-d	Used with the <code>-o</code> <code>umount</code> option. If the <code>-d</code> option is specified, the Storage Checkpoint used to create the clone database will be removed along with the clone database.
-p <i>pfile_modification_file</i>	Specifies a file containing initialization parameters to be modified or added to the clone database's initialization parameter file prior to startup. The format is the same as the Oracle initialization parameter file.

To clone an Oracle instance with manual Oracle recovery

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ dbed_clonedb -S test2cln -m /tmp/test2cln \
-c Checkpoint_1239013340 -i
```

Primary Oracle SID is FLAS11r1

New Oracle SID is test2cln

Cloning an online Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_1239013340.

Mounting Checkpoint_1239013340 at /tmp/test2cln.

All redo-log files found.

Creating inittest2cln.ora from /tmp/vxdba.rel.tmp.27511/initFLAS11r1.ora.

Altering db_name parameter in inittest2cln.ora.

Editing remote_login_passwordfile in inittest2cln.ora.

Altering control file locations in inittest2cln.ora.

Copying inittest2cln.ora to /oracle/11gr1/dbs/inittest2cln.ora.

About to start up new database and begin reconfiguration.

Database test2cln is being reconfigured.

Did not see error regarding database name.

Altering clone database archive log directory.

Updating log_archive_dest in clone database init file.

Found archive log destination at /snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1.

The latest archive log(s) must now be applied. To apply the logs, open a new window and perform the following steps:

1. You must copy required archive log(s) from primary to clone:
Primary archive logs in /snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1
Clone archive logs expected in /tmp/test2cln/snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1.
2. ORACLE_SID=test2cln; export ORACLE_SID # sh and ksh, OR
setenv ORACLE_SID test2cln #csh
3. /oracle/11gr1/bin/sqlplus /nolog
4. CONNECT / AS SYSDBA
5. RECOVER DATABASE UNTIL CANCEL USING BACKUP CONTROLFILE
6. enter the archive log(s) you would like to apply
7. EXIT

Press <Return> after you have completed the above steps

To clone an Oracle instance with automatic Oracle recovery

- ◆ Use the dbed_clonedb command as follows:

```
$ dbed_clonedb -S test1cln -m /tmp/test1cln \  
-c Checkpoint_1239012493
```

Primary Oracle SID is FLAS11r1

New Oracle SID is test1cln

Cloning an online Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_1239012493.

Mounting Checkpoint_1239012493 at /tmp/test1cln.

All redo-log files found.

Creating inittest1cln.ora from /tmp/vxdba.rel.tmp.25063/initFLAS11r1.ora.

Altering db_name parameter in inittest1cln.ora.

Editing remote_login_passwordfile in inittest1cln.ora.

Altering control file locations in inittest1cln.ora.

Copying inittest1cln.ora to /oracle/11gr1/dbs/inittest1cln.ora.

About to start up new database and begin reconfiguration.

Database test1cln is being reconfigured.

Did not see error regarding database name.

Starting automatic database recovery.

Shutting down clone database.

Altering clone database archive log directory.

Updating log_archive_dest in clone database init file.

Found archive log destination at /snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1.

Mounting clone database.

Resetting logs on new database test1cln.

The sql script for adding tempfiles to test1cln is at

/tmp/add_tf.test1cln.sql.

Database instance test1cln is up and running.

To shut down the clone database and unmount the Storage Checkpoint

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_clonedb -S NEW9 -o umount
```

To mount a Storage Checkpoint file system and start the clone database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_clonedb -S NEW9 -o restartdb
```

Database instance NEW9 is up and running.

To delete a clone database and the Storage Checkpoint used to create it

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_clonedb -S NEW9 -o umount -d
```

Guidelines for Oracle recovery

For optimal Oracle recovery, consider the following guidelines:

- Back up all control files before Storage Rollback in case the subsequent Oracle recovery is not successful. Oracle recommends that you keep at least two copies of the control files for each Oracle database and that you store the copies on different disks. It is also a good idea to back up the control files before and after making structural changes to databases.
- Make sure that the control files are not rolled back.

A control file is a small binary file that describes the structure of the database and must be available to mount, open, and maintain the database. The control file stores all necessary database files information, log file information, the name of the database, and the timestamp of database creation, as well as synchronization information such as Storage Checkpoint and log sequence information that is needed for recovery. Rolling back the control file will result in an inconsistency between the physical database structure and the control file.

Note: If your intention is to roll back the database to recover from structural changes that you do not want to maintain, you may indeed want to roll back control files.

- Make sure that all archived redo logs are available.

A database backup with online and archived logs is required for a complete database recovery. Query `V$ARCHIVED_LOG` to list all the archived log information and `V$ARCHIVE_DEST` to list the status of archive destinations. In Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC configurations, the archive log destination must be on a Veritas Cluster File System.

To restore the necessary archived redo log files, you can query `V$LOG_HISTORY` to list all the archived redo log history or query `V$RECOVERY_LOG` to list only the archived redo logs needed for recovery. The required archived redo log files can be restored to the destination specified in the `LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST` parameter or to an alternate location. If the archived redo logs were restored to an alternate location, use the `ALTER DATABASE RECOVER ... FROM` statement during media recovery.
- After Storage Rollback, perform Oracle recovery, applying some or all of the archived redo logs.

To perform a complete media recovery:

- ◆

```
SET AUTORECOVERY ON;  
RECOVER DATABASE;
```

To perform an incomplete media recovery, use one of the following:

- ◆ ■ `RECOVER DATABASE UNTIL CANCEL;`

- `RECOVER DATABASE UNTIL TIME 'yyyy-mm-dd:hh:mm:ss';`

- (You can confirm the time of error by checking the `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/log/alert*.log` file.)

- `RECOVER DATABASE UNTIL TIME \`
`'yyyy-mm-dd:hh:mm:ss' using backup controlfile;`

- `RECOVER DATABASE UNTIL CHANGE scn;`

To open the database after an incomplete media recovery, use the following:

- ◆ `ALTER DATABASE OPEN RESETLOGS;`

`RESETLOGS` resets the log sequence. The `RESETLOGS` option is required after an incomplete media recovery. After opening the database with the `RESETLOGS` option, remove the Storage Checkpoint you just rolled back to as well as any Storage Checkpoints that were taken before that one. These earlier Storage Checkpoints can no longer be used for Storage Rollback. After removing these Storage Checkpoints, be sure to create a new Storage Checkpoint.

Caution: Attempting to roll back to the same Storage Checkpoint more than once can result in data corruption. After rolling back, be sure to delete the Storage Checkpoint that you rolled back to and then create a new one.

See your Oracle documentation for complete and detailed information on recovery.

Using the GUI to perform Storage Checkpoint-related operations

You can use the GUI to create Storage Checkpoints and then roll back an entire database, a single tablespace, or any set of datafiles using any of the previously created Storage Checkpoints.

See the *Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Graphical User Interface Guide*.

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC does not support the GUI.

Converting existing database configurations to VxFS

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About converting LVM volume groups to VxVM disk groups](#)
- [Converting native file systems to VxFS for Oracle Disk Manager](#)
- [Converting native file systems to VxFS with Quick I/O](#)
- [Upgrading from earlier VxFS version layouts](#)
- [Converting from raw devices](#)

About converting LVM volume groups to VxVM disk groups

If you are currently using VxFS file systems for your database and the file systems are mounted on Logical Volume Manager (LVM) volumes, you can convert these LVM volume groups to VxVM disk groups in place. Veritas Volume Manager provides an interactive, menu-driven utility, `vxvmconvert` that performs the conversion.

The `vxvmconvert` utility changes the disk areas containing the LVM configuration information, creating equivalent VxVM configuration information. The areas of the disks used for user data, such as file systems and databases, are not affected by the conversion.

Note: As is customary before performing any kind of conversion or upgrade, back up your database and LVM configuration information before converting LVM volume groups to VxVM disk groups.

For detailed information on converting LVM volume groups, you must refer to the volume manager migration guide.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager Migration Guide*.

Converting native file systems to VxFS for Oracle Disk Manager

If you are currently using file systems native to your operating system, you can use the following procedure to upgrade each file system used by the database to a VxFS file system.

You can then use the Oracle Disk Manager feature.

Warning: Do not upgrade your root file system to VxFS.

Before starting the conversion procedure, make sure the following conditions have been met:

Prerequisites To configure Oracle Disk Manager, follow the procedure for setting up Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager.
See [“Setting up Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager”](#) on page 125.

To convert a JFS file system to VxFS for Oracle Disk Manager

- 1 Shut down the database.
- 2 Create a backup of the HFS file system.
- 3 Unmount the HFS file system.
- 4 Remove the HFS entry in the `/etc/fstab` file.
- 5 Create a VxFS file system of the same size as the original HFS file system, using the mount point where the HFS file system was originally mounted.
See [“Creating a VxFS file system”](#) on page 56.
- 6 Preallocate ODM files using `odmmkfile`. Make the files the same size or larger than what they were on the original HFS file system.

- 7 Restore the backup created in step 2 to the new VxFS file system.
- 8 Restart the database.

Converting native file systems to VxFS with Quick I/O

If you are currently using file systems native to your operating system, use the procedure to upgrade each file system used by the database to a VxFS file system with Quick I/O.

To convert a native file system to VxFS with Quick I/O

- 1 Shut down the database.
- 2 Remove the entry for the UFS file system from the `/etc/filesystems` file.
- 3 Create a backup of the HFS file system.
- 4 Unmount the HFS file system.
- 5 Remove the entry for the HFS file system from the `/etc/fstab` file.
- 6 Create a VxFS file system of the same size as the original HFS file system, using the mount point where the HFS file system was originally mounted.
See “[Creating a VxFS file system](#)” on page 56.
- 7 Preallocate Quick I/O files using `qiomkfile`.
See “[Creating database files as Quick I/O files using qiomkfile](#)” on page 79.
- 8 Restore the backup that you created earlier to the Quick I/O files in the new VxFS file system.
- 9 Restart the database.

Upgrading from earlier VxFS version layouts

Before starting the upgrade process, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- Prerequisites
- Perform a full backup of the file system before upgrading to a new disk layout.

- Usage notes
- The `vxupgrade` command lets you to upgrade the VxFS file system disk layout while the file system is mounted. See the `vxupgrade(1M)` manual page for more details.
 - VxFS supports four file system disk layouts: Versions 4, 5, 6, and 7. New file systems are created with the Version 7 (for large file systems) disk layout by default when the current version of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle is installed on a system. You must minimally upgrade to Version 4 disk layout if you want to use the Storage Rollback or Veritas NetBackup BLI Backup features.

To upgrade an existing VxFS file system to a new file system disk layout version

- ◆ Use the `vxupgrade` command to upgrade to Version 4, 5, 6, or 7 disk layout:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxupgrade -n new_version new_version/mount_point
```

where:

- `new_version` is the version of the file system disk layout you want to upgrade to
- `/mount_point` is the location where the file system is mounted

This is an example of upgrading to disk layout Version 7:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxupgrade -n 7 /db01
```

To use Quick I/O after upgrading the file system disk layout to version 4, 5, 6, or 7

- 1 Shut down the database.
- 2 Make each database file accessible as a Quick I/O file.
See “[Accessing regular VxFS files as Quick I/O files](#)” on page 83.
- 3 Restart the database.

To use Oracle Disk Manager after upgrading the file system disk layout to version 4, 5, 6, or 7

- ◆ Simply use the files. Because ODM uses regular files, no setup is required.

Converting from raw devices

If the database is currently using raw disks or volumes, use one of the following procedures to use VxFS with the Quick I/O feature or Oracle Disk Manager.

Warning: The procedure provided assumes that the database runs on a single file system after the upgrade.

To convert from raw devices to VxFS with Quick I/O

- 1 Create a VxFS file system using a size that is 10 percent larger than the original database or total raw device size. You can create more file systems based on your performance and availability requirements.

See [“Creating a VxFS file system”](#) on page 56.

- 2 Shut down the database.
- 3 Preallocate Quick I/O files using `qiomkfile`.

See [“Creating a VxFS file system”](#) on page 56.

- 4 Copy each raw device file to the new VxFS file system.

For example, use the `dd` command to copy the file `/dev/rdsk/c4t0d2` to `/db01/dbfile`:

```
$ dd if=/dev/rdsk/c4t0d2 of=/db01/dbfile bs=128k
```

- 5 If the database uses symbolic links to access the database files, change the symbolic links to point to the Quick I/O files.

For example, if the database has a datafile specification `/data/file1` that was linked to `/dev/rdsk/c4t0d2`, change it to point to the new Quick I/O file:

```
$ rm /data/file1
$ ln -s /db01/dbfile /data/file1
```

- 6 If the database was using absolute paths to access the database files, rename each file within Oracle before bringing the database online. For example:

```
$ sqlplus "/" as sysdba"
SQL> startup mount;
SQL> alter database rename file filename to newfilename;
```

- 7 Restart the database. For example:

```
SQL> alter database open;
SQL> exit
```

To convert from raw devices to regular files for ODM

- 1 Create a VxFS file system using a size that is 10 percent larger than the original database or total raw device size. You can create more file systems based on your performance and availability requirements.

See “[Creating a VxFS file system](#)” on page 56.

- 2 Shut down the database.
- 3 Preallocate the files for ODM using `odmmkfile`.

```
odmmkfile -h header_size -s file_size filename
```

where `-h` creates a file with additional space allocated for the Oracle header and `-s` preallocates a certain amount of space for the file.

- 4 Copy each raw device file to the new VxFS file system.

For example, use the `dd` command to copy the file `/dev/rdsk/c4t0d2` to `/db01/dbfile`

```
$ dd if=/dev/rdsk/c4t0d2 of=/db01/dbfile bs=128k
```

- 5 If the database uses symbolic links to access the database files, change the symbolic links to point to the new files.

For example, if the database has a datafile specification `/data/file1` that was linked to `/dev/rdsk/c4t0d2`, change it to point to the new file:

```
$ rm /data/file1
$ ln -s /db01/dbfile /data/file1
```

- 6 If the database was using absolute paths to access the database files, rename each file within Oracle before bringing the database online. For example:

```
$ sqlplus "/ as sysdba"
SQL> startup mount;
SQL> alter database rename file filename to newfilename;
```

- 7 Restart the database. For example:

```
SQL> alter database open;
SQL> exit
```

Using Database Dynamic Storage Tiering

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Database Dynamic Storage Tiering](#)
- [Configuring Database Dynamic Storage Tiering](#)
- [Dynamic Storage Tiering policy management](#)
- [Running Database Dynamic Storage Tiering reports](#)
- [Extent balancing in a database environment](#)
- [Database Dynamic Storage Tiering use cases for Oracle](#)

About Database Dynamic Storage Tiering

More and more data is being retained. Eventually, some of the data is no longer needed as frequently, but still takes up a large amount of disk space. Database Dynamic Storage Tiering matches data storage with the data's usage requirements so that data is relocated based on requirements determined by the database administrator (DBA). The feature enables you to manage your data so that less-frequently used data can be moved to slower, less expensive disks, allowing frequently-accessed data to be stored on the faster disks for quicker retrieval. Storage classes are used to designate which disks make up a particular tier.

There are two common ways of defining storage classes:

- Performance, or storage, cost class: The most-used class consists of fast, expensive disks. When data is no longer needed on a regular basis, the data can be moved to a different class that is made up of slower, less expensive disks.

- Resilience class: Each class consists of non-mirrored volumes, mirrored volumes, and n-way mirrored volumes.

For example, a database is usually made up of data, an index, and logs. The data could be set up with a three-way mirror because data is critical. The index could be set up with a two-way mirror because the index is important, but can be recreated. The logs are not required on a daily basis and could be set up with no mirroring.

Dynamic Storage Tiering (DST) policies control initial file location and the circumstances under which existing files are relocated. These policies cause the files to which they apply to be created and extended on specific subsets of a file systems's volume set, known as placement classes. The files are relocated to volumes in other placement classes when they meet specified naming, timing, access rate, and storage capacity-related conditions.

In addition to preset policies, you can manually move files to faster or slower storage, when necessary. You can run reports that list active policies, display file activity, display volume usage, or show file statistics.

Database Dynamic Storage Tiering building blocks

To use Database Dynamic Storage Tiering, your storage must be managed using the following features:

- VxFS multi-volume file system
- VxVM volume set
- Volume tags
- Dynamic Storage Tiering policies

About VxFS multi-volume file systems

Multi-volume file systems are file systems that occupy two or more virtual volumes. The collection of volumes is known as a volume set, and is made up of disks or disk array LUNs belonging to a single Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) disk group. A multi-volume file system presents a single name space, making the existence of multiple volumes transparent to users and applications. Each volume retains a separate identity for administrative purposes, making it possible to control the locations to which individual files are directed. This feature is available only on file systems using disk layout Version 6 or later.

See [“Converting a VxFS file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system”](#) on page 191.

See the `fsvoladm(1M)` manual page.

About VxVM volume sets

Volume sets allow several volumes to be represented by a single logical object. Volume sets cannot be empty. All I/O from and to the underlying volumes is directed via the I/O interfaces of the volume set. The volume set feature supports the multi-volume enhancement to Veritas File System (VxFS). This feature allows file systems to make best use of the different performance and availability characteristics of the underlying volumes. For example, file system metadata could be stored on volumes with higher redundancy, and user data on volumes with better performance.

About volume tags

You make a VxVM volume part of a placement class by associating a volume tag with it. For file placement purposes, VxFS treats all of the volumes in a placement class as equivalent, and balances space allocation across them. A volume may have more than one tag associated with it. If a volume has multiple tags, the volume belongs to multiple placement classes and is subject to allocation and relocation policies that relate to any of the placement classes. Multiple tagging should be used carefully.

A placement class is a Dynamic Storage Tiering attribute of a given volume in a volume set of a multi-volume file system. This attribute is a character string, and is known as a volume tag.

About Dynamic Storage Tiering policies

Dynamic Storage Tiering allows administrators of multi-volume VxFS file systems to manage the placement of files on individual volumes in a volume set by defining placement policies that control both initial file location and the circumstances under which existing files are relocated. These placement policies cause the files to which they apply to be created and extended on specific subsets of a file system's volume set, known as placement classes. The files are relocated to volumes in other placement classes when they meet the specified naming, timing, access rate, and storage capacity-related conditions.

Database Dynamic Storage Tiering in a High Availability (HA) environment

Veritas Cluster Server does not provide a bundled agent for volume sets. If issues arise with volumes or volume sets, the issues can only be detected at the DiskGroup and Mount resource levels.

The DiskGroup agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors a Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) disk group. This agent uses VxVM commands. When the value

of the StartVolumes and StopVolumes attributes are both 1, the DiskGroup agent online and offline the volumes during the import and deport operations of the disk group. When using volume sets, set StartVolumes and StopVolumes attributes of the DiskGroup resource that contains the volume set to 1. If a file system is created on the volume set, use a Mount resource to mount the volume set.

The Mount agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors a file system or NFS client mount point.

If you are using any of the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands in a high availability (HA) environment, the time on each system in the cluster must be synchronized. Otherwise, the scheduled task may not be executed at the expected time after a service group failover.

For more information, see the *Veritas Cluster Server Bundled Agents Reference Guide*.

Configuring Database Dynamic Storage Tiering

To use Database Dynamic Storage Tiering, you must:

- Review Database Dynamic Storage Tiering command requirements.
- Define database parameters.
- Set up storage classes.
- Convert an existing VxFS database file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system for use with Database Dynamic Storage Tiering.
- Classify, or tag, volumes so that the tags indicate the quality of the underlying disk.
- Display the free space on each class.
- Add or remove volumes as necessary.

Database Dynamic Storage Tiering command requirements

Before defining your database parameters, review the following command requirements:

- An Oracle database must be up and running.
- Only the Oracle database administrator can run Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands.
- Run the `dbed_update` command before running any of the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands. You should also run the `dbed_update` command if any of the database files change.

Because the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands retrieve database information from the repository, the repository must be up to date.

- If you are using any of the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands in a high availability (HA) environment, the time on each system in the cluster must be synchronized.
- Create the volumes that you want to add to the multi-volume file system in the same disk group as the file system volume. As root, use the following command to change the owner of each volume:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/vxedit -g disk_group \  
set user=oracle volume
```

- Change the owner of the mount point on which you want to implement Database Dynamic Storage Tiering to oracle.

Defining database parameters

Running the `dbdst_admin` command defines parameters for the entire database. You must run this command at least once to define the database parameters for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering. Three pre-defined storage classes will be created (PRIMARY, SECONDARY, and BALANCE). Parameter values are stored in the SFDB repository.

Set at least one of the parameters in `maxclass`, `minclass`, `statinterval`, `sweeptime`, `sweepinterval`, `purgetime`, or `purgeinterval`, to enable default values. Add at least one class to enable the default classes.

[Table A-11](#) lists the options for the `dbdst_admin` command.

Table 11-1 dbdst_admin command options

Option	Description
<code>-S \$ORACLE_SID</code>	Specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle instance.
<code>list</code>	Lists all the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering parameters of the database, including class name and description. This option should be used exclusively from the other options.
<code>maxclass=</code>	Maximum number of storage classes allowed in the database. Default value is 4.
<code>minclass=</code>	Minimum number of storage classes allowed in the database. Default value is 2.

Table 11-1 dbdst_admin command options (*continued*)

Option	Description
sweepinterval=	Interval for file sweeping for file relocation. Default value is 1, which means one per day. If this value is set to 0, all scheduled sweep tasks will become unscheduled.
sweeptime=	Time per day for the file sweep to take place. Times are entered in 24-hour periods and should list hour:minute. For example, 8:30 AM is represented as 08:30 and 10:00 PM is represented as 22:00. Default value is 22:00.
statinterval=	Interval in minutes for gathering file statistics. Default value is 30, which represents every 30 minutes. If this value is set to 0, all scheduled tasks will become unscheduled.
purgeinterval=	Number of days after which the file statistics in the repository will be summarized and purged. Default value is 30. It is recommended that you set your purge interval sooner because you will not be able to view any statistics until the first 30-day interval is over, if you use the default.
purgetime=	Time per day for the file purge to take place. Times are entered in 24-hour periods and should list hour:minute. For example, 8:30 AM is represented as 08:30 and 8:00 PM is represented as 20:00. Default value is 20:00.
addclass=	Parameter that allows you to add a class to a database. The information should be entered as <i>class:"description"</i> , where <i>class</i> represents the class name and <i>description</i> is a string of up to 64 characters enclosed by double quotes used to describe the class.
rmclass=	Parameter that allows you to remove a class from a database. Enter the class name as it appears in the database.
definechunk=	Defines a chunksize in bytes for a specific storage class to extent balance the files in this storage class. The information should be entered as <i>classname: valid chunksize value</i> . Valid chunksizes are 128k, 256k, 512k or 1m bytes.

Note: If you do not want to change specific default values, you can omit those parameters when you run the `dbdst_admin` command. You only need to enter the parameters that need to be changed.

To define database parameters

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
dbdst_admin -S ORACLE_SID -o setup-parameters ,\  
[storage_class operations ]  
setup-parameters  
    maxclass=number,minclass=number,statinterval=minutes,\  
    sweeptime=HH:MM,sweepinterval=days,\  
    purgetime=HH:MM,purgeinterval=days  
storage_class operations  
    addclass=classname:"description",rmclass=classname \  
    definechunk=classname:128k | 256k | 512k | 1m
```

For example, to add a class called `tier1` for database `PROD`, and to set up a purge interval of one, meaning that the file statistics will be gathered for one day and then summarized and purged, use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S PROD -o addclass=tier1:"Fast Storage",\  
purgeinterval=1
```

Setting up storage classes

When you define your database parameters, three pre-defined storage classes are created. You will need to add or remove storage classes to fit your needs.

Adding storage classes

In addition to the default storage classes, you can add storage classes to better manage your data.

Before adding a storage class, review the following information:

To add a storage class

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o addclass=class:\  
"description"
```

For example, to create a storage class named `"FAST"` for an EMC array, use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o addclass=FAST:\
"fast EMC array"
```

Removing storage classes

If you no longer require a specific storage class, you can remove it. You cannot remove the pre-defined storage classes (PRIMARY, SECONDARY, and BALANCE).

Before removing a storage class, review the following information:

To remove a storage class

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o rmclass=class
```

For example, to remove a storage class called "SLOW," use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o rmclass=SLOW
```

Displaying storage classes

You can display a list of Database Dynamic Storage Tiering properties and storage classes using the `dbdst_admin` command.

Before displaying your storage classes, review the following information:

To display existing storage classes and properties

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o list
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S FLAS10r1 -o list
```

```
TSDB Parameters for FLAS10r1
```

```
-----
```

```
Maxclass          = 4
Minclass          = 2
Stat-Interval     = 30
Sweep Information = 22HH:0MM, Frequency = 1
Purge Information = 20HH:0MM, Frequency = 30
```

```
TSDB Storage Classes for FLAS10r1
```

```
-----
```

```
Name = PRIMARY : Description = PRIMARY Storage Class
Name = SECONDARY : Description = SECONDARY Storage Class
Name = BALANCE : Description = BALANCE Storage Class
```

Converting a VxFS file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system

To convert your existing VxFS file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system, you must convert a single volume to a volume set.

Converting a single volume to a volume set

When you convert to a volume set using the `dbdst_convert` command, the original volume will be renamed to a new volume name. The mount device name will become the new volume set name. Creating the new volume set name with the mount device name nullifies the need to rename the mount device in various locations.

Before converting to a volume set, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- Prerequisites
- The Oracle database must be shutdown.
 - Create at least one additional volume.

- Usage notes
- You must convert the single-volume file system on which you plan to implement Database Dynamic Storage Tiering.
 - The file system should be unmounted when you run the `dbdst_convert` command.
 - If the file system has *n* volumes, volumes 1 through *n*-1 will be placed in the storage class "PRIMARY" and volume *n* will be placed in the storage class "SECONDARY."
 - The volumes specified when running the conversion must be in the same disk group as the mount device.

To convert a mount device from a single volume device to a volume set

- 1 Use the `dbdst_convert` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_convert -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device -v \  
volume_name,volume_name
```

- 2 Bring database objects online.

For example, to convert a volume-based oradata file system to a Database Dynamic Storage Tiering-ready volume set file system on mount device `/dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata`, use the `dbdst_convert` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_convert -S PROD -M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata -v \  
new_vol1,new_vol2
```

After conversion, you will have a volume set named `oradata` containing three volumes (`oradata_b4vset`, `new_vol1`, and `new_vol2`). The file system will have two storage classes defined as `PRIMARY` and `SECONDARY`. The volumes will be assigned as follows:

- `PRIMARY` storage class will contain volumes `oradata_b4vset` and `new_vol1`.
- `SECONDARY` storage class will contain volume `new_vol2`.

Classifying volumes into a storage class

Before creating a DST policy or manually moving data, assign classes to your volumes.

Before assigning classes to volumes, review the following information:

- Usage notes
- You must convert your VxFS file system to a multi-volume file system first.
 - Storage classes must be registered using the `dbdst_admin` command before assigning classes to volumes.
 - The database can be online or offline.

To classify a volume

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_classify` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device \  
-v volume_name:class[,volume_name:class]
```

For example, to assign the class "FAST" to volume `new_vol1`, use the `dbdst_classify` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S $ORACLE_SID -M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata \  
-v new_vol1:FAST
```

Displaying free space on your storage classes

To see the free space, class information, and volume information on your storage classes, use the `dbdst_show_fs` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_show_fs -S $ORACLE_SID -o volume \  
-m mount_point
```

The following table shows the `dbdst_show_fs` command options.

Table 11-2 `dbdst_show_fs` command options

Option	Description
<code>-S \$ORACLE_SID</code>	Specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle instance.
<code>-o volume</code>	Displays the free space on volumes in each class.
<code>-m</code>	Specifies the mount point.

Before displaying the free space on a storage class, review the following information:

- Prerequisites
- Make sure the file system is mounted.
- Usage notes
- See the `dbdst_show_fs(1M)` manual page.

To display the free space on a storage class

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_show_fs` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_show_fs -S $ORACLE_SID -o volume \  
-m mount_point
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_show_fs -S FLAS10r2 -m /snap_data10r2
```

```
MAXCLASS=4  
MINCLASS=2  
TOTAL CLASS=3
```

VOLUME NAME	SIZE	USED	AVAILABLE
-----	----	----	-----

```
CLASS=FAST  
datavol1          1024000  20692   1003308
```

```
CLASS=MEDIUM  
datavol2          4608000  221075  4386925
```

```
CLASS=PRIMARY  
datavol-b4vset    3072000  2765061 306939
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_show_fs -S FLAS10r2 -m /snap_data10r2 -o volume
```

VOLUME NAME	SIZE	USED	AVAILABLE	TAG
-----	----	----	-----	---
datavol-b4vset	103809024	1781232	102027792	PRIMARY
datavol1	103809024	16	103809008	FAST
datavol2	103809024	16	103809008	MEDIUM
datavol3	103809024	16	103809008	SLOW-MEDIUM
datavol4	103809024	16	103809008	SLOW
datavol5	103809024	16	103809008	HISTORY

Adding new volumes to a storage class

Use the `dbdst_addvol` command to add volumes to a volume set.

Before adding a volume, review the following information:

- Usage notes
- The database must be inactive when adding volumes to a storage class.

To add a volume to a volume set

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_addvol` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_addvol -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device \  
-v volume_name:class[,volume_name:class]
```

Removing volumes from a storage class

You may need to remove a volume from a volume set. To remove a volume, use the `dbdst_rmvol` command.

Before removing a volume, review the following information:

- Usage notes
- The database must be inactive when removing volumes from a storage class.
 - Only a volume that does not contain any file system data can be removed

To remove a volume from a volume set

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_rmvol` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_rmvol -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device \  
-v volume_name[,volume_name]
```

Starting or stopping I/O statistic collection

To start or stop I/O statistic collection on one or more files in the database, the `dbdst_fstat` command is used.

See the `dbdst_fstat(1M)` manual page.

Use the `dbdst_fstat` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o start|stop file-name  
  
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o start|stop -f spec-file  
  
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o start|stop -t tablespace-name  
  
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o stopall|list
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S orclpdb -o start /datavol/orclpdb/system01.dbf

$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o stop -t SYSAUX

$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o list

/opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S FLAS2 -o list
Task Name                               Status
-----
Statistic Datafile
-----
/datavol/orclpdb/system01.dbf
```

Dynamic Storage Tiering policy management

You can choose to manually relocate files or tablespaces, or you can use a preset Dynamic Storage Tiering (DST) policy.

Relocating files

You can relocate flashback logs, archive logs, datafiles, and external files if the files are no longer being used frequently. For example, if you maintain seasonal data, you may choose to move the files when you are in different seasons.

[Table 11-3](#) shows the `dbdst_file_move` command options.

Table 11-3 dbdst_file_move command options

Option	Description
<code>-o archive[n] flashback</code>	Specifies which archive logs or Flashback logs to move. Do not use this option with the <code>-f</code> option. Flashback is supported by Oracle 10g or later.
<code>-o external datafile</code>	Specifies whether to move external files or datafiles. Use this option with the <code>-f</code> option.
<code>-f listfile</code>	Specifies a listfile that contains a list of files or directories to be moved.

Table 11-3 dbdst_file_move command options (*continued*)

Option	Description
-c <i>class[:days]</i>	Specifies the storage class to which the files should be moved. If the <i>days</i> option is used, the files will be moved to the class specified if they have not been accessed in the number of days specified. Do not specify <i>days</i> if you are using the -o datafile option.
-R	Removes the policy for the specified object.

Before relocating a file, review the following information:

Usage notes ■ Multiple partitions cannot reside on the same tablespace.

To relocate a file

◆ Use the `dbdst_file_move` command as follows:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_file_move -S $ORACLE_SID -o datafile \  
-f listfile -c storage_class
```

For example

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_file_move -S FLAS10r2 -o datafile \  
-f /home/external.spec -c MEDIUM
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2  
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...  
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

Relocating tablespaces

Use the `dbdst_tbs_move` command to move tablespaces to the desired storage class. The command queries the SFDB repository for the tablespace file names, then performs a one-time move based on your immediate requirements.

To relocate a tablespace

◆ Use the `dbdst_tbs_move` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_tbs_move -S $ORACLE_SID -t tablespace \  
-c class
```

where

- *tablespace* indicates which tablespace to move.
- *class* indicates to which class the tablespace should be moved.

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_tbs_move -S FLAS10r2 -t MYTBS -c MEDIUM
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

Relocating table partitions

Use the `dbdst_partition_move` to move table partitions. The command queries the database to validate the names of the table and partition. From this information, a list of datafiles is derived and a one-time move of the files to the desired class is executed.

Before relocating a table partition, review the following information:

Prerequisites The database must be up when you run the `dbdst_partition_move` command.

To relocate a table partition

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_partition_move` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S $ORACLE_SID -T table_name \  
-p partition_name -c class
```

where

- `-T` indicates the table name.
- `-p` indicates the partition name.
- `-c` indicates the class to which the table partition is to be moved.

For example, to move the P3 partition of the EMP1 table to storage class MEDIUM, use the `dbdst_partition_move` as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S FLAS10r2 -T EMP1 \  
-p P3 -c MEDIUM
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

Using preset policies

Use the `dbdst_preset_policy` command to set a policy based on file name patterns before the files are created.

Use the `dbdst_preset_policy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_preset_policy -S $ORACLE_SID -d directory \  
-P pattern_spec
```

Table 11-4 shows the `dbdst_preset_policy` options.

Table 11-4 `dbdst_preset_policy` command options

Option	Description
<code>-d <i>directory</i></code>	Indicates the directory on which the placement policy will be applied.
<code>-e</code>	Enforces the file system of the specified directory. Use this option if there was an error in the previous enforcement that has been corrected and needs to be enforced again.
<code>-R</code>	Removes all pattern-based placement policies related to this directory.
<code>-l</code>	Lists the existing file placement that is set to the specified directory.
<code>-P <i>pattern_spec</i></code>	Specifies file patterns and class assignment. This option will automatically place files in the desired class as soon as they are created. Existing files and newly created files will be moved immediately to the class specified.
<code>-f <i>pattern_file</i></code>	Specifies a file that contains a particular class and pattern. New files with this pattern will be placed in the class immediately. Existing files will be moved as well.
<code>-E</code>	Specifies that existing files should be moved to the designated class in a one-time move to be scheduled at a later time, such as the sweeptime specified in the <code>dbdst_admin</code> command.

To create a preset policy

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_preset_policy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_preset_policy -S $ORACLE_SID -d directory \  
-P pattern_spec
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_preset_policy -S FLAS10r2 -d /snap_data10r2 \  
/FLAS10r2 -P "PRIMARY=*.dbf:MEDIUM=*.log"
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2  
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...  
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

Running Database Dynamic Storage Tiering reports

You can create a report that lists all updated allocation policies or you can view an audit report, which lists recent relocation changes for a specific date range resulting from your policies.

Viewing modified allocation policies

To create a list of modified allocation policies, use the `dbdst_report` command with the `policy` option.

To list allocation policies

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_report` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_report -S $ORACLE_SID -o policy
```

For example, to view a list of modified allocation policies, use the `dbdst_report` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_report -S $ORACLE_SID -o policy
```

```
TSDB Database Policy Report  
-----
```

```
Plan Name = archivelog:archivel  
Plan Type = ARCHIVE LOG  
Rule Name = DBED_relocate_age_ino63_  
Directory=/susanvset/archivel  
Rule Description = THREE >= 15 days
```

Viewing audit reports

To view an audit report, which lists recent file relocation changes within a specific date range, use the `dbdst_report` command with the `audit` option.

To view an audit report

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_report` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_report -S $ORACLE_SID -o audit \
startdate=yyyy-mm-dd,enddate=yyyy-mm-dd
```

For example, to view an audit report of changes from January 1, 2006 through March 1, 2006, use the `dbdst_report` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_report -S $ORACLE_SID -o audit \
startdate=2006-01-01,enddate=2006-03-01
```

AUDIT DATETIME	AUDIT DESCRIPTION
02/10/2006-23:28:15	ADMIN;Added;class name=ONE
02/10/2006-23:28:16	ADMIN;Added;class name=TWO
02/10/2006-23:28:17	ADMIN;Added;class name=THREE
02/10/2006-23:28:18	ADMIN;Modified Successfully;max/min class=4/2, statinterval=30, sweeptime=22:0, purgetime=20:0, swp/prg freq=1:30
02/10/2006-23:28:35	Convert;SUCCESS;Converting device /dev/vx/dsk/eeedg/myvset mounted at /susanvset/myvset
02/10/2006-23:28:38	Addvol;SUCCESS;volume susan1 belongs to storage_class ONE
02/10/2006-23:28:41	Addvol;SUCCESS;volume susan3 belongs to storage_class TWO

Extent balancing in a database environment

To get better performance in a database environment, normally you would use a volume striped over several disks. As the amount of data stored in the file system increases over time, additional space in the form of new disks must be added.

To increase space, you could perform a volume relayout using the `vxrelayout` command. However, changing a large volume from a four-way striped volume to six-way striped volume involves moving old block information into temporary space and writing those blocks from the temporary space to a new volume, which takes a long time. To solve this problem, Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle offers a new feature called a Load Balanced File System (LBFS).

An LBFS is created on a multi-volume file system where individual volumes are not striped over individual disks. For data-availability, these individual volumes can be mirrored. The file system on the LBFS has a special placement policy called a balance policy. When the balance policy is applied, all the files are divided into small "chunks" and the chunks are laid out on volumes so that adjacent chunks are on different volumes. The default chunk size is 1MB and can be modified. Since every file contains chunks on all available volumes, it is important that

individual volumes that make up the LBFS and volume set be of same size and same access properties. Setting up the file system in this way provides the same benefit as striping your volumes. Use the `dbdst_make1bfs` command to create an LBFS file system. Note that you cannot convert an existing file system to an LBFS file system.

Extent balancing file system

You can define allocation policies with a balance allocation order and "chunk" size to files or a file system, known as extent balancing. The chunk size is the maximum size of any extent that files or a file system with this assigned policy can have. The chunk size can only be specified for allocation policies with a balance allocation order.

An extent balancing policy specifies the balance allocation order and a non-zero chunk size. The balance allocation order distributes allocations randomly across the volumes specified in the policy and limits each allocation to a maximum size equal to the specified chunk size.

Extent balancing extends the behavior of policy enforcement by rebalancing extent allocations such that each volume in the policy is as equally used as possible. Policy enforcement handles the following cases:

- New volumes are added to the policy, and the extents associated with a file need rebalancing across all volumes, including the new ones.
- Volumes are removed from the volume set or from the policy, and the extents for a file residing on a removed volume need to be moved to other volumes in the policy.
- An extent balancing policy is assigned to a file and its extents have to be reorganized to meet the chunk size requirements defined in the policy.

The extent balancing policy is intended for balancing data extents belonging to files across volumes defined in the policy. However, there is no restriction imposed in assigning extent balancing policy for metadata.

Note: If the fixed extent size is less than the chunk size, then the extent size will be limited to the largest multiple of the fixed extent size that is less than the chunk size. If the fixed extent size is greater than the chunk size, then the extent size will be the fixed extent size.

Database Dynamic Storage Tiering use cases for Oracle

Use cases were created in order to provide examples of how and why you would use Database Dynamic Storage Tiering.

Migrating partitioned data and tablespaces

Perhaps the simplest application of multi-tier storage to databases is relocation of individual table partitions between different placement classes as usage requirements change. If exact relocation times are unpredictable, or if relocation is infrequent, administrators may wish to relocate table partitions as business requirements surface rather than defining strict periodic relocation schedules.

Ad hoc relocation of table partitions can be useful, for example, with databases that track sales and inventory for seasonal businesses such as sports equipment or outdoor furniture retailing. As the selling season for one type of inventory (for example, summer equipment or furniture) approaches, database table partitions that represent in-season goods can be relocated to high-performance storage, since they will be accessed frequently during the coming months. Similarly, partitions that represent out-of-season goods can be relocated to lower-cost storage, since activity against them is likely to be infrequent.

For example, sales are mostly catalog-driven for a large retailer specializing in sports equipment. Product details are saved in a large database and the product table is partitioned based on type of activity. Some of the products are seasonal and do not sell well at other times. For example, very few snow skis are sold during the summer. To achieve season-based migration, see the following example. Assume the table `product_tab` has two partitions, `summer` and `winter`. Each of these partitions is mapped to a separate data file.

First, you must set up your system to use Database Dynamic Storage Tiering.

To add the `fast_storage` and `slow_storage` storage classes

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S PROD -o addclass=\
fast_storage:"Fast Storage for Production DB"

$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S PROD -o addclass=\
slow_storage:"Slow Storage for Production DB"
```

To convert the database's file system and add volumes for use with Database Dynamic Storage Tiering

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_convert` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_convert -S PROD \  
-M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata -v new_vol1,new_vol2,new_vol3
```

To classify volumes into storage classes

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_classify` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S PROD \  
-M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata -v new_vol1:fast_storage  
  
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S PROD \  
-M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata -v new_vol2:slow_storage,\  
new_vol3:slow_storage
```

Once the volumes are configured, an administrator can define file placement policy rules that specify seasonal relocation of selected tablespaces and partitions and assign them to the database's file system.

To move summer data to slower storage and winter data to faster storage at the beginning of winter

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_partition_move` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S FLAS10r2 -T product_tab \  
-p winter -c fast_storage  
  
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2  
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...  
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2  
  
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S FLAS10r2 -T product_tab \  
-p summer -c slow_storage  
  
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2  
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...  
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

These commands relocate the files that comprise the winter partition of the `product_tab` table to placement class `fast_storage`, and the files that comprise the summer partition to placement class `slow_storage`. Database Dynamic Storage Tiering determines which files comprise the winter and summer partitions of

product_tab, and uses underlying DST services to immediately relocate those files to the fast_storage and slow_storage placement classes respectively.

To move winter data to slower storage and summer data to faster storage at the beginning of summer

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_partition_move` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S PROD -T product_tab \  
-p summer -c fast_storage
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /PROD2  
Begin enforcing filesystem /PROD2 ...  
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /PROD2
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S PROD -T product_tab \  
-p winter -c slow_storage
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /PROD2  
Begin enforcing filesystem /PROD2 ...  
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /PROD2
```

Database Dynamic Storage Tiering formulates DST policy rules that unconditionally relocate the files containing the target partitions to the destination placement classes. It merges these rules into the database file system's active policy, assigns the resulting composite policy to the file system, and enforces it immediately to relocate the subject files. Because the added policy rules precede any other rules in the active policy, the subject files remain in place until the `dbdst_partition_move` command is next executed, at which time the rules are removed and replaced with others.

Scheduling the relocation of archive and Flashback logs

Because they are the primary mechanism for recovering from data corruption, database logs are normally kept on premium storage, both for I/O performance and data reliability reasons. Even after they have been archived, logs are normally kept online for fast recovery, but the likelihood of referring to an archived log decreases significantly as its age increases. This suggests that archived database logs might be relocated to lower-cost volumes after a certain period of inactivity.

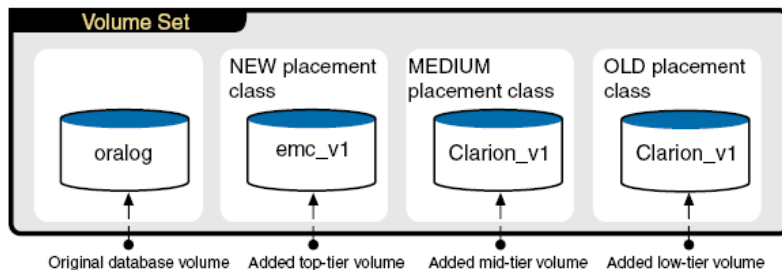
Similarly, Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Flashback technology creates logs that can be used for quick recovery from database corruption by restoring a database to its state at a previous time. Flashback logs are normally kept for a shorter period than archived database logs. If used at all, they are typically used within a few hours of creation. Two or three days is a typical Flashback log lifetime.

The rapidly decaying probability of use for archive and Flashback logs suggests that regular enforcement of a placement policy that relocates them to lower-cost storage after a period of inactivity can reduce an enterprise’s average cost of online storage.

For example, a customer could be using a large OLTP Oracle database with thousands of active sessions, which needs to be up and running 24 hours a day and seven days a week with uptime of over 99%, and the database uses Flashback technology to correct any accidental errors quickly. The database generates large number of archive logs per day. If the database goes down for any reason, there is business requirement to bring the database back online and functional within 15 minutes. To prevent Oracle log switch delays during transactions, the archive logs need to be created in a fast EMC array. Archive logs older than a week can be moved to a mid-range Clarion array. Archive logs older than 15 days can be moved to slow JBOD disks. Archive logs are purged after 30 days. Current Flashback logs are created manually by the database administrator on fast EMC storage and can be moved to Clarion storage after two days. The database administrator then deletes the Flashback logs after a week. To set up a system like this, see the following example. Assume that archive logs and Flashback logs are created on the same file system, /oralog. On the file system, /oralog/archive1 contains archive logs and /oralog/flashback contains Flashback logs.

illustrates a three-tier volume configuration that is suitable for automatic relocation and deletion of archive logs and Flashback logs.

Figure 11-1 Database storage configuration suitable for automatic relocation of archive and Flashback logs



The file system used by the production database in this example originally resides on the single volume oralog, which must be prepared by adding volumes and placement classes assigned to the volumes.

To add the NEW, MEDIUM, and OLD storage classes

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S PROD -o addclass=\
NEW:"EMC Storage for Production DB"
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S PROD -o addclass=\
MEDIUM:"Clarion Storage for Production DB"
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S PROD -o addclass=\
OLD:"JBOD Storage for Production DB"
```

To convert the database's file system and add volumes for use with Database Dynamic Storage Tiering

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_convert` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_convert -S PROD \  
-M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oralog -v emc_v1,clarion_v1,jbod_v1
```

To classify volumes into storage classes

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_classify` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S PROD \  
-M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oralog -v emc_v1:NEW
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S PROD \  
-M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oralog -v clarion_v1:MEDIUM
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S PROD \  
-M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oralog -v jbod_v1:OLD
```

Once the volumes are configured, an administrator can define file placement policy rules that specify access age-based relocation of selected files and assign them to the database's file system.

To define rules that periodically relocate Flashback and archive logs

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_file_move` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_file_move -S FLAS10r2 -o flashback -c MEDIUM:2  
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_arch10r2  
Filesystem /snap_arch10r2 is scheduled to be enforced at sweeptime
```

This relocates files in the flashback directory that have not been accessed for two days to the MEDIUM volume.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_file_move -S FLAS10r2 -o archive1 -c MEDIUM:7 \  
-c OLD:15
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_arch10r2  
Filesystem /snap_arch10r2 is scheduled to be enforced at sweeptime
```

This relocates files in the archive1 directory that have not been accessed for seven days to the MEDIUM volume, and files that have not been accessed for 15 days to the OLD volume.

Database Dynamic Storage Tiering translates these commands into DST access age-based policy rules, merges them with the file system's placement policy, and assigns the resulting policy to the file system. By default, Database Dynamic Storage Tiering enforces the active policy daily. During enforcement, the new rules relocate qualifying files to the destination storage tiers specified in the `dbdst_file_move` commands used to create the policies.

Using the Space Capacity Planning Utility for Storage Checkpoints

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About planning file system space for Storage Checkpoints](#)
- [Starting the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility](#)
- [Creating Capacity Planning schedules](#)
- [Displaying Capacity Planning schedules](#)
- [Displaying file system space usage information](#)
- [Removing Capacity Planning schedules](#)

About planning file system space for Storage Checkpoints

This is the last major release of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle to support the Space Capacity Planning utility. The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning Utility helps you plan for adequate file system space needed for Storage Checkpoints.

VxFS file systems need extra disk space to store Storage Checkpoints. Because VxFS can remove Storage Checkpoints when a file system runs out of space, it is important to ensure that you have adequate space for Storage Checkpoints. The extra space needed depends on how the Storage Checkpoints are used, the number of VxFS changed blocks recorded in the Storage Checkpoints, the frequency with

which you plan to create Storage Checkpoints, and how many Storage Checkpoints you want to retain on your system at any given time.

You can use Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning to simulate various Storage Checkpoint creation and retention models in your production environment, collect the associated file system space usage information based on these models, and use this information to proactively determine how much additional storage space is needed for Storage Checkpoints.

Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning uses the `cron` command as the underlying mechanism to run the Capacity Planning schedules you create. You must have the proper access and permissions to create a `cron` job, or the Capacity Planning schedule will fail to run.

All Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning activity, including the file-level block change information, is logged into the `/etc/vx/vxdba/logs/ckptplan.log` log file.

Starting the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility

The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility operations can be run by the Oracle Database Administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`) of the database instance.

Before starting the Capacity Planning utility, the following conditions must be met:

Usage notes

- You can only use the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility in an environment that contains no Storage Checkpoints created by other tools or products, including VERITAS NetBackup and the Command line interface using the `dbed_ckptcreate` command
- Each time `cron` attempts to create a Storage Checkpoint at the time designated in the schedule you create, the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility checks for the presence of Storage Checkpoints created by other tools or products and fails if it detects any of these other Storage Checkpoints.

To start the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility

- ◆ At the administrative prompt, enter:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/dbed_ckptplan
```

The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility starts up and displays the associated operations:

```
VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')  
Menu: Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning
```

```
1  Create Capacity Planning Schedules  
2  Display Capacity Planning Schedules  
3  Display Space Usage Information  
4  Remove Capacity Planning Schedules  
  
?  Display Help About the Current Menu  
q  Exit From Current Menu  
x  Exit From Capacity Planning Utility
```

```
Select Operation to Perform:
```

Creating Capacity Planning schedules

The VERITAS Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility prompts you through the entire schedule-creation process.

Before creating a schedule, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must have the appropriate permissions to create and execute a `cron` job to create Capacity Planning schedules. For more information on setting up and using `cron`, refer to the manual pages.
See the `cron(1)` manual page.
See the `crontab(1)` manual page.

To create Capacity Planning schedules using the Capacity Planning Utility

- 1 From the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning menu, type **1** to select **Create Capacity Planning Schedules**:

```
VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')
Menu: Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning

1  Create Capacity Planning Schedules
2  Display Capacity Planning Schedules
3  Display Space Usage Information
4  Remove Capacity Planning Schedules

?  Display Help About the Current Menu
q  Exit From Current Menu
x  Exit From Capacity Planning Utility

Select Operation to Perform: 1
```

- 2 Select the type of schedule you want to create:

```
VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')
Menu: Create Capacity Planning Schedules

1  Create Quick Planning Schedule (Current Instance)
2  Create Custom Planning Schedule (List of File Systems)
3  Create Complete Planning Schedule (All File Systems)

?  Display Help About the Current Menu
q  Exit From Current Menu
x  Exit From Capacity Planning Utility

Select Operation to Perform: 1
```

Select from the following operations:

Create Quick Planning Schedule	Creates a schedule for the VxFS file systems associated with the current database instance's datafiles.
Create Custom Planning Schedule	Creates a schedule for the VxFS file systems listed in a user-supplied list file.
Create Complete Planning Schedule	Creates a schedule for all VxFS file systems on the host.

- 3** Supply the schedule-creation information when prompted. When you finish entering the schedule information, the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility displays the schedule you created and lets you confirm or edit it.

For example, to create a Quick Planning Schedule, type **1** on the **Create Capacity Planning Schedules** menu:

```
-----
Create Quick Planning Schedule
-----
```

To correctly create schedule on current database instance, you must have up-to-date tablespace information stored in repository database.

Are you certain the tablespace information is up to date? [y,n,q,?] **y**

```
How often do you want to create Storage Checkpoints?
[d(daily),w(specify days of week),m(specify days of month),q]
(default: d) d
```

Specify the hours of the day to create Storage Checkpoints, where 00 is midnight and 23 is 11:00 p.m..

```
Use ',' to separate multiple entries. [00-23,q] (default: 00) 01
```

```
On what date do you want to start this Capacity Planning
schedule? [yyyy-mm-dd,q] (default: 2001-12-10) 2001-12-15
```

```
On what date do you want to end this Capacity Planning schedule?
[yyyy-mm-dd,q] (default: 2001-12-10) 2001-12-15
```

```
Do you want to remove all Storage Checkpoints created when
this Capacity Planning schedule ends? [y,n,q,?] (default: y) y
```

You created the following schedule for Capacity Planning:

```
Start date: 2001-12-15 End date: 2001-12-15
```

```
You set the remove Storage Checkpoints option to: 'y'
```

```
You specified Storage Checkpoints are to be created as follows:
Daily
```

```
On the following hour(s) of the day: (1 a.m.)
```

Press <Return> to confirm this schedule, 'm' to modify the schedule, or 'q' to quit. [<Return>,m,q] <Return>

Press <Return> to activate this schedule, 'a' to add a new schedule, or 'q' to quit. [<Return>,a,q]? <Return>

Displaying Capacity Planning schedules

Use the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility to display all the Capacity Planning schedules you created.

To display Capacity Planning schedules using the Capacity Planning utility

- ◆ From the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning menu, type **2** to select **Display Capacity Planning Schedules**:

```

VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')
Menu: Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning

1  Create Capacity Planning Schedules
2  Display Capacity Planning Schedules
3  Display Space Usage Information
4  Remove Capacity Planning Schedules

?  Display Help About the Current Menu
q  Exit From Current Menu
x  Exit From Capacity Planning Utility

Select Operation to Perform: 2

```

The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility displays all the schedules you created.

For example, to display the Quick Planning schedule that you created, type **2**:

```

-----
Display Capacity Planning Schedules
-----

ID      Start Date      End Date      Schedule Summary
-----
1      2001-12-15      2001-12-15      Daily at 1 a.m.

Press <Return> to continue...

```

Displaying file system space usage information

Use the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility to display space-usage information for VxFS file systems and the associated Storage Checkpoints. You can monitor this space-usage information as your Storage Checkpoint-creation schedules progress.

Before starting Storage Checkpoint Planning utility, the following conditions must be met:

- Usage notes
- If a Storage Checkpoint is created using other tools and products (for example, through the command line interface using the `dbed_ckptcreate` command or VERITAS NetBackup), then the following will occur when a Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning schedule is in progress:
The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility will fail the next time `cron` attempts to create a Storage Checkpoint at the time designated in the schedule you created.
The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility will display the following error when displaying the Storage Checkpoint space information using the **Display Space Usage Information** operation: DBED1007: Non-Capacity Planning Storage Checkpoints detected.

To display VxFS file system and Storage Checkpoint space usage using the Capacity Planning utility

- 1 From the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning menu, type **3** to select **Display Space Usage Information**:

```
VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')
Menu: Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning

1  Create Capacity Planning Schedules
2  Display Capacity Planning Schedules
3  Display Space Usage Information
4  Remove Capacity Planning Schedules

?  Display Help About the Current Menu
q  Exit From Current Menu
x  Exit From Capacity Planning Utility

Select Operation to Perform: 3
```

- 2 Select the kind of space-usage information you want to display:

```
VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')
Menu: Display Space Usage Information

1  Display Space Usage for the Current Instance
2  Display Space Usage for a List of File Systems
```



```

3  Display Space Usage for All File Systems
4  Display Space Usage by Schedule

?  Display Help About the Current Menu
q  Exit From Current Menu
x  Exit From Capacity Planning Utility

```

Select Operation to Perform: 1

Select from the following operations:

- Display Space Usage for the Current Instance Displays space-usage information for the VxFS file systems contained in the current database instance.
- Display Space Usage for a List of File Systems Displays space-usage information for the VxFS file systems listed in a user-supplied list file. You are prompted for the list file name when you select this operation.
- Display Space Usage for All File Systems Displays space-usage information for all VxFS file systems on the host.
- Display Space Usage by Schedule Displays space-usage information for the VxFS file systems by Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning schedule. You are prompted for the schedule number for which you want to display the space usage.

For example, to display VxFS file system and Storage Checkpoint space-usage information for the current database instance, type **1** on the **Display Space Usage Information** menu:

```

File System (1K block)      FS Size    Used    Avail    %Full
-----
/db01                      10.0GB    5.3GB   4.5GB    53.4%

Storage Checkpoint        Creation Time                                Space Needed
-----
Planning_00001_956765641  Wed Oct 27 09:14:01 2001                82.0KB
Planning_00001_956762040  Wed Oct 27 08:14:00 2001                 4.0KB
Planning_00001_956758441  Wed Oct 27 07:14:01 2001                 4.0KB

Total space required by 3 Storage Checkpoint(s) is 90.0KB

Press <Return> to continue...

```

In addition to providing space-usage information for the current database instance's underlying file systems, **Display Space Usage Information for the Current Instance** shows the following information about each Storage Checkpoint it detects:

Storage Checkpoint	All Storage Checkpoints created by the Storage Checkpoints Capacity Planning utility are named using the following conventions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Prefixed with <code>Planning_</code>■ Followed by the five digit schedule number, for example <code>00001_</code>■ Followed by a timestamp sequence number, for example <code>956758441</code>
Creation Time	Creation Time is the time that <code>crn</code> creates the Capacity Planning Storage Checkpoint.
Space Needed	Space Needed is storage space consumed by the Storage Checkpoint based on the changed blocks recorded in the Storage Checkpoint.

Removing Capacity Planning schedules

Use the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility to remove Capacity Planning schedules at any time. You do not need to wait until the expiration date that you supplied when creating a schedule.

Before removing the schedules, the following conditions must be met:

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility stores the space-usage information it collects during the schedule duration in the log file <code>/etc/vx/vxdba/logs/planxxxxx.out</code> (where <code><xxxxx></code> is the schedule ID number). This space-usage information remains available to you in the log file even after the schedule is removed.■ During the schedule-removal operation, you are asked if you want to remove the Storage Checkpoints that were created by the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility during the schedule duration. |
|-------------|---|

To remove Capacity Planning schedules using the Capacity Planning Utility

- ◆ From the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning menu, type **4** to select **Remove Capacity Planning Schedules**:

```
VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')
Menu: Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning

1  Create Capacity Planning Schedules
2  Display Capacity Planning Schedules
3  Display Space Usage Information
4  Remove Capacity Planning Schedules

?  Display Help About the Current Menu
q  Exit From Current Menu
x  Exit From Capacity Planning Utility

Select Operation to Perform: 4
```

The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility displays all the existing Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning schedules, so that you can remove a particular schedule, a range of schedules, or all schedules.

For example, to remove the Quick Planning Schedule you created, type **4** on the **Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning** menu:

```
-----
Remove Capacity Planning Schedules
-----

ID  Start Date  End Date  Schedule Summary
--  -
1   2001-12-15  2001-12-15  Daily at 1 a.m.

Do you want to delete any of these Capacity Planning schedules?
[y,n,q,?] (default: y) y

Enter a schedule number or a range of numbers to delete.

You can also enter 'all' to remove the entire list of
Capacity Planning schedules. [<number>,<number>-<number>,all,q] 1

ID  Start Date  End Date  Schedule Summary
```

-- -----

1 2001-12-15 2001-12-15 Daily at at 1 a.m.

Do you want to delete schedule #1? [y,n,q,?] y

Do you want to remove the Storage Checkpoints created by
Capacity Planning schedule #1? [y,n,q,?] (default: y)

Generating the output /etc/vx/vxdba/logs/plan00001.out', please
wait...

Removed schedule ' 00001' successfully.

Using Database FlashSnap for backup and off-host processing

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Veritas Database FlashSnap](#)
- [How to plan for Database FlashSnap](#)
- [Hosts and storage for Database FlashSnap](#)
- [Summary of database snapshot steps](#)
- [Creating a snapplan \(dbed_vmchecksnap\)](#)
- [Validating a snapplan \(dbed_vmchecksnap\)](#)
- [Displaying, copying, and removing a snapplan \(dbed_vmchecksnap\)](#)
- [Creating a snapshot \(dbed_vmsnap\)](#)
- [Backing up the database from snapshot volumes \(dbed_vmclonedb\)](#)
- [Cloning a database \(dbed_vmclonedb\)](#)
- [Resynchronizing your database to the snapshot](#)
- [Resynchronizing the snapshot to your database](#)
- [Removing a snapshot volume](#)
- [Using Database FlashSnap in an HA environment](#)

About Veritas Database FlashSnap

Veritas Database FlashSnap is included with Veritas Database Edition Enterprise Edition.

Database FlashSnap lets you capture an online image of an actively changing database at a given instant, known as a snapshot. You can perform backups and off-host processing tasks on snapshots while providing continuous availability of your critical data, with minimal interruption to users. Database FlashSnap commands can be executed from either the command line or the GUI.

Veritas Database FlashSnap offers you a flexible way to efficiently manage multiple point-in-time copies of your data, and reduce resource contention on your business-critical servers. Database FlashSnap allows database administrators to create a consistent copy of a database without root privileges by creating a snapshot. A snapshot copy of the database is referred to as a database snapshot.

You can use a database snapshot on the same host as the production database or on a secondary host sharing the same storage. A database snapshot can be used for off-host processing applications, such as backup, data warehousing, and decision-support queries. When the snapshot is no longer needed, the database administrator can import the original snapshot back to the primary host and resynchronize the snapshot to the original database volumes.

Database FlashSnap also allows you to resynchronize your original database volumes from the data in the snapshot if the original volumes become corrupted. This is referred to as reverse resynchronization.

Database FlashSnap can significantly reduce the time it takes to back up your database, increase the availability of your production database, and still maintain your production database's performance.

Note: To use Database FlashSnap, you must have Veritas Storage Foundation Enterprise Edition on all systems on which you intend to use Database FlashSnap.

To use Database FlashSnap, you must first configure the volumes used by the database.

Note: Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC does not support reverse resynchronization and operations through the GUI.

Typical database problems solved with Database FlashSnap

Database FlashSnap is designed to enable you to use database snapshots to overcome the following types of problems encountered in enterprise database environments:

- In many companies, there is a clear separation between the roles of system administrators and database administrators. Creating database snapshots typically requires superuser (root) privileges, privileges that database administrators do not usually have.
- In some companies, database administrators are granted root privileges, but managing storage is typically not central to their job function or their core competency.
- Creating database snapshots is a complex process, especially in large configurations where thousands of volumes are used for the database. One mistake can render the snapshots useless.

Because it does not require root privileges, Database FlashSnap overcomes these obstacles by enabling database administrators to create consistent snapshots of the database more easily. The snapshots can be utilized for repetitive use.

About Database FlashSnap applications

The following are typical applications of Veritas Database FlashSnap:

- **Database Backup and Restore**
Enterprises require 24/7 online data availability. They cannot afford the downtime involved in backing up critical data offline. By creating a clone database or a duplicate volume snapshot of data, and then using it to back up your data, your business-critical applications can continue to run without extended down time or impacted performance. After a clone database or snapshot volume is created, it can be used as a source to back up the original database.
- **Decision-Support Analysis and Reporting**
Operations such as decision-support analysis and business reporting may not require access to real-time information. You can direct such operations to use a clone database that you have created from snapshots using Veritas Database FlashSnap, rather than allowing them to compete for access to the primary volume or database. When required, you can quickly resynchronize the clone database with the primary database to get up-to-date information.
- **Application Development and Testing**
Development or service groups can use a clone database created with Database FlashSnap as a test database for new applications. A clone database provides

developers, system testers, and quality assurance groups with a realistic basis for testing the robustness, integrity, and performance of new applications.

■ Logical Error Recovery

Logical errors caused by an administrator or an application program can compromise the integrity of a database. You can recover a database by restoring the database files from a volume snapshot or by recovering logical objects (such as tables, for example) from a clone database created from volume snapshots using Database FlashSnap. These solutions are faster than fully restoring database files from tape or other backup media.

Database FlashSnap

The system administrator needs to configure storage according to the requirements specified in the snapplan.

Database FlashSnap allows you to check the storage setup against requirements set forth in the snapplan. Depending on the results, the database administrator may need to modify the snapplan or the system administrator may need to adjust the storage configuration. Properly configuring storage is the only aspect of using Database FlashSnap that requires the system administrator's participation.

Note: In Oracle RAC configurations, Database Flashsnap commands can be run on the Veritas Cluster Volume Manager master or slave node, and only `online` snapshots are supported.

To use Database FlashSnap, a database administrator must first define their snapshot requirements. For example, they need to determine whether off-host processing is required and, if it is, which host should be used for it. In addition, it is also important to consider how much database downtime can be tolerated. Database snapshot requirements are defined in a file called a snapplan. The snapplan specifies snapshot options that will be used when creating a snapshot image (such as whether the snapshot mode will be `online`, `offline`, or `instant`).

After creating the snapplan, the database administrator must validate it to ensure that it is correct. During validation the snapplan is copied to the repository before using it to create a snapshot. Depending on the validation results, the database administrator may need to modify the snapplan or the system administrator may need to adjust the storage configuration.

After storage is configured as specified in the snapplan and the snapplan has been validated, the database administrator can create snapshots of the database and create database clones based on the snapshots. Database clones can also be created

on any node on either the same host or a secondary one or on both nodes if used within Oracle RAC..

A database clone can be used on a secondary host for off-host processing, including decision-support analysis and reporting, application development and testing, database backup, and logical error recovery. After a user has finished using the clone on a secondary host, the database administrator can shut down the clone and move the snapshot database back to the primary host. Regardless of whether a snapshot is used on the primary or secondary host, it can be resynchronized with the primary database using Database FlashSnap. Database FlashSnap utilizes Veritas Volume Manager FastResync to quickly resynchronize the changed section between the primary and snapshot.

Database FlashSnap can also be used to recover the primary copy of the database if it becomes corrupted by overwriting it with the snapshot. You can recover the primary database with a snapshot using the reverse resynchronization functionality of Database FlashSnap. In an Oracle RAC configuration, reverse resynchronization is not supported. Also in Oracle RAC, the `dbed_vmsnap` and `dbed_vmclonedb` commands can be executed on the CVM master or slave node. The `dbed_vmchecksnap` command can be executed at any node within the cluster.

See the *Veritas Volume Manager User's Guide*.

Database FlashSnap commands

The Database FlashSnap feature consists of three commands:

- `dbed_vmchecksnap` (used on the primary host)
Creates and validates the snapshot plan used to create a snapshot image of an Oracle database. You can also use `dbed_vmchecksnap` to copy, list, or remove a snapplan or make sure the storage is configured properly for the task. The `dbed_vmchecksnap` command is also used on the secondary host to list the snapplan.
In Oracle RAC, this command can be used on any node within the RAC cluster except when validating a snapplan, when `dbed_vmchecksnap` is run on the CVM master or slave node.
- `dbed_vmsnap` (used on the primary host)
Creates a snapshot image of an Oracle database by splitting the mirror volumes used by the database. You can also use `dbed_vmsnap` to resynchronize snapshot volumes with their original volumes. The command also allows you to resynchronize the original volumes from the data in the snapshot volumes, which is useful if the original volumes become corrupted. Resynchronizing the original volumes from the snapshot volumes is known as reverse resynchronization.

In Oracle RAC, this command can be run on the CVM master or slave node.

- `dbed_vmclonedb` (used on the primary or secondary host)

Mounts and starts a clone database using snapshot volumes. It can also shut down a clone database and deport its volumes, as well as restart a clone database that has been shut down. The snapshot image can be brought up on the same host running the primary database or on a secondary host.

In Oracle RAC, this command can be run on the CVM master or slave node.

All of these commands can be executed by the Oracle database administrator and do not require superuser (`root`) privileges.

Note: Database FlashSnap operations can be executed from either the command line or the GUI.

Database FlashSnap options

Database FlashSnap offers three options for creating database snapshots. The option you choose is specified in the `snapplan`.

- `online`

With this option, the tablespaces are put into online backup mode before the snapshot is created. This type of snapshot is also a valid database backup. Select this option if you are performing a point-in-time recovery from logical errors.

- `instant`

With this option, the database can be up and running, and the tablespaces do not need to be put into online backup mode before the snapshot is created. However, all the file systems used by the database (including those containing the online redo logs and control files) are temporarily frozen and the cache is flushed before the snapshot is created. By freezing the file systems, the snapshot will be a consistent point-in-time image of the database from which a database clone can be created.

An instant snapshot can be used to guard against data corruption or for off-host decision-support queries. However, it is not a valid database backup and cannot be used to perform a point-in-time recovery or off-host backup since tablespaces are not put into online backup mode before the snapshot is created. The instant option is much faster than the online option.

- `offline`

Use this option to clone or back up a database. With the `offline` option, the database must be shut down when the snapshot is created, and online redo logs are required.

Note: In Oracle RAC configurations, only the `online` option can be used.

How to plan for Database FlashSnap

Before using Database FlashSnap, you must determine your intended application. You then need to make the following decisions:

- Which snapshot mode is appropriate: `online`, `offline`, or `instant`?
Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC uses only the `online` mode.
- Will you need one or two hosts?

Snapshot mode

If your purpose is to use the snapshot for backup or to recover the database after logical errors have occurred, choose the `online` option. In the event that your production database is offline, choose `offline`. If you intend to use the snapshot for decision-support analysis, reporting, development, or testing, choose `instant`. An instant snapshot is not suitable for recovery because it is not necessarily an exact copy of the primary database.

With Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, you do not select a snapshot mode because only the `online` mode is used.

One or two snapshot hosts

If maintaining the performance of your primary database is critical, you can offload processing of the snapshots to a secondary host. For off-host processing, storage must be shared between the primary and secondary hosts.

If cost savings is most important, you can choose to do the processing on the same host as the primary database to save on hardware costs.

Hosts and storage for Database FlashSnap

Database FlashSnap requires sufficient Veritas Volume Manager disk space, and can be used on the same host that the database resides on (the primary host) or on a secondary host.

With Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, Database FlashSnap can be used on the same cluster that the database resides on.

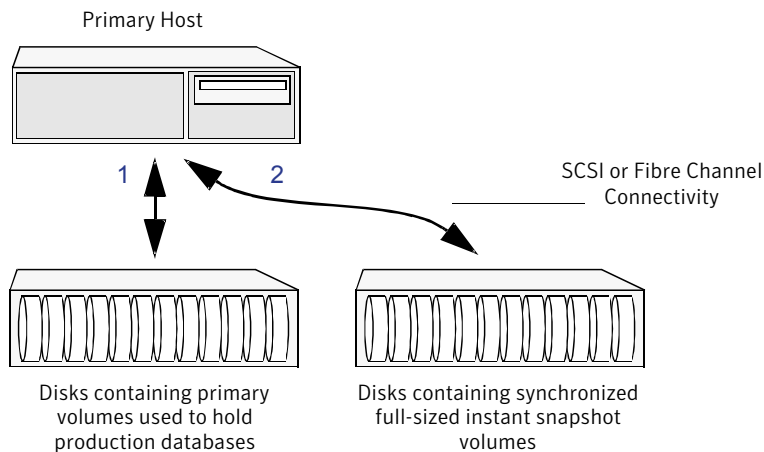
Setting up a storage configuration for Database FlashSnap operations is a system administrator's responsibility and requires superuser (root) privileges. Database FlashSnap utilities do not address setting up an appropriate storage configuration.

Single-host configuration

Figure 13-1 shows the suggested arrangement for implementing Database FlashSnap solutions on the primary host to avoid disk contention.

Note: A single-host configuration does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC configurations because a RAC cluster contains multiple hosts.

Figure 13-1 Example of a Database FlashSnap solution on a primary host



Two-host or Oracle RAC configuration

A Database FlashSnap configuration with two hosts allows CPU- and I/O-intensive operations to be performed for online backup and decision support without degrading the performance of the primary host running the production database. A two-host configuration also allows the snapshot database to avoid contending for I/O resources on the primary host.

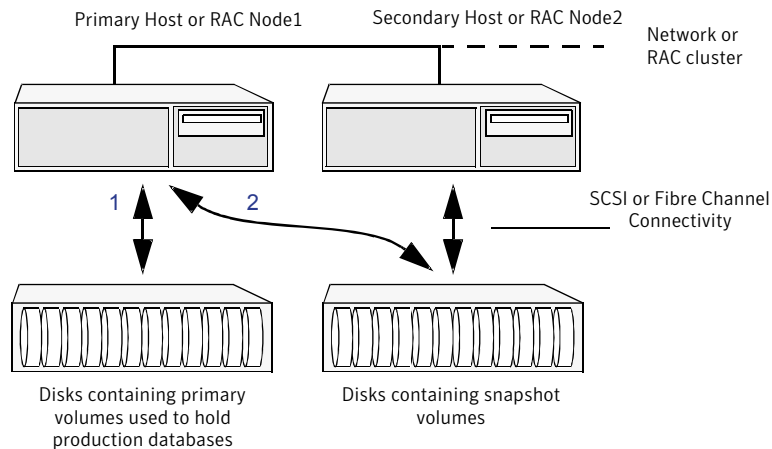
Because Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC uses multiple hosts, an Oracle RAC configuration appears much like a two-host configuration, but without the concepts of "off-host" processing or primary and secondary hosts.

Figure 13-2 shows a two-host configuration, or the equivalent with an Oracle RAC configuration.

For off-host processing applications, both the primary and secondary hosts need to share the storage in which the snapshot database is created. Both the primary and secondary hosts must be able to access the disks containing the snapshot volumes.

See “[Accessing an off-host repository in a non-VCS environment](#)” on page 74.

Figure 13-2 Example of an off-host or Oracle RAC Database FlashSnap solution



Host and storage requirements

Before using Database FlashSnap, ensure that:

- All files are on VxFS file systems over VxVM volumes. Raw devices are not supported.
- Symbolic links to datafiles are not supported.
- `ORACLE_HOME` is on a separate file system.
- Archive logs are on a separate VxFS file system (or cluster file system) and are on a different VxFS file system (or cluster file system) than Oracle datafiles or `ORACLE_HOME`.
- The database does not contain `BFILES` and external tables.
- Oracle datafiles, archive logs, redo logs, and control files are in single or multiple disk groups.

In addition, before attempting to use Database FlashSnap with two hosts, ensure that:

- The versions of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle on the primary and secondary hosts are the same.
- The same version of Oracle is installed on both hosts.
- The Oracle binaries and datafiles are on different volumes and disks.
- The UNIX login for the database user and group must be the same on both hosts.
- You have a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Enterprise Edition license on both hosts.

Creating a snapshot mirror of a volume or volume set used by the database

With Database FlashSnap, you can mirror the volumes used by the database to a separate set of disks, and those mirrors can be used to create a snapshot of the database. These snapshot volumes can be split and placed in a separate disk group. This snapshot disk group can be imported on a separate host, which shares the same storage with the primary host. The snapshot volumes can be resynchronized periodically with the primary volumes to get recent changes of the datafiles. If the primary datafiles become corrupted, you can quickly restore them from the snapshot volumes. Snapshot volumes can be used for a variety of purposes, including backup and recovery, and creating a clone database.

You must create snapshot mirrors for all of the volumes used by the database datafiles before you can create a snapshot of the database.

Before creating a snapshot mirror, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged in as superuser (root).
 - The disk group must be version 110 or later. For more information on disk group versions, see the `vxdg(1M)` online manual page.
 - Be sure that a data change object (DCO) and a DCO log volume are associated with the volume for which you are creating the snapshot.
 - Persistent FastResync must be enabled on the existing database volumes and disks must be assigned for the snapshot volumes. FastResync optimizes mirror resynchronization by tracking updates to stored data that have been missed by a mirror. When a snapshot mirror is reattached to its primary volumes, only the updates that were missed need to be re-applied to resynchronize it. FastResync increases the efficiency of the volume snapshot mechanism to better support operations such as backup and decision support. For detailed information about FastResync, see the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.
 - Snapshot mirrors and their associated DCO logs should be on different disks than the original mirror plexes, and should be configured correctly for creating snapshots by the system administrator.
 - When creating a snapshot mirror, create the snapshot on a separate controller and separate disks from the primary volume.
 - Allocate separate volumes for archive logs.
 - Do not place any datafiles, including control files, in the `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs` directory.
- Usage notes
- Create a separate disk group for Oracle database-related files.
 - Do not share volumes between Oracle database files and other software.
 - `ORACLE_HOME` cannot be included in the snapshot mirror.
 - Resynchronization speed varies based on the amount of data changed in both the primary and snapshot volumes during the break-off time.
 - Do not share any disks between the original mirror and the snapshot mirror.
 - Snapshot mirrors for datafiles and archive logs should be created so that they do not share any disks with the data of the original volumes. If they are not created in this way, the VxVM disk group cannot be split and, as a result, Database FlashSnap will not work.
 - In Oracle RAC configurations, use the `vxdctl -c mode` command to determine the hostname of the VxVM CVM master node. Prepare the volume for a snapshot. Snapshot can be taken from a CVM master or slave node.

Note: Database FlashSnap commands support third-mirror break-off snapshots only. The snapshot mirror must be in the `SNAPDONE` state.

To create a snapshot mirror of a volume

1 Create a volume:

```
vxassist -g diskgroup make volume_name size disk_name
```

For example:

```
# vxassist -g PRODDg make snapvset_1 8g data01
```

2 Create a DCO and enable FastResync on the volume:

```
vxsnap -g diskgroup prepare volume_name [alloc=storage_attribute]
```

For example:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg prepare snapvset alloc="snap01"
```

3 Verify that a DCO and DCO log are attached to the volume:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%fastresync volume_name  
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%hasdcolog volume_name
```

This command returns `on` if a DCO and DCO log are attached to the specified volume.

For example:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%fastresync snapdata  
on  
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%hasdcolog snapdata  
on
```

4 Create a mirror of the volume:

```
vxsnap -g diskgroup addmir volume_name [alloc=storage_attribute]
```

For example:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg addmir snapdata alloc="data02"
```

5 List the available mirrored data plex for the volume:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"volume_name\""
```

For example:

```
# vxprint -g flashdstdg16 -e"pl_v_name in\"datavol\""
```

TY	NAME	ASSOC	KSTATE	LENGTH	PLOFFS	STATE	TUTIL0
pl	datavol-01	datavol	ENABLED	4608000	-	ACTIVE	-
sd	c4t5d0-01	datavol-01	ENABLED	4608000	0	-	-
pl	datavol-02	datavol	ENABLED	4608000	-	SNAPDONE	-
sd	c4t6d2-01	datavol-02	ENABLED	4608000	0	-	-

6 Set the `dbed_flashsnap` tag on the break-off data plex for the volume:

```
vxedit -g diskgroup set putil2=dbed_flashsnap plex_name
```

For example:

```
# vxedit -g PRODDg set putil2=dbed_flashsnap snapdata-02
```

7 Verify that the `dbed_flashsnap` tag has been set on the data plex for each volume in the volume set:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"volume_name\" \
&& p2 in \"dbed_flashsnap\""
```

For example:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"snapdata\" \
&& p2 in \"dbed_flashsnap\""
snapdata-02
```

8 Verify the disk group configuration:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup
```

For example:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg
```

TY	NAME	ASSOC	KSTATE	LENGTH	PLOFFS	STATE	TUTILO	PUTILO
dg	PRODDg	PRODDg	-	-	-	-	-	-
dm	data01	Disk_17	-	33483648	-	-	-	-
dm	data02	Disk_24	-	33483648	-	-	-	-
v	snapdata	fsgen	ENABLED	16777216	-	ACTIVE	-	-
pl	snapdata-01	snapdata	ENABLED	16777216	-	ACTIVE	-	-
sd	data01-01	snapdata-01	ENABLED	16777216	0	-	-	-
pl	snapdata-02	snapdata	ENABLED	16777216	-	SNAPDONE	-	-
sd	data02-01	snapdata-02	ENABLED	16777216	0	-	-	-
dc	snapdata_dco	snapdata	-	-	-	-	-	-
v	snapdata_dcl	gen	ENABLED	1696	-	ACTIVE	-	-
pl	snapdata_dcl-01	snapdata_dcl	ENABLED	1696	-	ACTIVE	-	-
sd	data01-02	snapdata_dcl-01	ENABLED	1696	0	-	-	-
pl	snapdata_dcl-02	snapdata_dcl	DISABLED	1696	-	DCOSNP	-	-
sd	data02-02	snapdata_dcl-02	ENABLED	1696	0	-	-	-

To create a snapshot mirror of a volume set

1 Create a volume:

```
vxassist -g diskgroup make volume_name size disk_name
```

For example:

```
# vxassist -g PRODDg make snapvset_1 8g snap01  
# vxassist -g PRODDg make snapvset_2 4g snap01
```

2 Create a volume set for use by VxFS:

```
vxvset -g diskgroup -t vxfs make vset_name volume_name
```

For example:

```
# vxvset -g PRODDg -t vxfs make snapvset snapvset_1
```

3 Add the volume to the volume set:

```
vxvset -g diskgroup addvol vset_name volume_name
```

For example:

```
# vxvset -g PRODDg addvol snapvset snapvset_2
```

4 Create a DCO and enable FastResync on the volume set:

```
vxsnap -g diskgroup prepare vset_name [alloc=storage_attribute]
```

For example:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg prepare snapvset alloc="snap01"
```

- 5 Verify that a DCO and DCO log are attached to each volume in the volume set:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%fastresync volume_name
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%hasdcolog volume_name
```

This command returns on if a DCO and DCO log are attached to the specified volume.

For example:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%fastresync snapvset_1
on
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%fastresync snapvset_2
on
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%hasdcolog snapvset_1
on
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%hasdcolog snapvset_2
on
```

- 6 Create a mirror of the volume set volumes:

```
vxsnap -g diskgroup addmir vset_name [alloc=storage_attribute]
```

For example:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg addmir snapvset alloc="snap02"
```

- 7 List the available mirrored data plex for each volume in the volume set:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"volume_name\""
```

For example:

```
# vxprint -g flashdstdg16 -e"pl_v_name in\"datavol\""
```

TY NAME	ASSOC	KSTATE	LENGTH	PLOFFS	STATE	TUTIL0	PUTIL0
pl datavol-01	datavol	ENABLED	4608000	-	ACTIVE	-	-
sd c4t5d0-01	datavol-01	ENABLED	4608000	0	-	-	-
pl datavol-02	datavol	ENABLED	4608000	-	SNAPDONE	-	-
sd c4t6d2-01	datavol-02	ENABLED	4608000	0	-	-	-

- 8 Set the `dbed_flashsnap` tag on the break-off data plex for each volume in the volume set:

```
vxedit -g diskgroup set putil2=dbed_flashsnap plex_name
```

For example:

```
# vxedit -g PRODDg set putil2=dbed_flashsnap snapvset_1-02  
# vxedit -g PRODDg set putil2=dbed_flashsnap snapvset_2-02
```

9 Verify that the `dbed_flashsnap` tag has been set on the data plex for each volume in the volume set:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"volume_name\" \  
&& p2 in \"dbed_flashsnap\""
```

For example:

```
# vxprint -g PRODdg -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"snapvset_1\" \  
&& p2 in \"dbed_flashsnap\""  
snapvset_1-02
```

```
# vxprint -g PRODdg -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"snapvset_2\" \  
&& p2 in \"dbed_flashsnap\""  
snapvset_2-02
```


10 Verify the snapshot volume configuration:

```
vxprint -g diskgroup
```

For example:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg
TY NAME          ASSOC              KSTATE   LENGTH   PLOFFS  STATE     TUTILO   PUTILO
dg PRODDg        PRODDg             -         -         -        -         -         -

dm snap01        Disk_9              -         33483648 -        -         -         -
dm snap02        Disk_11             -         33483648 -        -         -         -

vt snapvset      -                   ENABLED   -         -        ACTIVE    -         -
v  snapvset_1    snapvset            ENABLED   16777216 -        ACTIVE    -         -
pl snapvset_1-01 snapvset_1          ENABLED   16777216 -        ACTIVE    -         -
sd snap01-01     snapvset_1-01      ENABLED   16777216 0        -         -         -
pl snapvset_1-02 snapvset_1          ENABLED   16777216 -        SNAPDONE  -         -
sd snap02-01     snapvset_1-02      ENABLED   16777216 0        -         -         -
dc snapvset_1_dco snapvset_1          -         -         -        -         -         -
v  snapvset_1_dcl gen                ENABLED   1696     -        ACTIVE    -         -
pl snapvset_1_dcl-01 snapvset_1_dcl    ENABLED   1696     -        ACTIVE    -         -
sd snap01-03     snapvset_1_dcl-01 ENABLED   1696     0        -         -         -
pl snapvset_1_dcl-02 snapvset_1_dcl    DISABLED  1696     -        DCOSNP    -         -
sd snap02-02     snapvset_1_dcl-02 ENABLED   1696     0        -         -         -
v  snapvset_2    snapvset            ENABLED   8388608 -        ACTIVE    -         -
pl snapvset_2-01 snapvset_2          ENABLED   8388608 -        ACTIVE    -         -
sd snap01-02     snapvset_2-01      ENABLED   8388608 0        -         -         -
pl snapvset_2-02 snapvset_2          ENABLED   8388608 -        SNAPDONE  -         -
sd snap02-03     snapvset_2-02      ENABLED   8388608 0        -         -         -
dc snapvset_2_dco snapvset_2          -         -         -        -         -         -
v  snapvset_2_dcl gen                ENABLED   1120    -        ACTIVE    -         -
pl snapvset_2_dcl-01 snapvset_2_dcl    ENABLED   1120    -        ACTIVE    -         -
sd snap01-04     snapvset_2_dcl-01 ENABLED   1120    0        -         -         -
pl snapvset_2_dcl-02 snapvset_2_dcl    DISABLED  1120    -        DCOSNP    -         -
sd snap02-04     snapvset_2_dcl-02 ENABLED   1120    0        -         -         -
```

This example shows the steps involved in creating a snapshot mirror for the volume `data_vol` belonging to the disk group `PRODDg`.

Prepare the volume `data_vol` for mirroring:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg prepare data_vol alloc=PRODDg01
```

Verify that `FastResync` is enabled:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%fastresync data_vol
on
```

Verify that a DCO and a DCO log are attached to the volume:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%hasdcolog data_vol
on
```

Create a snapshot mirror of data_vol:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg addmir data_vol alloc=PRODDg02
```

List the data plexes:

```
# vxprint -g flashdstdg16 -e"pl_v_name in\"data_vol\""
```

TY	NAME	ASSOC	KSTATE	LENGTH	PLOFFS	STATE	TUTIL0	PUTIL0
pl	datavol-01	datavol	ENABLED	4608000	-	ACTIVE	-	-
sd	c4t5d0-01	datavol-01	ENABLED	4608000	0	-	-	-
pl	datavol-02	datavol	ENABLED	4608000	-	SNAPDONE	-	-
sd	c4t6d2-01	datavol-02	ENABLED	4608000	0	-	-	-

Choose the plex that is in the `SNAPDONE` state. Use the `vxprint -g diskgroup` command to identify the plex that is in the `SNAPDONE` state.

Decide which data plex you want to use and set the `dbed_flashsnap` tag for it:

```
# vxedit -g PRODDg set putil2=dbed_flashsnap data_vol-02
```

Verify that the `dbed_flashsnap` tag has been set to the desired data plex, `data_vol-02`:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg -F%name -e"pl_v_name in \"data_vol\" \"
&& p2 in \"dbed_flashsnap\""
data_vol-02
```

To verify that the snapshot volume was created successfully, use the `vxprint -g disk_group` command as follows:

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg
```

v	data_vol	fsgen	ENABLED	4194304	-	ACTIVE	-	-
pl	data_vol-01	data_vol	ENABLED	4194304	-	ACTIVE	-	-
sd	PRODdg03-01	data_vol-01	ENABLED	4194304	0	-	-	-
pl	data_vol-02	data_vol	ENABLED	4194304	-	SNAPDONE	-	-
sd	PRODdg02-01	data_vol-02	ENABLED	4194304	0	-	-	-
dc	data_vol_dco	data_vol	-	-	-	-	-	-
v	data_vol_dcl	gen	ENABLED	560	-	ACTIVE	-	-
pl	data_vol_dcl-01	data_vol_dcl	ENABLED	560	-	ACTIVE	-	-
sd	PRODdg01-01	data_vol_dcl-01	ENABLED	5600	-	-	-	-
pl	data_vol_dcl-02	data_vol_dcl	DISABLED	560	-	DCOSNP	-	-
sd	PRODdg02-02	data_vol_dcl-02	ENABLED	5600	-	-	-	-

Identify that the specified plex is in the `SNAPDONE` state. In this example, it is `data_vol-02`.

The snapshot mirror is now ready to be used.

Upgrading existing volumes to use Veritas Volume Manager 5.0

You may have to upgrade a volume created using a version older than VxVM 5.0 so that it can take advantage of Database FlashSnap.

Note: The plexes of the DCO volume require persistent storage space on disk to be available. To make room for the DCO plexes, you may need to add extra disks to the disk group, or reconfigure existing volumes to free up space in the disk group. Another way to add disk space is to use the disk group move feature to bring in spare disks from a different disk group.

Existing snapshot volumes created by the `vxassist` command are not supported. A combination of snapshot volumes created by `vxassist` and `vxsnap` are not supported.

To upgrade an existing volume created with an earlier version of VxVM

- 1 Upgrade the disk group that contains the volume to a version 120 or higher before performing the remainder of this procedure. Use the following command to check the version of a disk group:

```
# vxdg list diskgroup
```

To upgrade a disk group to the latest version, use the following command:

```
# vxdg upgrade diskgroup
```

- 2 If the volume to be upgraded has a DRL plex or subdisk from an earlier version of VxVM, use the following command to remove this:

```
# vxassist [-g diskgroup] remove log volume [nlog=n]
```

Use the optional attribute `nlog=n` to specify the number, *n*, of logs to be removed. By default, the `vxassist` command removes one log.

- 3 For a volume that has one or more associated snapshot volumes, use the following command to reattach and resynchronize each snapshot:

```
# vxsnap [-g diskgroup] snapback snapvol
```

If persistent FastResync was enabled on the volume before the snapshot was taken, the data in the snapshot plexes is quickly resynchronized from the original volume. If persistent FastResync was not enabled, a full resynchronization is performed.

- 4 Use the following command to turn off persistent FastResync for the volume:

```
# vxvol [-g diskgroup] set fastresync=off volume
```

- 5 Use the following command to dissociate a DCO object from an earlier version of VxVM, DCO volume and snap objects from the volume:

```
# vxassist [-g diskgroup] remove log volume logtype=dco
```

6 Use the following command on the volume to upgrade it:

```
# vxsnap [-g diskgroup] prepare volume \  
alloc="disk_name1,disk_name2"
```

Provide two disk names to avoid overlapping the storage of the snapshot DCO plex with any other non-moving data or DCO plexes.

The `vxsnap prepare` command automatically enables persistent FastResync on the volume and on any snapshots that are generated from it. It also associates a DCO and DCO log volume with the volume to be snapshot.

7 To view the existing DCO plexes and see whether there are enough for the existing data plexes, enter:

```
# vxprint -g diskgroup
```

There needs to be one DCO plex for each existing data plex.

8 If there are not enough DCO plexes for the existing data plexes, create more DCO plexes:

```
# vxsnap [-g diskgroup] addmir dco_volume_name [alloc=disk_name]
```

where `dco_volume_name` is the name of the DCO volume you are creating.

9 If the plex is in a `SNAPDONE` state, convert it to an `ACTIVE` state:

```
# vxplex [-g diskgroup] convert state=ACTIVE data_plex
```

10 Convert the data plexes to a `SNAPDONE` state and associate a DCO plex with the data plex that will be used for snapshot operations:

```
# vxplex [-g diskgroup] -o dcoplex=dco_plex_name convert \  
state=SNAPDONE data_plex
```

where `dco_plex_name` is the name of the DCO plex you are creating.

In this example, the volume, `data_vol`, is upgraded to make use of VxVM 5.0 features.

Upgrade the disk group, `PRODDg`:

```
# vxdg upgrade PRODDg
```

Remove the DRL plexes or subdisks, belonging to an earlier version of VxVM, from the volume to be upgraded:

```
# vxassist -g PRODDg remove log data_vol logtype=drl
```

Reattach any snapshot volume back to the primary volume to be upgraded:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg snapback SNAP-data_vol
```

Turn off FastResync on the volume to be upgraded:

```
# vxvol -g PRODDg set fastresync=off data_vol
```

Disassociate and remove any older DCO object and DCO volumes:

```
# vxassist -g PRODDg remove log data_vol logtype=dco
```

Upgrade the volume by associating a new DCO object and DCO volume:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg prepare data_vol alloc="PRODDg01 PRODDg02"
```

View the existing DCO plexes and plex state.

In this example, there are enough DCO plexes for the data plexes. Also, no data plex is associated with a DCO plex.

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg
```

```
v data_vol fsgen ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE - -
pl data_vol-01 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg01-01 data_vol-01 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
pl data_vol-04 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - SNAPDONE - -
sd PRODDg02-03 data_vol-04 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
dc data_vol_dco data_vol ---- - -
v data_vol_dcl gen ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE - -
pl data_vol_dcl-01 data_vol_dcl ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg01-02 data_vol_dcl-01 ENABLED 560 0 - - -
pl data_vol_dcl-02 data_vol_dcl ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg02-02 data_vol_dcl-02 ENABLED 560 0 - - -
```

Convert the data plex state from SNAPDONE to ACTIVE:

```
# vxplex -g PRODDg convert state=ACTIVE data_vol-04
```

Associate the data plex with a new DCO plex and convert it back to a SNAPDONE state:

```
# vxplex -g PRODDg -o dcoplex=data_vol_dcl-02 convert \
state=SNAPDONE data_vol-04
```

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg
```

```

pl data_vol-03 - DISABLED 4194304 - - - -
sd PRODDg02-01 data_vol-03 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
v data_vol fsgen ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE - -
pl data_vol-01 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg01-01 data_vol-01 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
pl data_vol-04 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - SNAPDONE - -
sd PRODDg02-03 data_vol-04 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
dc data_vol_dco data_vol - - - -
v data_vol_dcl gen ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE - -
pl data_vol_dcl-01 data_vol_dcl ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg01-02 data_vol_dcl-01 ENABLED 560 0 - - -
pl data_vol_dcl-02 data_vol_dcl DISABLED 560 - DCOSNP - -
sd PRODDg02-02 data_vol_dcl-02 ENABLED 560 0 - - -

```

In this example, there are fewer DCO plexes than data plexes.

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg
```

```

pl data_vol-03 - DISABLED 4194304 - - - -
sd PRODDg02-01 data_vol-03 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
v data_vol fsgen ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE - -
pl data_vol-01 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg01-01 data_vol-01 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
pl data_vol-04 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg02-03 data_vol-04 ENABLED 4194304 0 - - -
dc data_vol_dco data_vol ---- - -
v data_vol_dcl gen ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE - -
pl data_vol_dcl-01 data_vol_dcl ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE - -
sd PRODDg01-02 data_vol_dcl-01 ENABLED 560 0 - - -

```

Add a DCO plex to the DCO volume using the `vxassist mirror` command:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg addmir data_vol_dcl alloc=PRODDg02
```

Associate the data plex with the new DCO plex and convert it to a `SNAPDONE` state:

```
# vxplex -g PRODDg -o dcomplex=data_vol_dcl-02 convert
state=SNAPDONE -V data_vol-04
```

```
# vxprint -g PRODDg
```

```

pl data_vol-03 - DISABLED 4194304 - - -
v data_vol fsgen ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE -
pl data_vol-01 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - ACTIVE -
sd PRODDg01-01 data_vol-01 ENABLED 4194304 0 - -
pl data_vol-04 data_vol ENABLED 4194304 - SNAPDONE -
sd PRODDg02-03 data_vol-04 ENABLED 4194304 0 - -
dc data_vol_dco data_vol - - -
v data_vol_dcl gen ENABLED 60 - ACTIVE -
pl data_vol_dcl-01 data_vol_dcl ENABLED 560 - ACTIVE -
sd PRODDg01-02 data_vol_dcl-01 ENABLED 560 0 - -
pl data_vol_dcl-02 data_vol_dcl DISABLED 560 - DCOSNP -
sd PRODDg02-02 data_vol_dcl-02 ENABLED 560 0 - -

```

Upgrading from Veritas Database Edition 3.5 for Oracle with Database FlashSnap

In this release of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, Database FlashSnap does not support snapshots of `vxdbavol` and `ORACLE_HOME`. If you have upgraded from Veritas Database Edition 3.5 for Oracle with Database FlashSnap, you must remove the volume plexes for `vxdbavol` and `ORACLE_HOME`, and revalidate the snapplan before using Database FlashSnap with this release of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle.

Note: This upgrade procedure does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC configurations.

To remove the volume plexes for `vxdbavol` and `ORACLE_HOME`

- 1 As root, snapback the snapshot plexes.

```
# vxsnap [-g diskgroup] snapback snapvol
```

- 2 Turn off FastResync.

```
# vxvol [-g diskgroup] set fastresync=off volume
```

- 3 Remove the DCO object.

```
# vxassist [-g diskgroup] remove log volume logtype=dco
```


- 4 Remove the volume plexes for `vxdbavol` and `ORACLE_HOME`.

```
# vxplex -g diskgroup -o rm dis plex_name
```

- 5 Log in as the DBA user and revalidate your snapplan.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID -H ORACLE_HOME \  
-f SNAPPLAN -o validate
```

Summary of database snapshot steps

You can use Database FlashSnap commands to create a snapshot of your entire database on the same host or on a different one. Three types of snapshots can be created: `online`, `offline`, or `instant`.

If the `SNAPSHOT_MODE` specified in the `snapplan` is set to `online`, `dbed_vmsnapfirst` puts the tablespaces to be snapshot into backup mode. After the snapshot is created, the tablespaces are taken out of backup mode, the log files are switched to ensure that the extra redo logs are archived, and a snapshot of the archive logs is created.

If the `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `offline`, the database must be shut down before the snapshot is created. Online redo logs and control files are required and will be used to ensure a full database recovery.

If the `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `instant`, tablespaces are not put into and out of backup mode. Online redo logs and control files are required and will be used to ensure a full database recovery.

Both online and offline snapshots provide a valid backup copy of the database. You can use the snapshot as a source for backing up the database or creating a clone database for decision-support purposes. Instant snapshots do not represent a valid backup copy for point-in-time recovery.

By using Database FlashSnap commands, you can create snapshots of all volumes on a database using the `snapplan`. Optionally, you can use the `VxVM` command (`vxsnap`) to create volume snapshots. However, unlike the Database FlashSnap commands, the `vxsnap` command does not automate disk group content reorganization functions.

For more information about the `vxsnap` command, see *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

Note: Make sure the volumes used by the database are configured properly before attempting to take a snapshot. This requires superuser (`root`) privileges.

Anytime you change the structure of the database (for example, by adding or deleting datafiles, converting `PFILE` to `SPFILE`, or converting `SPFILE` to `PFILE`), you must run `dbed_update`.

Database FlashSnap commands must be run by the Oracle database administrator instance owner.

To create a snapshot image of a database

- 1 Create a snapshot mirror of a volume or volume set.

See [“Creating a snapshot mirror of a volume or volume set used by the database”](#) on page 232.

- 2 Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command to create a snapplan template and check the volume configuration to ensure that it is valid for creating volume snapshots of the database.

The snapplan contains detailed database and volume configuration information that is needed for snapshot creation and resynchronization. You can modify the snapplan template with a text editor.

The `dbed_vmchecksnap` command can also be used to:

- List all snapplans associated with a specific `ORACLE_SID`
(`dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID -o list`).
- Remove the snapplan from the repository (`dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID -o remove -f SNAPPLAN`).
- Copy a snapplan from the repository to your local directory
(`dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID -o copy -f SNAPPLAN`).

- 3 Use the `dbed_vmsnap` command to create snapshot volumes for the database.

- 4 On the secondary host, use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command to create a clone database using the disk group deported from the primary host.

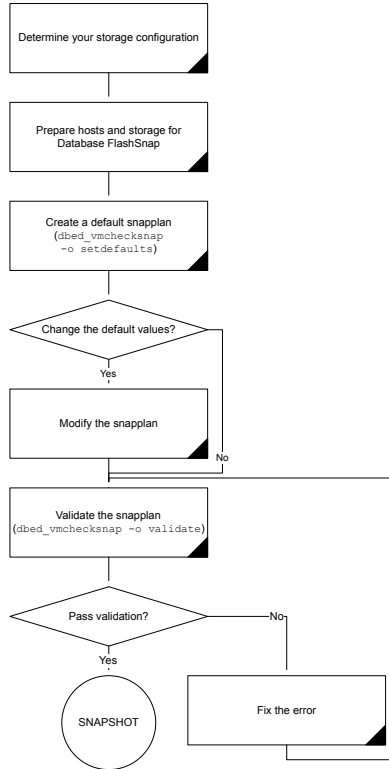
The `dbed_vmclonedb` command imports the disk group that was deported from the primary host, recovers the snapshot volumes, mounts the file systems, recovers the database, and brings the database online. If the secondary host is different, the database name can be same. You can use the `-o recoverdb` option to let `dbed_vmclonedb` perform an automatic database recovery, or you can use the `-o mountdb` option to perform your own point-in-time recovery and bring up the database manually. For a point-in-time recovery, the snapshot mode must be `online`.

You can also create a clone on the primary host. Your `snapplan` settings specify whether a clone should be created on the primary or secondary host.

- 5 You can now use the clone database to perform database backup and other off-host processing work.
- 6 The clone database can be used to reverse resynchronize the original volume from the data in the snapshot, or can be discarded by rejoining the snapshot volumes with the original volumes (that is, by resynchronizing the snapshot volumes) for future use.

[Figure 13-3](#) depicts the sequence of steps leading up to taking a snapshot using Database FlashSnap.

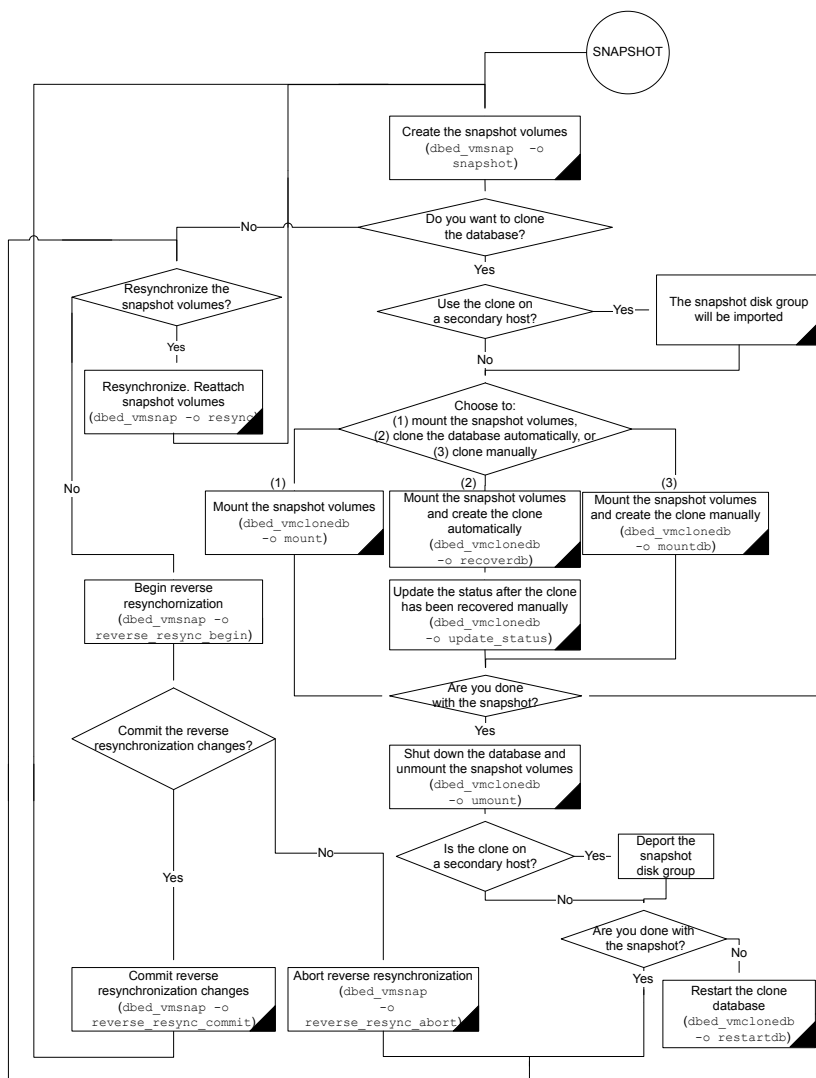
Figure 13-3 Prerequisites for creating a snapshot of your database



There are many actions you can take after creating a snapshot of your database using Database FlashSnap. You can create a clone of the database for backup and off-host processing purposes. You can resynchronize the snapshot volumes with the primary database. In the event of primary database failure, you can recover it by reverse resynchronizing the snapshot volumes.

Figure 13-4 shows the actions you can perform after creating a snapshot of your database using Database FlashSnap.

Figure 13-4 Database FlashSnap process



Creating a snapplan (dbed_vmchecksnap)

The `dbed_vmchecksnap` command creates a snapplan that `dbed_vmsnap` uses to create a snapshot of an Oracle database. The snapplan specifies snapshot scenarios (such as `online`, `offline`, or `instant`).

You can name a snapplan file whatever you choose. Each entry in the snapplan file is a line in `parameter=argument` format.

Table 13-1 shows which parameters are set when using `dbed_vmchecksnap` to create or validate a snapplan.

Table 13-1 Parameter values for `dbed_vmchecksnap`

Parameter	Value
SNAPSHOT_VERSION	Specifies the snapshot version for this major release of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle.
PRIMARY_HOST	The name of the host where the primary database resides.
SECONDARY_HOST	The name of the host where the database will be imported.
PRIMARY_DG	In case of single disk group: The name of the VxVM disk group used by the primary database. In case of multiple disk groups: Colon separated list of names of the VxVM disk groups used by the primary database.
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX	The prefix to be attached to the primary disk groups to create corresponding snapshot disk groups. Snapshot disk groups will take the name using a combination of <code>SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX</code> and the corresponding primary disk group name. It's default value will be <code>SNAP_</code>
ORACLE_SID	The name of the Oracle database. By default, the name of the Oracle database is included in the snapplan.
ARCHIVELOG_DEST	The full path of the archive logs. There are several archive log destinations that can be used for database recovery if you are multiplexing the archive logs. You must specify which archive log destination to use. It is recommended that you have the archive log destination on a separate volume if <code>SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG</code> is yes.

Table 13-1 Parameter values for dbed_vmchecksnap (*continued*)

Parameter	Value
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG	<p>yes or no</p> <p>Specifies whether to create a snapshot of the archive log volumes. Specify <i>yes</i> to split the archive log volume mirrors and deport them to the secondary host. When using the Oracle remote archive log destination feature to send the archive logs to the secondary host, you can specify <i>no</i> to save some space.</p> <p>Because the archive logs may not always be delivered to the secondary host reliably, it is recommended that you specify <i>yes</i>.</p>
SNAPSHOT_MODE	<p>online or offline or instant</p> <p>Specifies whether the database snapshot should be online, offline, or instant.</p> <p>If the snapshot is created while the database is online, the <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> command will put the tablespaces into backup mode. After <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> finishes creating the snapshot, it will take the tablespaces out of backup mode, switch the log files to ensure that the extra redo logs are archived, and create a snapshot of the archived logs.</p> <p>If the database is offline, it is not necessary to put the tablespaces into backup mode. The database must be shut down before creating an offline snapshot.</p> <p>If the database snapshot is instant, <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> will skip putting the tablespace into backup mode.</p> <p>Note: If <code>SNAPSHOT_MODE</code> is set to <i>offline</i> or <i>instant</i>, a two-host configuration is required and the <code>-r relocate_path</code> option is not allowed.</p>
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR	<p>The default value is <i>database</i> and cannot be changed.</p> <p>Specifies the database object for which you want to create a snapshot.</p>

Table 13-1 Parameter values for dbed_vmchecksnap (*continued*)

Parameter	Value
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG	Specifies the snapshot plex tag. Use this variable to specify a tag for the plexes to be snapshot. The maximum length of the <code>plex_tag</code> is 15 characters. The default plex tag is <code>dbed_flashsnap</code> .
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX	Specifies the snapshot volume prefix. Use this variable to specify a prefix for the snapshot volumes split from the primary disk group. A volume name cannot be more than 32 characters. You should consider the length of the volume name when assigning the prefix.
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC	<code>yes</code> or <code>no</code> By default, reverse resynchronization is off (set equal to <code>no</code>). If it is set to <code>yes</code> , data from the snapshot volume can be used to update the primary volume.
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR	Specifies the number of plexes to be snapshot. The default value is 1.

When you first run `dbed_vmchecksnap`, use the `-o setdefaults` option to create a snapplan using default values for variables. You may then edit the file manually to set the variables for different snapshot scenarios.

Before creating a snapplan, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- Prerequisites
- Storage must be configured properly. See [“Hosts and storage for Database FlashSnap”](#) on page 229.
 - You must be the Oracle database administrator.
 - The disk group must be version 110 or later. For more information on disk group versions, see the `vxdg(1M)` manual page.
 - Be sure that a DCO and DCO volume are associated with the volume for which you are creating the snapshot.
 - Snapshot plexes and their associated DCO logs should be on different disks than the original plexes, and should be configured correctly for creating snapshots by the system administrator.
 - Persistent FastResync must be enabled on the existing database volumes and disks must be assigned for the snapshot volumes.
 - The database must be running in archive log mode. Archive log mode is set in the Oracle initialization parameter file (`init.ora`).
 - The Oracle database must have at least one mandatory archive destination. See [“Establishing a mandatory archive destination”](#) on page 262.
 - `ORACLE_HOME` cannot reside on disk which will be used for snapshot.
- Usage notes
- The snapplan can be created on the master or slave node.
 - After creating the snapplan using the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command, you can use a text editor to review and update the file, if necessary.
 - It is recommended that you create a local working directory to store your snapplans in.
 - See the `dbed_vmchecksnap(1M)` online manual page for more information.
 - If the `SNAPSHOT_MODE` for the database is set to `online`, the primary and secondary hosts can be the same. If the `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `offline` or `instant`, the primary and secondary hosts must be different.

To create a snapplan

- 1 Change directories to the working directory you want to store your snapplan in.

```
$ cd /working_directory
```

- 2 Create a snapplan with default values using the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID \  
-H ORACLE_HOME -f SNAPPLAN -o setdefaults -t host_name \  
[-p PLEX_TAG]
```

- 3 Open the snapplan file in a text editor and modify it as needed.

In this example, a snapplan, `snap1`, is created for a snapshot image in a single-host configuration and default values are set. The host is named `host1` and the working directory is `/export/snap_dir`.

```
$ cd /export/snap_dir
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i \  
-f snap1 -o setdefaults -t host1
```

```
Snapplan snap1 for PROD.
```

```
=====
```

```
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0  
PRIMARY_HOST=host1  
SECONDARY_HOST=host1  
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDg1:PRODDg2  
ORACLE_SID=PROD  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes  
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database  
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap  
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_  
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no  
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

In this example, a snapplan, `snap2`, is created for a snapshot image in a two-host configuration, and default values are set. The primary host is `host1`, the secondary host is `host2`, and the working directory is `/export/snap_dir`.

```
$ cd /export/snap_dir
```

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i \  
-f snap2 -o setdefaults -t host2
```

Snapplan snap2 for PROD.

```
=====
```

```
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0  
PRIMARY_HOST=host1  
SECONDARY_HOST=host2  
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDg1:PRODDg2  
ORACLE_SID=PROD  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/mytest/arch  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes  
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database  
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap  
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_  
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no  
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

By default, a snapplan's SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG value is set as dbed_flashsnap. You can use the -p option to assign a different tag name. Use the -p option when creating the snapplan with the setdefaults option.

In the following example, the -p option is used with setdefaults to assign my_tag as the SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG value.

```
$ dbed_vmchecksnap -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME -o setdefaults \  
-p my_tag -f snap1 -t host2
```

Snapplan snap1 for PROD

```
=====
```

```
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0  
PRIMARY_HOST=host1  
SECONDARY_HOST=host2  
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDg1:PRODDg2  
ORACLE_SID=PROD  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/arch_data  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes  
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database  
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=my_tag  
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_  
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
```

```
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no  
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

Creating multi-mirror snapshots

To make Database Snapshots highly available, the snapped snapshot volume should contain more than one mirror. This makes the snapshot volumes available even if one of the mirrors gets disabled. Snapshot volumes can be mounted and the entire database snapshot is usable even if one of the mirror gets disabled. The multi-mirror snapshots are enabled with the `SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=n` keyword in the snapplan.

Note: Multi-mirror snapshots require no changes to the Command Line usage or arguments for the Flashsnap tools.

Before taking the snapshot, make sure all tagged snapshot mirrors are in the `SNAPDONE` state.

To create a multi-mirror snapshot

- 1 Add the second mirror and DCO log. When allocating storage for the second mirror and DCO logs, make sure the snap volumes are splittable. If snap volumes are not splittable, `dbed_vmchecksnap` fails with appropriate errors.

```
# vxsnap -g dg_a addmir dg_a_voll alloc=dg_a03
```

- 2 Tag the newly added mirror with the same tag as that of the first mirror. Assume that the volume has `fastresync = on`, has `dcolog = on`, and already has one `SNAPDONE` mirror and is tagged with .

```
# vxedit -g dg_a set putil2=dbed_flashsnap dg_a_voll-03
```

3 Add the `SNAPSHOT_MIRROR` keyword to the snapplan. Here is a sample snapplan.

In case of single disk group:

```
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=host1
SECONDARY_HOST=host1
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDg1
ORACLE_SID=PROD
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=2
```

In case of multiple disk groups:

```
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=host1
SECONDARY_HOST=host1
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDg1:PRODDg2
ORACLE_SID=PROD
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=2
```

Establishing a mandatory archive destination

When cloning a database using Database FlashSnap, the Oracle database must have at least one mandatory archive destination.

If no mandatory archive destination is set, `dbed_vmchecksnap` results in this error message:

```
SFORA dbed_vmchecksnap ERROR V-81-5677 Could not find a mandatory,  
primary and valid archive destination for database PROD.
```

Please review the LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_n parameters and check v\$archive_dest.

This example shows how to establish a mandatory archive destination using SQL*Plus:

```
alter system set log_archive_dest_1 = \  
'LOCATION=/ora_mnt/oracle/oradata/PROD/archivelogs MANDATORY \  
[REOPEN]' [scope=both];
```

For more information about Oracle parameters for archiving redo logs, see your Oracle documentation.

Validating a snapplan (dbed_vmchecksnap)

After creating a snapplan, the next steps are to validate the snapplan parameters and check whether the snapshot volumes have been configured correctly for creating snapshots. If validation is successful, the snapplan is copied to the repository. The snapplan is validated using the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command with the `-o validate` option.

In Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC configurations, `dbed_vmchecksnap` with the `-o validate` option can be executed on the VxVM CVM master or slave node.

Consider the following prerequisites and notes before validating a snapplan:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | ■ The database must be up and running while executing the <code>dbed_vmchecksnap</code> command. |
| Usage notes | ■ The <code>dbed_vmchecksnap</code> command must be run as the Oracle database administrator.
■ The default behavior is to force validation. Use the <code>-n</code> option if you want to skip validation.
■ After validating the snapplan, you have the option of modifying the snapplan file to meet your storage configuration requirements.
■ If a snapplan is updated or modified, you must re-validate it. It is recommended that snapplans are revalidated when changes are made in the database disk group.
■ The <code>dbed_vmchecksnap</code> command can be used on the primary or secondary host. RAC-specific
■ See the <code>dbed_vmchecksnap(1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

To validate a snapplan

- 1 Change directories to the working directory your snapplan is stored in:

```
$ cd /working_directory
```

- 2 Validate the snapplan using the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID \  
-H ORACLE_HOME -f SNAPPLAN -o validate
```

In an HA environment, you must modify the default snapplan, use the virtual host name defined for the resource group for the PRIMARY_HOST and/or SECONDARY_HOST, and run validation. In an Oracle RAC configuration both primary and secondary hosts need to be set to the host name of the CVM master node.

In the following example, a snapplan, `snap1`, is validated for a snapshot image in a single-host or Oracle RAC cluster configuration. The primary host is `host1` and the working directory is `/export/snap_dir`.

```
$ cd /export/snap_dir  
  
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i \  
-f snap1 -o validate
```

The output produced in case of a single disk group environment:

```
PRIMARY_HOST is host1  
  
SECONDARY_HOST is host1  
  
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODdg is 140.  
  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODdg  
  
SNAPSHOT_MODE is online  
  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST is /prod_ar  
  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR is database  
  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG is yes  
  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar is mount on /dev/vx/dsk/PRODdg/prod_ar.  
  
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot
```



```
Volume prodvol1 on PRODDg is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for prodvol1 is on PRODDg1.  
  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prodvol2 is on PRODDg2.  
  
Volume prodvol2 on PRODDg is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for prodvol2 is on PRODDg1.  
  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prodvol2 is on PRODDg2.  
  
SNAP_PRODDg for snapshot will include: PRODDg2  
  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC is NO  
  
The snapplan snap1 has been created.
```

The output produced in case of multiple disk group environment:

```
PRIMARY_HOST is host1  
  
SECONDARY_HOST is host1  
  
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg1 is 140.  
  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODDg1  
  
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg2 is 140.  
  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODDg2  
  
SNAPSHOT_MODE is online  
  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST is /archvol  
  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR is database  
  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG is yes  
  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/archvol is mount on /dev/vx/dsk/archdg/archvol.  
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot.  
  
Volume prodvol1 on PRODDg1 is ready for snapshot.  
  
Original plex and DCO log for prodvol1 is on PRODDisk11.  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prodvol1 is on PRODDisk12.  
SNAP_PRODDg1 for snapshot will include: PRODDisk11 PRODDisk12  
  
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot.
```

```
Volume prodvol2 on PRODDg2 is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for prodvol2 is on PRODDisk21.  
  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prodvol2 is on PRODDisk22.  
SNAP_PRODdg2 for snapshot will include: PRODDisk21 PRODDisk22.  
  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC is no  
  
The snapplan snap1 has been created
```

In the following example, a snapplan, snap2, is validated for a snapshot image in a two-host configuration. The primary host is host1, the secondary host is host2, and the working directory is /export/snap_dir. This example does not apply to Oracle RAC configurations.

```
$ cd /export/snap_dir  
  
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H \  
/oracle/product/9i -f snap2 -o validate
```

The output produced in case of a single disk group environment:

```
PRIMARY_HOST is host1  
SECONDARY_HOST is host2  
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg is 140.  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODdg  
SNAPSHOT_MODE is online  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST is /mytest/arch  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR is database  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/mytest/arch is mount on /dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/arch.  
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot.  
Volume prodvol1 on PRODDg is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for arch is on PRODDisk1.  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for arch is on PRODDisk2.  
Volume prodvol2 on PRODDg is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDisk1.  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDisk2.  
SNAP_PRODdg for snapshot will include: PRODDg2  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC is NO  
The snapplan snap2 has been created.
```

The output produced in case of multiple disk group environment:

```
PRIMARY_HOST is host1  
SECONDARY_HOST is host2
```

```
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg1 is 140.  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODDg1  
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg2 is 140.  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODDg2  
SNAPSHOT_MODE is online  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST is /archvol  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR is database  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG is yes  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/archvol is mount on /dev/vx/dsk/archdg/archvol.  
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot.  
Volume prodvol1 on PRODDg1 is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for prodvol1 is on PRODDisk11.  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prodvol1 is on PRODDisk12.  
SNAP_PRODDg1 for snapshot will include: PRODDisk11 PRODDisk12  
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot.  
Volume prodvol2 on PRODDg2 is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for prodvol2 is on PRODDisk21.  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prodvol2 is on PRODDisk22.  
SNAP_PRODDg2 for snapshot will include: PRODDisk21 PRODDisk22  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC is no  
The snapplan snap1 has been created.
```

Displaying, copying, and removing a snapplan (dbed_vmchecksnap)

Consider these notes before listing all snapplans for a specific Oracle database, displaying a snapplan file, or copying and removing snapplans.

- Usage notes
- If the local snapplan is updated or modified, you must re-validate it.
 - If the database schema or disk group is modified, you must revalidate it after running `dbed_update`.

To list all available snapplans for a specific Oracle database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID -o list
```

In the following example, all available snapplans are listed for the database PROD.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -o list  
The following snapplan(s) are available for PROD:
```

SNAP_PLAN	SNAP_STATUS	DB_STATUS	SNAP_READY
snap1	init_full	-	yes
snap2	init_full	-	yes

Note: The command output displays all available snapplans, their snapshot status (SNAP_STATUS), database status (DB_STATUS), and whether a snapshot may be taken (SNAP_READY).

See [“Database FlashSnap snapshot status and database status”](#) on page 397.

To display detailed information for a snapplan

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID \  
-f SNAPPLAN -o list
```

In the following example, the snapplan `snap1` is displayed.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S FLAS11r1 -f snap1 -o list  
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0  
PRIMARY_HOST=slia19  
SECONDARY_HOST=slia19  
ORACLE_SID=FLAS11r1  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes  
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database  
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap  
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_  
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=yes  
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1  
  
STORAGE_INFO  
c7t3d1  
c7t3d2  
c7t3d5  
c7t3d7  
c7t4d2  
c7t4d5  
SNAP_PLEX=datavol-02 datavol_dcl-02 datavol1-02 datavol1_dcl-02  
datavol2-02 datavol2_dcl-02 archvol-02 archvol_dcl-02 archvol1-02  
archvol1_dcl-02 archvol2-02 archvol2_dcl-02  
  
STATUS_INFO  
SNAP_STATUS=init_full
```

To copy a snapplan from the repository to your current directory

- ◆ If you want to create a snapplan similar to an existing snapplan, you can simply create a copy of the existing snapplan and modify it. To copy a snapplan from the repository to your current directory, the snapplan must not already be present in the current directory.

Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID \  
-f SNAPPLAN -o copy
```

This example shows the snapplan, `snap1`, being copied from the repository to the current directory.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o copy  
Copying 'snap1' to '/export/snap_dir'
```

To remove a snapplan from the repository

- ◆ A snapplan can be removed from a local directory or the repository if the snapplan is no longer needed.

Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN \  
-o remove
```

This example shows the snapplan, `snap1`, being removed from the repository.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o remove  
The snapplan snap1 has been removed.
```

Creating a snapshot (dbed_vmsnap)

The `dbed_vmsnap` command creates a snapshot of an Oracle database by splitting the mirror volumes used by the database into a snapshot database. In standalone (that is, non-RAC) configurations, you can use the snapshot image on either the same host as the database or on a secondary host provided storage is shared by the two hosts.

The snapshot image created by `dbed_vmsnap` is a frozen image of an Oracle datafiles. `dbed_vmsnap` ensures that a backup control file is created when the snapshot database is created, which allows for complete data recovery, if needed.

Before creating a snapshot, make the sure the following conditions are met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged in as the Oracle database administrator.
 - You must create and validate a snapplan using `dbed_vmchecksnap` before you can create a snapshot image with `dbed_vmsnap`.
- Usage notes
- The `dbed_vmsnap` command can only be used on the primary host, or if in an Oracle RAC configuration, on the CVM master or slave node.
 - Do not share volumes between Oracle database files and other software.
 - When creating a snapshot volume, create the snapshot on a separate controller and on separate disks from the primary volume.
 - Make sure your archive log destination is separate from your Oracle database volumes.
 - Do not place any datafiles, including control files, in the `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs` directory.
 - Resynchronization speed varies based on the amount of data changed in both the primary and secondary volumes when the mirror is broken off.
 - See the `dbed_vmsnap(1M)` manual page for more information.

To create a snapshot

- 1 If `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `offline` in the snapplan, shut down the database. Skip this step if in a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment, because only the `online` mode is supported.
- 2 Create the snapshot image using the `dbed_vmsnap` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN \  
-o snapshot [-F]
```

Note: To force snapshot creation, use the `-F` option. The `-F` option can be used after a snapshot operation has failed and the problem was fixed without using Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle commands. (That is, the volumes were synchronized without using Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle commands.) In this situation, the status of the snapplan will appear as unavailable for creating a snapshot. The `-F` option ignores the unavailable status, checks for the availability of volumes, and creates the snapshot after the volumes pass the availability check.

After the snapshot is created, `dbed_vmsnap` returns values you will need to run `dbed_vmclonedb`. These values include the snapshot disk group, the snapplan name, and the primary database server name (*server_name*). Make a note of these values so you have them when running `dbed_vmclonedb`. You can also use the command `dbed_vmchecksnap -f snapplan -o list` to access the information regarding the snapshot disk group.

The snapshot volumes now represent a consistent backup copy of the database. You can back up the database by copying the snapshot volumes to tape or other backup media.

See [“Backing up the database from snapshot volumes \(dbed_vmclonedb\)”](#) on page 274.

You can also create another Oracle database for decision-support purposes.

See [“Cloning a database \(dbed_vmclonedb\)”](#) on page 278.

In this example, a snapshot image of the database, `PROD`, is created for a single-host configuration (or for the RAC cluster, if in an Oracle RAC configuration). In this case, the `SECONDARY_HOST` parameter is set the same as the `PRIMARY_HOST` parameter in the snapplan.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o snapshot
```

In case of single disk group environment:

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2009-05-31 23:57:05
The database is running in archivelog mode.
A snapshot of ORACLE_SID FLAS10r2 is in DG SNAP_flashdg15.
Snapplan ofsnap4 is used for the snapshot.
Oracle Database server is dbhppa15.
.
```

If `-r <relocate_path>` is used in `dbed_vmclonedb`, make sure `relocate_path` is created and owned by Oracle DBA. Otherwise, the following mount points need to be created and owned by Oracle DBA:


```
/snap_arch10r2.  
/snap_data10r2.
```

dbed_vmsnap ended at 2009-05-31 23:59:26

In case of multiple disk group environment:

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2009-05-13 08:57:09  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
A snapshot of ORACLE_SID FLAS10r2 is in DG SNAP_flashdg13.  
Snapplan ssnap2 is used for the snapshot.  
Oracle Database server is slpas13.  
A snapshot of ORACLE_SID FLAS10r2 is in DG SNAP_flashdg13_1.  
Snapplan ssnap2 is used for the snapshot.  
Oracle Database server is slpas13.
```

If `-r relocate_path` is used in `dbed_vmclonedb`,
make sure `relocate_path` is created and owned by
Oracle DBA. Otherwise, the following mount points
need to be created and owned by Oracle DBA:

```
/snap_arch10r2.  
/snap_data10r2.  
/snap_data10r2_1.
```

dbed_vmsnap ended at 2009-05-13 08:58:17

In this example, a snapshot image of the primary database, `PROD`, is created for a two-host configuration. In this case, the `SECONDARY_HOST` parameter specifies a different host name than the `PRIMARY_HOST` parameter in the `snapplan`.

Note: This example does not apply to an Oracle RAC configuration.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S PROD -f snap2 -o snapshot
```

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2004-04-09 23:01:10  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
A snapshot of ORACLE_SID PROD is in DG SNAP_PRODDg.  
Snapplan snap2 is used for the snapshot.  
VxDBA repository volume is SNAP_arch.
```

```
If -r <relocate_path> is used in dbed_vmclonedb,  
make sure <relocate_path> is created and owned by  
Oracle DBA. Otherwise, the following mount points  
need to be created and owned by Oracle DBA:
```

```
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2004-04-09 23:02:58
```

Backing up the database from snapshot volumes (dbed_vmclonedb)

Snapshots are most commonly used as a source for backing up a database. The advantage of using snapshot volumes is that the backup will not contest the I/O bandwidth of the physical devices. Making the snapshot volumes available on a secondary host will eliminate the extra loads put on processors and I/O adapters by the backup process on the primary host.

A clone database can also serve as a valid backup of the primary database. You can back up the primary database to tape using snapshot volumes.

[Figure 13-5](#) shows a typical configuration when snapshot volumes are located on the primary host.

Figure 13-5 Example system configuration for database backup on the primary host

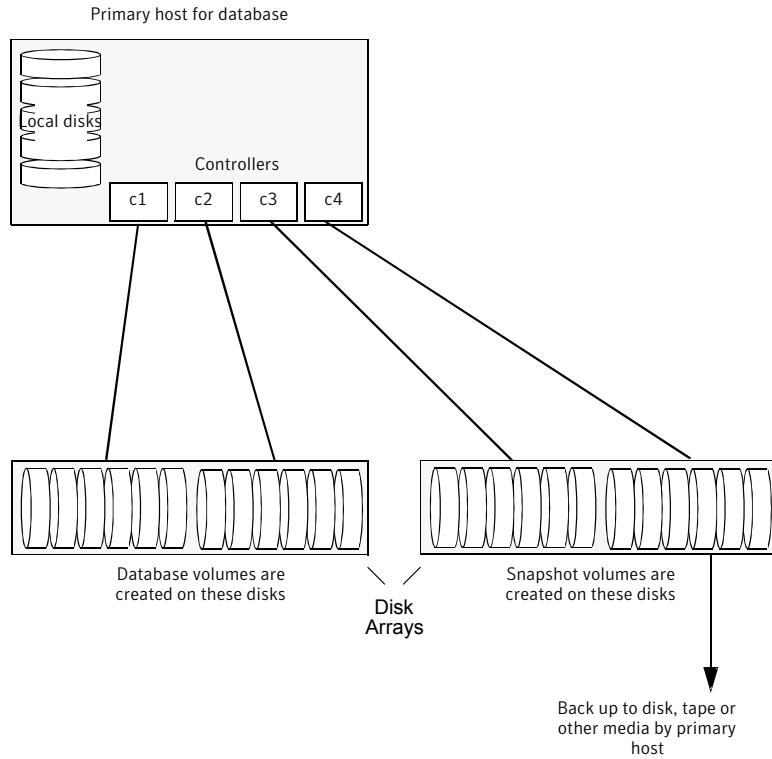
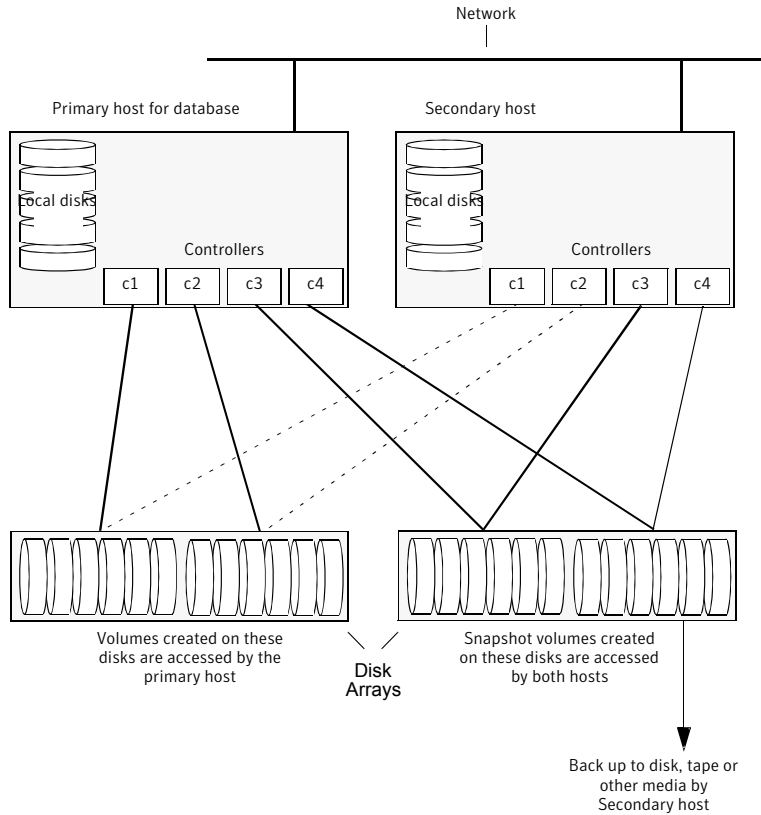


Figure 13-6 shows a typical configuration when snapshot volumes are used on a secondary host.

Figure 13-6 Example system configuration for database backup on a secondary host



Prerequisites

- You must be logged in as the Oracle database administrator to use `dbed_vmclonedb` command.
- Before you can use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command, you must create and validate a snapplan, and create a snapshot. See “[Summary of database snapshot steps](#)” on page 249. See “[Validating a snapplan \(dbed_vmchecksnap\)](#)” on page 263. See “[Creating a snapshot \(dbed_vmsnap\)](#)” on page 270.
- The volume snapshot must contain the entire database.
- Before you can use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command with the `-r relocate_path` option (which specifies the initial mount point for the snapshot image), the system administrator must create the mount point and then change the owner to the Oracle database administrator.

- Usage notes
- The `dbed_vmclonedb` command can be used on the secondary host.
 - In a single-host configuration, the primary and secondary hosts are the same.
 - In a single-host configuration, `-r relocate_path` is required.
 - If `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `offline` or `instant`, a two-host configuration is required and `-r relocate_path` is not allowed.
 - See the `dbed_vmclonedb(1M)` manual page for more information.

Mounting the snapshot volumes and backing up

Before using the snapshot volumes to do a backup, you must first mount them.

To mount the snapshot volumes

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S ORACLE_SID \
-o mount|mountdb|recoverdb|restartdb, new_sid=new_sid \
server_name=svr_name -f SNAPPLAN \
[-H ORACLE_HOME] \ [ -p pfile_modification_file ] [-r relocate_path]
```

You can now back up an individual file or a group of files under a directory onto the backup media.

In this example, snapshot volumes are mounted.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \
-o mount,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=kagu -f snap1 -r /clone/single

dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-02 15:35:41
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-02 15:35:50
```

To mount a Storage Checkpoint carried over from the snapshot volumes to a secondary host

- 1 On the secondary host, list the Storage Checkpoints carried over from the primary database using:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptdisplay -S ORACLE_SID -n
```

- 2 You can mount one of the listed Storage Checkpoints using:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptmount -S ORACLE_SID -c CKPT_NAME \
-m MOUNT_POINT
```

Consider the following limitations when working with Storage Checkpoints carried over from the primary database:

- Any mounted Storage Checkpoints must be unmounted, before running the following command::

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -o umount,new_sid=new_sid \  
server_name=svr_name -f SNAPPLAN
```

- It is only possible to mount a Storage Checkpoint carried over with the snapshot volumes in a two-host configuration if the snapshot volumes were mounted with the `dbed_vmclonedb` command with the `-o mount` option without the use of `-r relocate_path..`
- Storage Checkpoints carried over with the snapshot volumes can be mounted before a clone database is created using `dbed_vmclonedb` with the `-o mount` option. After a clone database is created using `dbed_vmclonedb` with the `-o recoverdb` option, however, Storage Checkpoints are no longer present.

To back up the database using the snapshot

- ◆ Copy the snapshot volumes to tape or other appropriate backup media.

If you use the Oracle online backup method, you must also back up all the archived log files in order to do a complete restore and recovery of the database.

Restoring from backup

Backup copies are used to restore volumes lost due to disk failure, or data destroyed due to human error. If a volume's data is corrupted and you know that you need to restore it from backup, you can use Database FlashSnap's reverse resynchronization function to restore the database.

See [“Resynchronizing your database to the snapshot”](#) on page 287.

Cloning a database (dbed_vmclonedb)

Veritas Storage Foundation lets you create a clone database using snapshot volumes. You can use snapshots of a primary database to create a clone of the database at a given point in time. You can then implement decision-support analysis and report generation operations that take their data from the database clone rather than from the primary database to avoid introducing additional burdens on the production database.

A clone database can also serve as a valid back up of the primary database.

See “[Backing up the database from snapshot volumes \(dbed_vmclonedb\)](#)” on page 274.

You can also back up the primary database to tape using snapshot volumes.

The resynchronization functionality of Database FlashSnap allows you to quickly refresh the clone database with up-to-date information from the primary database. Reducing the time taken to update decision-support data also lets you generate analysis reports more frequently.

Using Database FlashSnap to clone a database

In a single-host configuration, the `dbed_vmclonedb` command creates a clone database on the same host. The command can also be used to shut down the clone database and unmount its file systems. When creating or unmounting the clone database in a single-host configuration, `-r relocate_path` is required so that the clone database's file systems use different mount points than those used by the primary database.

In an Oracle RAC cluster configuration, `dbed_vmclonedb` can create a clone database on the CVM master or slave node. Also in Oracle RAC, you must use `-r relocate_path` when creating or unmounting the clone database.

When used in a two-host configuration, the `dbed_vmclonedb` command imports the snapshot disk group/disk groups, mounts the file systems on the snapshot volumes, and starts a clone database. It can also reverse the process by shutting down the clone database, unmounting the file systems, and deporting the snapshot disk groups. You must use `-o server_name=svr_name` when cloning a database. This also applies to an Oracle RAC configuration.

Warning: When creating a clone database, all Storage Checkpoints in the original database are discarded.

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged in as the Oracle database administrator.
 - Before you can use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command, review the procedure for taking a snapshot of a database, especially the steps required to validate a snapplan and to create the snapshot.
See [“Summary of database snapshot steps”](#) on page 249.
See [“Validating a snapplan \(dbed_vmchecksnap\)”](#) on page 263.
See [“Creating a snapshot \(dbed_vmsnap\)”](#) on page 270.
 - The volume snapshot must contain the entire database.
 - The system administrator must provide the database administrator with access to the necessary volumes and mount points.
 - Before you can use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command with the `-r relocate_path` option (which specifies the initial mount point for the snapshot image), the system administrator must create the mount point and then change the owner to the Oracle database administrator.
 - If `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `offline` or `instant`, a two-host configuration is required and `-r relocate_path` is not allowed.
 - The Oracle database must have at least one mandatory archive destination.
See [“Establishing a mandatory archive destination”](#) on page 262.
- Usage notes
- The `dbed_vmclonedb` command can be used on the secondary host.
 - In a single-host and Oracle RAC configuration, `-r relocate_path` is required. This command is also needed if the name of the clone database is different than the primary database.
 - The `server_name=svr_name` option is required. The `svr_name` value specifies the server on which the primary database resides.
 - The initialization parameters for the clone database are copied from the primary database. This means that the clone database takes up the same memory and machine resources as the primary database. If you want to reduce the memory requirements for the clone database, shut down the clone database and then start it up again using a different `init.ora` file that has reduced memory requirements. If the host where `dbed_vmclonedb` is run has little available memory, you may not be able to start up the clone database and the cloning operation may fail.
 - See the `dbed_vmclonedb(1M)` manual page for more information.

To mount a database and recover it manually**1 Start and mount the clone database to allow manual database recovery:**

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S ORACLE_SID \
-o mountdb,new_sid=new_sid,server_name=svr_name -f SNAPPLAN \
[-H ORACLE_HOME] [-r relocate_path]
```

2 Recover the database manually.**3 Update the snapshot status information for the clone database in the SFDB repository:**

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb \
-o update_status,new_sid=new_sid,server_name=svr_name \
-f SNAPPLAN [-r relocate_path]
```

In this example, file systems are mounted without bringing up the clone database. The clone database must be manually created and recovered before it can be used. This example is for a clone created on the same host as the primary database.

```
$ dbed_vmclonedb -S FLAS11r1 -o mountdb \
new_sid=test5cln,server_name=slia19 -f snap1 -r /tmp/test5cln
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-04-07 18:16:01
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in inittest5cln.ora.
All redo-log files found.
Altering instance_name parameter in inittest5cln.ora.
Altering instance_number parameter in inittest5cln.ora.
Altering thread parameter in inittest5cln.ora.
Database TEST5CLN (SID=test5cln) is in recovery mode.
```

```
If the database test5cln is recovered manually, you must run
dbed_vmclonedb -o update_status to change the snapshot status.
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-04-07 18:17:58
```

The database is recovered manually using `dbinitdb`.

The database status (`database_recovered`) needs to be updated for a clone database on the primary host after manual recovery has been completed.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb \
-o update_status,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap1 \
-r /clone
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-02 15:19:16
The snapshot status has been updated.
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-02 15:19:42
```

In this example, file systems are mounted without recovering the clone database. The clone database must be manually recovered before it can be used. This example is for a clone created on a secondary host.

```
$ dbed_vmclonedb -S FLAS11r1 -o mountdb \
new_sid=test5cln,server_name=slas19 -f snap2 -r /tmp/test5cln
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-04-07 18:16:01
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in inittest5cln.ora.
All redo-log files found.
Altering instance_name parameter in inittest5cln.ora.
Altering instance_number parameter in inittest5cln.ora.
Altering thread parameter in inittest5cln.ora.
Database TEST5CLN (SID=test5cln) is in recovery mode.
```

If the database test5cln is recovered manually, you must run dbed_vmclonedb -o update_status to change the snapshot status.

```
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-04-07 18:17:58
```

The database is recovered manually.

The snapshot status (database_recovered) is updated for a clone database on a secondary host after manual recovery has been completed.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb \
-o update_status,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap2
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-09 23:34:01
The snapshot status has been updated.
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-09 23:34:35
```

To clone the database automatically

- ◆ Use the dbed_vmclonedb command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S ORACLE_SID \
-o recoverdb,new_sid=new_sid,server_name=svr_name -f SNAPPLAN \
[-H ORACLE_HOME] [-r relocate_path]
```

Where:

- **ORACLE_SID** is the name of the Oracle database used to create the snapshot.

- *new_sid* specifies the *ORACLE_SID* for the clone database.
- *server_name=svr_name* specifies the server on which the primary database resides.
- *SNAPPLAN* is the name of the snapplan file.
- *ORACLE_HOME* is the *ORACLE_HOME* setting for the *ORACLE_SID* database.
- *relocate_path* is the name of the initial mount point for the snapshot image.

Note: When cloning a database on a secondary host, ensure that *PRIMARY_HOST* and *SECONDARY_HOST* parameters in the snapplan file are different.

When the `-o recoverdb` option is used with `dbed_vmclonedb`, the clone database is recovered automatically using all available archive logs. If the `-o recoverdb` option is not used, you can perform point-in-time recovery manually.

In the following example, a clone of the primary database is automatically created on the same host as the primary database.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \  
-o recoverdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap1 -r /clone  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-05-26 09:29:39  
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in initclone1.ora.  
All redo-log files found.  
Altering instance_name parameter in initclone1.ora.  
Altering instance_number parameter in initclone1.ora.  
Altering thread parameter in initclone1.ora.  
Database CLONE1 (SID=clone1) is running.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-05-26 09:32:16
```

In the following example, a clone of the primary database is automatically created on a secondary host.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \  
-o recoverdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap2  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-04-15 05:57:51  
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in initclone1.ora.  
All redo-log files found.  
Altering instance_name parameter in initclone1.ora.  
Altering instance_number parameter in initclone1.ora.
```

```
Altering thread parameter in initclone1.ora.  
Database CLONE1 (SID=clone1) is running.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-04-15 06:02:20
```

Shutting down the clone database and unmounting file systems

When you are done using the clone database, you can shut it down and unmount all snapshot file systems with the `dbed_vmclonedb -o umount` command.

Note: Any mounted Storage Checkpoints need to be unmounted before running `dbed_vmclonedb -o umount`.

To shut down the clone database and unmount all snapshot file systems

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb \  
-o umount,new_sid=new_sid,server_name=svr_name \  
-f SNAPPLAN [-r relocate_path]
```

In this example, the clone database is shut down and file systems are unmounted for a clone on the same host as the primary database (a single-host configuration).

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb \  
-o umount,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap1 -r /clone  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-02 15:11:22  
Umounting /clone/prod_db.  
Umounting /clone/prod_ar.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-02 15:11:47
```

In this example, the clone database is shut down, file systems are unmounted, and the snapshot disk group is deported for a clone on a secondary host (a two-host configuration).

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb \  
-o umount,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap2  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-09 23:09:21  
Umounting /clone/arch.  
Umounting /clone/prod_db.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-09 23:09:50
```

Restarting a clone database

If the clone database is down as a result of using `dbed_vmclonedb -o umount` or rebooting the system, you can restart it with the `-o restartdb` option.

Note: This option can only be used when a clone database is created successfully. If the clone database is recovered manually, `-o update_status` must be run to update the status before `-o restartdb` will work.

To start the clone database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S ORACLE_SID \  
-o restartdb,new_sid=new_sid,server_name=svr_name -f SNAPPLAN \  
[-H ORACLE_HOME] [-r relocate_path]
```

In this example, the clone database is re-started on the same host as the primary database (a single-host configuration).

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \  
-o restartdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap1 -r /clone  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-04-15 06:04:10  
Oracle instance clone1 successfully started.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-04-15 06:07:14
```

In this example, the clone database is re-started on the secondary host (a two-host configuration).

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \  
-o restartdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr \  
-f snap2  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-04-15 06:04:10  
Oracle instance clone1 successfully started.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-04-15 06:07:14
```

Recreating Oracle tempfiles

After a clone database is created and opened, the tempfiles are added if they were residing on the snapshot volumes. If the tempfiles were not residing on the same file systems as the datafiles, `dbed_vmsnap` does not include the underlying volumes in the snapshot. In this situation, `dbed_vmclonedb` issues a warning message and

you can then recreate any needed tempfiles on the clone database as described in the following procedure.

To recreate the Oracle tempfiles

- 1 If the tempfiles were not residing on the same file systems as the datafiles, dbed_vmclonedb will display the WARNING and INFO messages similar to the following:

```
WARNING: Not all tempfiles were included in snapshot for $ORACLE_SID,
there is no snapshot volume for
/clone_path/temp02.dbf.
WARNING: Could not recreate tempfiles for $ORACLE_SID
due to lack of free space.
INFO: The sql script for adding tempfiles to $ORACLE_SID
is at /tmp/add_tf.$ORACLE_SID.sql.
```

Note: *\$ORACLE_SID* is the name of the clone database.

- 2 A script named `add_tf.$ORACLE_SID.sql` is provided in the `/tmp` directory for the purpose of recreating Oracle tempfiles. This script contains the SQL*Plus commands to recreate the missing tempfiles.
- 3 Make a copy of the `add_tf.$ORACLE_SID.sql` script and open it to view the list of missing tempfiles.

An example of the `add_tf.$ORACLE_SID.sql` script is shown below:

```
# cat add_tf.pune.sql
-- Commands to add tempfiles to temporary tablespaces.
-- Online tempfiles have complete space information.
-- Other tempfiles may require adjustment.
ALTER TABLESPACE TEMP ADD TEMPFILE
'DBED:ADJUST_BEFORE_RUN/snap_data11r1/pune/temp01.dbf'
SIZE 20971520 REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 655360 MAXSIZE 32767M;
```

- 4 Evaluate whether you need to recreate any temp files. If you want to recreate tempfiles, proceed to the next step.

- 5 In the `add_tf.$ORACLE_SID.sql` file, edit the sizes and default path names of the tempfiles as needed to reside on cloned volumes configured for database storage.

Note: Do not run the script without first editing it because path names may not exist and the specified mount points may not contain sufficient space.

- 6 After you have modified the `add_tf.$ORACLE_SID.sql` script, execute it against your clone database.
- 7 After you have successfully run the script, you may delete it.

Resynchronizing your database to the snapshot

If your database becomes corrupted, you can use reverse resynchronization to recover the database from a clone. The reverse resynchronization feature of Veritas Database FlashSnap enables you to resynchronize the primary database or volume with a clone database or snapshot volume.

Note: In Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC configurations, the reverse resynchronization option is not supported.

Reverse resynchronization requires the primary database to be offline so that it remains unchanged.

Warning: After completing a reverse resynchronization, the content of the original database is discarded. Storage Checkpoints taken on the original database or the clone database before or after the snapshot was created are discarded. The `dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_commit` command cannot be undone and should be used with extreme caution.

Before resynchronizing a database to a snapshot, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged in as the Oracle database administrator.
 - Before you can reverse resynchronize the snapshot image, review the database snapshot procedure and create the snapshot.
 - The mount point for the primary database must be created by and owned by the Oracle DBA user before mounting the VxFS file system.
 - If a clone database has been created, you must shut it down and unmount the file systems using the `dbed_vmclonedb -o unmount` command before you can reverse resynchronize the snapshot image. This command also deports the disk group if the primary and secondary hosts are different.
See [“Shutting down the clone database and unmounting file systems”](#) on page 284.
 - The primary database must be offline.
- Usage notes
- The `dbed_vmsnap` command can only be executed on the primary host.
 - Before you execute the `reverse_resync_commit` command, you should remove the old archive log when ODM is enabled.
 - If the Oracle authentication password is used, you need to recreate it using the `ORAPWD` utility after executing `dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_commit`.

To begin reverse resynchronization

- ◆ Use the `-o reverse_resync_begin` option to the `dbed_vmsnap` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN \  
-o reverse_resync_begin
```

Any mounted storage checkpoints must be unmounted before running `dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync`.

After executing `reverse_resync_commit`, checkpoints created on the original database will be deleted.

The `-o reverse_resync_begin` option imports the disk group that was deported from the secondary host and joins it back to the original disk group. The command unmounts the original volumes, mounts the snapshot volumes with the file systems that are configured for the primary database, and brings up the database snapshot image as the primary database. This operation requires the primary database to be offline so that its contents remain unchanged.

To abort reverse resynchronization

- ◆ Use the `-o reverse_resync_abort` option of the `dbed_vmsnap` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN \  
-o reverse_resync_abort
```

The `-o reverse_resync_abort` option aborts `-o reverse_resync_begin`, unmounts the snapshot volumes, and mounts the original volumes back with the file systems that are configured to use the volume. This operation is only allowed after `-o reverse_resync_begin` has been executed and cannot be used after reverse resynchronization has been committed (`-o reverse_resync_commit`).

To commit reverse resynchronization changes

- 1 Use the `-o reverse_resync_commit` option of the `dbed_vmsnap` command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN \  
-o reverse_resync_commit
```

The `-o reverse_resync_commit` option commits the reverse resynchronization changes after you have verified that they are acceptable. The operation resynchronizes the original volume from the data in the snapshot.

- 2 Restart the primary database in `ARCHIVELOG` mode so that it is ready to take another snapshot.

If the Oracle authentication password file is used for the database, it needs to be recreated using the `ORAPWD` utility after the `reverse_resync_commit` operation is performed.

This example is valid only for the `online_snapshot` mode.

Reverse resynchronization is started on the primary host:

```
$ dbed_vmsnap -S FLAS10r1 -f snaptst  
-o reverse_resync_begin
```

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2009-07-30 14:06:38  
SFORA dbed_vmsnap WARNING V-81-5725 After reverse_resync_commit is performed  
you need to recreate the Authentication Password  
File using the ORAPWD utility.
```

```
Database FLAS10r1 (SID=FLAS10r1) is running.  
The option reverse_resync_begin has been completed.  
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2009-07-30 14:12:22
```

Reverse resynchronization is aborted on the primary host.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S PROD -f snap1 \  
-o reverse_resync_abort  
  
dbed_vmsnap started at 2004-04-02 16:16:44  
The option reverse_resync_abort has been completed.  
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2004-04-02 16:16:51
```

Reverse resynchronization changes are committed on the primary host.

```
$ dbed_vmsnap -S FLAS10r1 -f snaptst  
-o reverse_resync_commit  
  
$ dbed_vmsnap -S FLAS10r1 -f snaptst -o reverse_resync_commit  
dbed_vmsnap started at 2009-07-30 14:14:47  
Oracle instance FLAS10r1 successfully started.  
The database is not running in archiveolog mode.  
SFORA dbed_vmsnap WARNING V-81-5725 After reverse_resync_commit is performed,  
you need to recreate the Authentication Password  
File using the ORAPWD utility.  
  
The option reverse_resync_commit has been completed.  
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2009-07-30 14:20:07
```

Resynchronizing the snapshot to your database

When you have finished using a clone database or want to refresh it, you can resynchronize it with the original database. This is also known as refreshing the snapshot volume or merging the split snapshot image back to the current database image. After resynchronizing, the snapshot can be retaken for backup or decision-support purposes.

There are two choices when resynchronizing the data in a volume:

- Resynchronizing the snapshot from the original volume.
- Resynchronizing the original volume from the snapshot. This choice is known as reverse resynchronization. Reverse resynchronization may be necessary to restore a corrupted database and is usually much quicker than using alternative approaches such as full restoration from backup media.
Reverse resynchronization is not supported in Oracle RAC configurations.

Before resynchronizing the snapshot to your database, make sure the following conditions are met:

- Prerequisites**
- You must be logged in as the Oracle database administrator.
 - Before you can resynchronize the snapshot image, you must validate a snapplan and create the snapshot.
See “[Summary of database snapshot steps](#)” on page 249.
See “[Validating a snapplan \(dbed_vmchecksnap\)](#)” on page 263.
See “[Creating a snapshot \(dbed_vmsnap\)](#)” on page 270.
 - If a clone database has been created, shut it down and unmount the file systems using the `dbed_vmclonedb -o umountcommand`. This command also deports the disk group.
See “[Shutting down the clone database and unmounting file systems](#)” on page 284.
- Usage notes**
- The `dbed_vmsnap` command can only be executed on the primary host or if in an Oracle RAC configuration, on the CVM master node or slave node.
 - In a two-host configuration, the `dbed_vmsnap` command imports the disk group that was deported from the secondary host and joins the disk group back to the original disk group. The snapshot volumes again become plexes of the original volumes. The snapshot is then resynchronized.
Two-host operations are not applicable to Oracle RAC configurations.
 - See the `dbed_vmsnap(1M)` manual page for more information.
 - As a good practice, it is recommended to remove the old archive logs after performing a reverse resynchronization.

To resynchronize the snapshot image

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmsnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN -o resync
```

In this example, the snapshot image is resynchronized with the primary database.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S FLAS11r1 -f snap1 -o resync
```

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2009-06-29 06:41:35
Snapback Volumes OK for flashdstg15
The option resync has been completed.
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2009-06-29 06:44:45
```

Now you can again start creating snapshots.

Removing a snapshot volume

If a snapshot volume is no longer needed, you can remove it and free up the disk space for other uses by using the `vxedit rm` command.

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged in as root.
 - If the volume is on a mounted file system, you must unmount it before removing the volume.

To remove a snapplan and snapshot volume

- 1 To remove the snapshot and free up the storage used by it:

If the snapshot has been taken:

- Remove the snapshot as follows:

```
# vxsnap -g diskgroup dis snapshot_volume
# vxvol -g diskgroup stop snapshot_volume
# vxedit -g diskgroup -rf rm snapshot_volume
```

If the snapshot has not been taken and the snapshot plex (mirror) exists:

- Remove the snapshot as follows:

```
# vxsnap -g diskgroup rmmir volume
```

- 2 Remove the DCO and DCO volume:

```
# vxsnap -g diskgroup -f unprepare volume
```

- 3 Remove the snapplan:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S db -f snapplan -o remove
```

For example, the following commands will remove a snapshot volume from disk group `PRODDg`:

```
# vxsnap -g PRODDg dis snap_v1
# vxvol -g PRODDg stop snap_v1
# vxedit -g PRODDg -rf rm snap_v1
```

Using Database FlashSnap in an HA environment

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle supports Database FlashSnap in the HA environment.

Note: This HA information does not apply to using Database FlashSnap in a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment.

When using Database FlashSnap in the HA environment, observe the following limitations:

- Modify the default snapplan to use the virtual host name defined for the database resource group for the `PRIMARY_HOST` and/or the `SECONDARY_HOST` parameters and validate the snapplan before creating a snapshot by running the following command:

```
dbed_vmchecksnap -S ORACLE_SID -H ORACLE_HOME -f SNAPPLAN \  
-o validate
```

- The primary database must be down before you perform reverse resynchronization (`dbed_vmsnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN -o reverse_resync_begin`). When Veritas Cluster Server (VCS) detects that the primary database is down, it starts the failover process and the repository is unmounted and the `dbed_vmsnap` command is aborted.

To avoid the VCS failover process

- 1 As root, temporarily freeze the VCS resource group for the database:

```
# hagr -freeze ResourceGroup
```

- 2 Shut down the primary database.

- 3 Run reverse resynchronization:

```
# dbed_vmsnap -S ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN \  
-o reverse_resync_begin
```

- 4 After reverse resynchronization changes are committed (`-o reverse_resync_commit`), verify that the database has been started in ARCHIVELOG mode. This information is provided in the status messages that appear after running committing reverse resynchronization changes.

- 5 Unfreeze the resource group:

```
# hagr -unfreeze ResourceGroup
```


Using Veritas NetBackup for database backup

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About using Veritas NetBackup for backup and restore](#)
- [Using Veritas NetBackup to backup and restore Quick I/O files](#)
- [About using Veritas NetBackup to backup and restore Oracle Disk Manager files](#)

About using Veritas NetBackup for backup and restore

Veritas NetBackup provides for high performance, online (hot) backups of databases that must be available on a 24x7 basis, as well as offline (cold) database backups. Veritas NetBackup lets you back up and restore database files and directories. You can set up schedules for automatic, unattended, online, and offline database backup, as well as full or incremental backup. These backups are managed entirely by the NetBackup server. You can also manually back up database files from any of the NetBackup clients. Client users can perform database backups and restores from their client systems on demand.

Using Veritas NetBackup to backup and restore Quick I/O files

If you are using NetBackup for Oracle, then you should use Oracle RMAN to backup and restore Quick I/O files.

Veritas NetBackup does not follow symbolic links when backing up files. Typical backup management applications are designed this way to avoid backing up the

same data twice. This would happen if both the link and the file it points to were included in the list of files to be backed up.

A Quick I/O file consists of two components: a hidden file with the space allocated for it, and a link that points to the Quick I/O interface of the hidden file. Because NetBackup does not follow symbolic links, you must specify both the Quick I/O link and its hidden file in the list of files to be backed up.

To view all files and their attributes in the `db01` directory:

```
$ ls -la /db01

total 2192

drwxr-xr-x  2 root  root   96  Oct 20 17:39 .
drwxr-xr-x  9 root  root 8192  Oct 20 17:39 ..
-rw-r--r--  1 oracle dba 1048576  Oct 20 17:39
.dbfile

lrwxrwxrwx  1 oracle dba  22  Oct 20 17:39
dbfile ->\
.dbfile::cdev:vxfs:
```

In the example above, you must include both the symbolic link `dbfile` and the hidden file `.dbfile` in the file list of the backup class.

If you want to back up all Quick I/O files in a directory, you can simplify the process by just specifying the directory to be backed up. In this case, both components of each Quick I/O file will be properly backed up. In general, you should specify directories to be backed up unless you only want to back up some, but not all files, in those directories.

Because Veritas NetBackup is integrated with Veritas Storage Foundation, Veritas NetBackup backs up extent attributes of a Quick I/O file and restores them accordingly. Quick I/O files can then be backed up and restored as regular files using Veritas NetBackup, while preserving the Quick I/O file's extent reservation. Without this feature, restoring the file could cause the loss of contiguous reservation, which can degrade performance.

When restoring a Quick I/O file, if both the symbolic link and the hidden file already exist, Veritas NetBackup will restore both components from the backup image. If either one or both of the two components are missing, Veritas NetBackup creates or overwrites as needed.

Note: The Oracle backup and restore utility cannot be used to back up and restore Quick I/O files.

Some back up software may not be able to back up and restore VxFS extent attributes. See the `qio_recreate(1M)` online manual page for information on how to restore missing Quick I/O files.

About using Veritas NetBackup to backup and restore Oracle Disk Manager files

Oracle allocates Oracle Disk Manager files with contiguous extent layouts for good database performance. When you back up your database using Veritas NetBackup, extent attributes are backed up automatically. When you restore database files they are allocated using these extent attributes. If you are using Oracle RMAN's conventional backup method with any backup software, datafiles are also restored with the proper extent layouts.

If you are not using NetBackup or you are using RMAN's “proxy copy” backup method with a backup software other than NetBackup, the extent attributes may not be backed up. To ensure the restored datafiles have proper extent layouts, preallocate the lost datafiles using the `odmmkfile` command. This command preallocates contiguous space for files prior to restoring them.

See the `odmmkfile(1M)` manual page.

For example, to preallocate an Oracle datafile with size 100 M, assuming the Oracle database block size is 8K, use the `odmmkfile` command and enter:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/odmmkfile -h 8k -s 100m filename
```


Tuning for performance

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Additional documentation](#)
- [About tuning VxVM](#)
- [About tuning VxFS](#)
- [About tuning Oracle databases](#)
- [About tuning HP-UX](#)

Additional documentation

Use the tuning tips and information provided in this chapter in conjunction with other more in-depth publications, such as:

- *Oracle Performance Tuning Tips & Techniques* (Osborne McGraw-Hill)
- *Oracle9i Installation Guide* (Oracle Corporation)
- *Oracle 10g Installation Guide* (Oracle Corporation)
- *Oracle Performance Tuning* (O'Reilly & Associates)
- *Oracle Performance Tuning and Optimization* (Sams Publishing)
- *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*, chapter on “VxVM Performance Monitoring”

About tuning VxVM

Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) is tuned for most configurations ranging from small systems to larger servers. On smaller systems with less than a hundred drives, tuning should not be necessary and Veritas Volume Manager should be

capable of adopting reasonable defaults for all configuration parameters. On very large systems, however, there may be configurations that require additional tuning of these parameters, both for capacity and performance reasons.

For more information on tuning VxVM, see the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

About obtaining volume I/O statistics

If your database is created on a single file system that is on a single volume, there is typically no need to monitor the volume I/O statistics. If your database is created on multiple file systems on multiple volumes, or the volume configurations have changed over time, it may be necessary to monitor the volume I/O statistics for the databases.

Use the `vxstat` command to access information about activity on volumes, plexes, subdisks, and disks under VxVM control, and to print summary statistics to the standard output. These statistics represent VxVM activity from the time the system initially booted or from the last time the counters were reset to zero. If no VxVM object name is specified, statistics from all volumes in the configuration database are reported. Use the `-g` option to specify the database disk group to report statistics for objects in that database disk group.

VxVM records the following I/O statistics:

- count of operations
- number of blocks transferred (one operation can involve more than one block)
- average operation time (which reflects the total time through the VxVM interface and is not suitable for comparison against other statistics programs)

VxVM records the preceding three pieces of information for logical I/Os, including reads, writes, atomic copies, verified reads, verified writes, plex reads, and plex writes for each volume. VxVM also maintains other statistical data such as read failures, write failures, corrected read failures, corrected write failures, and so on. In addition to displaying volume statistics, the `vxstat` command is capable of displaying more detailed statistics on the components that form the volume. For detailed information on available options, refer to the `vxstat(1M)` manual page.

To reset the statistics information to zero, use the `-r` option. You can reset the statistics information for all objects or for only those objects that are specified. Resetting just prior to an operation makes it possible to measure the impact of that particular operation.

The following is an example of output produced using the `vxstat` command:

```
OPERATIONS          BLOCKS          AVG TIME (ms)
```

TYP	NAME	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE
vol	blop	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0
vol	foobarvol	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0
vol	rootvol	73017	181735	718528	1114227	26.8	27.9
vol	swapvol	13197	20252	105569	162009	25.8	397.0
vol	testvol	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0

Additional information is available on how to use the `vxstat` output to identify volumes that have excessive activity and how to reorganize, change to a different layout, or move these volumes.

Additional volume statistics are available for RAID-5 configurations.

See the `vxstat(1M)` manual page.

See the “Performance Monitoring” section of the “Performance Monitoring and Tuning” chapter in the *Veritas Volume Manager Administrator's Guide*.

About tuning VxFS

Veritas File System provides a set of tuning options to optimize file system performance for different application workloads. VxFS provides a set of tunable I/O parameters that control some of its behavior. These I/O parameters help the file system adjust to striped or RAID-5 volumes that could yield performance far superior to a single disk. Typically, data streaming applications that access large files see the largest benefit from tuning the file system.

Most of these tuning options have little or no impact on database performance when using Quick I/O, with the exception of the `max_thread_proc` parameter.

Other than setting the `max_thread_proc` parameter, use the general VxFS defaults when creating a VxFS file system for databases.

See “`max_thread_proc`” on page 315.

However, you can gather file system performance data when using Quick I/O, and use this information to adjust the system configuration to make the most efficient use of system resources.

How monitoring free space works

In general, VxFS works best if the percentage of free space in the file system is greater than 10 percent. This is because file systems with 10 percent or more of

free space have less fragmentation and better extent allocation. Regular use of the `df` command to monitor free space is desirable. Full file systems may have an adverse effect on file system performance. Full file systems should therefore have some files removed or should be expanded.

See the `fsadm_vxfs(1M)` manual page.

About monitoring fragmentation

Fragmentation reduces performance and availability. Regular use of `fsadm`'s fragmentation reporting and reorganization facilities is therefore advisable.

The easiest way to ensure that fragmentation does not become a problem is to schedule regular defragmentation runs using the `cron` command.

Defragmentation scheduling should range from weekly (for frequently used file systems) to monthly (for infrequently used file systems). Extent fragmentation should be monitored with `fsadm` or the `df -o s` commands.

There are three factors that can be used to determine the degree of fragmentation:

- Percentage of free space in extents that are less than eight blocks in length
- Percentage of free space in extents that are less than 64 blocks in length
- Percentage of free space in extents that are 64 or more blocks in length

An unfragmented file system will have the following characteristics:

- Less than 1 percent of free space in extents that are less than eight blocks in length
- Less than 5 percent of free space in extents that are less than 64 blocks in length
- More than 5 percent of the total file system size available as free extents that are 64 or more blocks in length

A badly fragmented file system will have one or more of the following characteristics:

- More than 5 percent of free space in extents that are less than 8 blocks in length
- More than 50 percent of free space in extents that are less than 64 blocks in length
- Less than 5 percent of the total file system size available as free extents that are 64 or more blocks in length

The optimal period for scheduling extent reorganization runs can be determined by choosing a reasonable interval, scheduling `fsadm` runs at the initial interval,

and running the extent fragmentation report feature of `fsadm` before and after the reorganization.

The “before” result is the degree of fragmentation prior to the reorganization. If the degree of fragmentation approaches the percentages for bad fragmentation, reduce the interval between `fsadm`. If the degree of fragmentation is low, increase the interval between `fsadm` runs.

How tuning VxFS I/O parameters works

VxFS provides a set of tunable I/O parameters that control some of its behavior. These I/O parameters are useful to help the file system adjust to striped or RAID-5 volumes that could yield performance far superior to a single disk. Typically, data streaming applications that access large files see the biggest benefit from tuning the file system.

If VxFS is being used with Veritas Volume Manager, the file system queries VxVM to determine the geometry of the underlying volume and automatically sets the I/O parameters. VxVM is queried by `mkfs` when the file system is created to automatically align the file system to the volume geometry. If the default alignment from `mkfs` is not acceptable, the `-o align=n` option can be used to override alignment information obtained from VxVM. The `mount` command also queries VxVM when the file system is mounted and downloads the I/O parameters.

If the default parameters are not acceptable or the file system is being used without VxVM, then the `/etc/vx/tunefstab` file can be used to set values for I/O parameters. The `mount` command reads the `/etc/vx/tunefstab` file and downloads any parameters specified for a file system. The `tunefstab` file overrides any values obtained from VxVM. While the file system is mounted, any I/O parameters can be changed using the `vxtunefs` command, which can have tunables specified on the command line or can read them from the `/etc/vx/tunefstab` file.

The `vxtunefs` command can be used to print the current values of the I/O parameters.

See the `vxtunefs(1M)` and `tunefstab(4)` manual pages.

About tunable VxFS I/O parameters

The following are tunable VxFS I/O parameters:

`read_pref_io`

The preferred read request size. The file system uses this parameter in conjunction with the `read_nstream` value to determine how much data to read ahead. The default value is 64K.

<code>write_pref_io</code>	The preferred write request size. The file system uses this parameter in conjunction with the <code>write_nstream</code> value to determine how to do flush behind on writes. The default value is 64K.
<code>read_nstream</code>	The number of parallel read requests of size <code>read_pref_io</code> that you can have outstanding at one time. The file system uses the product of <code>read_nstream</code> multiplied by <code>read_pref_io</code> to determine its read ahead size. The default value for <code>read_nstream</code> is 1.
<code>write_nstream</code>	The number of parallel write requests of size <code>write_pref_io</code> that you can have outstanding at one time. The file system uses the product of <code>write_nstream</code> multiplied by <code>write_pref_io</code> to determine when to do flush behind on writes. The default value for <code>write_nstream</code> is 1.
<code>discovered_direct_iosz</code>	Any file I/O requests larger than the <code>discovered_direct_iosz</code> are handled as discovered direct I/O. A discovered direct I/O is unbuffered similar to direct I/O, but does not require a synchronous commit of the inode when the file is extended or blocks are allocated. For larger I/O requests, the CPU time for copying the data into the page cache and the cost of using memory to buffer the I/O data becomes more expensive than the cost of doing the disk I/O. For these I/O requests, using discovered direct I/O is more efficient than regular I/O. The default value of this parameter is 256K.

<code>initial_extent_size</code>	Changes the default initial extent size. VxFS determines the size of the first extent to be allocated to the file based on the first write to a new file. Normally, the first extent is the smallest power of 2 that is larger than the size of the first write. If that power of 2 is less than 8K, the first extent allocated is 8K. After the initial extent, the file system increases the size of subsequent extents (see <code>max_seqio_extent_size</code>) with each allocation. Since most applications write to files using a buffer size of 8K or less, the increasing extents start doubling from a small initial extent. <code>initial_extent_size</code> can change the default initial extent size to be larger, so the doubling policy will start from a much larger initial size and the file system will not allocate a set of small extents at the start of file. Use this parameter only on file systems that will have a very large average file size. On these file systems, it will result in fewer extents per file and less fragmentation. <code>initial_extent_size</code> is measured in file system blocks.
<code>max_buf_data_size</code>	The maximum buffer size allocated for file data; either 8K bytes or 64K bytes. Use the larger value for workloads where large reads/writes are performed sequentially. Use the smaller value on workloads where the I/O is random or is done in small chunks. The default value is 8K bytes.
<code>max_direct_iosz</code>	The maximum size of a direct I/O request that will be issued by the file system. If a larger I/O request comes in, then it is broken up into <code>max_direct_iosz</code> chunks. This parameter defines how much memory an I/O request can lock at once, so it should not be set to more than 20 percent of memory.
<code>max_diskq</code>	Limits the maximum disk queue generated by a single file. When the file system is flushing data for a file and the number of pages being flushed exceeds <code>max_diskq</code> , processes will block until the amount of data being flushed decreases. Although this doesn't limit the actual disk queue, it prevents flushing processes from making the system unresponsive. The default value is 1MB.

<code>max_seqio_extent_size</code>	Increases or decreases the maximum size of an extent. When the file system is following its default allocation policy for sequential writes to a file, it allocates an initial extent that is large enough for the first write to the file. When additional extents are allocated, they are progressively larger (the algorithm tries to double the size of the file with each new extent) so each extent can hold several writes' worth of data. This is done to reduce the total number of extents in anticipation of continued sequential writes. When the file stops being written, any unused space is freed for other files to use. Normally, this allocation stops increasing the size of extents at 2048 blocks, which prevents one file from holding too much unused space. <code>max_seqio_extent_size</code> is measured in file system blocks.
<code>qio_cache_enable</code>	Enables or disables caching on Quick I/O files. The default behavior is to disable caching. To enable caching, set <code>qio_cache_enable</code> to 1. On systems with large memories, the database cannot always use all of the memory as a cache. By enabling file system caching as a second level cache, performance may be improved. If the database is performing sequential scans of tables, the scans may run faster by enabling file system caching so the file system will perform aggressive read-ahead on the files.

`write_throttle`

Warning: The `write_throttle` parameter is useful in special situations where a computer system has a combination of a lot of memory and slow storage devices. In this configuration, sync operations (such as `fsync()`) may take so long to complete that the system appears to hang. This behavior occurs because the file system is creating dirty pages (in-memory updates) faster than they can be asynchronously flushed to disk without slowing system performance.

Lowering the value of `write_throttle` limits the number of dirty pages per file that a file system will generate before flushing the pages to disk. After the number of dirty pages for a file reaches the `write_throttle` threshold, the file system starts flushing pages to disk even if free memory is still available. The default value of `write_throttle` typically generates a lot of dirty pages, but maintains fast user writes. Depending on the speed of the storage device, if you lower `write_throttle`, user write performance may suffer, but the number of dirty pages is limited, so sync operations will complete much faster.

Because lowering `write_throttle` can delay write requests (for example, lowering `write_throttle` may increase the file disk queue to the `max_diskq` value, delaying user writes until the disk queue decreases), it is recommended that you avoid changing the value of `write_throttle` unless your system has a large amount of physical memory and slow storage devices.

If the file system is being used with VxVM, it is recommended that you set the VxFS I/O parameters to default values based on the volume geometry.

If the file system is being used with a hardware disk array or volume manager other than VxVM, align the parameters to match the geometry of the logical disk. With striping or RAID-5, it is common to set `read_pref_io` to the stripe unit size and `read_nstream` to the number of columns in the stripe. For striping arrays, use the same values for `write_pref_io` and `write_nstream`, but for RAID-5 arrays, set `write_pref_io` to the full stripe size and `write_nstream` to 1.

For an application to do efficient disk I/O, it should issue read requests that are equal to the product of `read_nstream` multiplied by `read_pref_io`. Generally, any multiple or factor of `read_nstream` multiplied by `read_pref_io` should be a good size for performance. For writing, the same rule of thumb applies to the `write_pref_io` and `write_nstream` parameters. When tuning a file system, the best thing to do is try out the tuning parameters under a real-life workload.

If an application is doing sequential I/O to large files, it should issue requests larger than the `discovered_direct_iosz`. This causes the I/O requests to be performed as discovered direct I/O requests, which are unbuffered like direct I/O but do not require synchronous inode updates when extending the file. If the file is too large to fit in the cache, then using unbuffered I/O avoids throwing useful data out of the cache and lessens CPU overhead.

About obtaining file I/O statistics using the Quick I/O interface

The `qiostat` command provides access to activity information on Quick I/O files on VxFS file systems. The command reports statistics on the activity levels of files from the time the files are first opened using their Quick I/O interface. The accumulated `qiostat` statistics are reset once the last open reference to the Quick I/O file is closed.

The `qiostat` command displays the following I/O statistics:

- Number of read and write operations
- Number of data blocks (sectors) transferred
- Average time spent on read and write operations

When Cached Quick I/O is used, `qiostat` also displays the caching statistics when the `-l` (the long format) option is selected.

The following is an example of `qiostat` output:

FILENAME	OPERATIONS		FILE BLOCKS		AVG TIME (ms)	
	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE
/db01/file1	0	00	0	0.0	0.0	
/db01/file2	0	00	0	0.0	0.0	
/db01/file3	73017	181735	718528	1114227	26.8	27.9
/db01/file4	13197	20252	105569	162009	25.8	397.0
/db01/file5	0	00	0	0.0	0.0	

For detailed information on available options, see the `qiostat(1M)` manual page.

About I/O statistics data

Once you gather the file I/O performance data, you can use it to adjust the system configuration to make the most efficient use of system resources.

There are three primary statistics to consider:

- file I/O activity
- volume I/O activity
- raw disk I/O activity

If your database is using one file system on a striped volume, you may only need to pay attention to the file I/O activity statistics. If you have more than one file system, you may need to monitor volume I/O activity as well.

First, use the `qiostat -r` command to clear all existing statistics. After clearing the statistics, let the database run for a while during a typical database workload period. For example, if you are monitoring a database with many users, let the statistics accumulate for a few hours during prime working time before displaying the accumulated I/O statistics.

To display active file I/O statistics, use the `qiostat` command and specify an interval (using `-i`) for displaying the statistics for a period of time. This command displays a list of statistics such as:

FILENAME	OPERATIONS		FILE BLOCKS		AVG TIME (ms)	
	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE
/db01/cust1	218	36	872	144	22.8	55.6
/db01/hist1	0	10	4	0.0	10.0	
/db01/nord1	10	14	40	56	21.0	75.0
/db01/ord1	19	16	76	64	17.4	56.2
/db01/ord11	189	41	756	164	21.1	50.0
/db01/roll11	0	50	0	200	0.0	49.0
/db01/stk1	1614	238	6456	952	19.3	46.5
/db01/sys1	0	00	0	0.0	0.0	
/db01/temp1	0	00	0	0.0	0.0	
/db01/ware1	3	14	12	56	23.3	44.3
/logs/log1	0	00	0	0.0	0.0	
/logs/log2	0	217 0	2255	0.0	6.8	

File I/O statistics help identify files with an unusually large number of operations or excessive read or write times. When this happens, try moving the “hot” files or busy file systems to different disks or changing the layout to balance the I/O load.

Mon May 11 16:21:20 2015

/db/dbfile01	813	0	813	0	0.3	0.0
/db/dbfile02	0	813	0	813	0.0	5.5

Mon May 11 16:21:25 2015

/db/dbfile01	816	0	816	0	0.3	0.0
/db/dbfile02	0	816	0	816	0.0	5.3

Mon May 11 16:21:30 2015

/db/dbfile01	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0
/db/dbfile02	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0

Obtaining file I/O statistics using Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager

The `odmstat` command provides access to activity information on Oracle Disk Manager files on VxFS systems. Refer to the `odmstat(1M)` manual page for more information. The command reports statistics on the activity from the time that the files were opened by the Oracle Disk Manager interface. The command has an option for zeroing the statistics. When the file is closed, the statistics are discarded.

The `odmstat` command displays the following I/O statistics:

- Number of read and write operations
- Number of data blocks read and written
- Average time spent on read and write operations

To obtain i/o statistics

- ◆ Use the `odmstat` command as follows:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/odmstat -i 5 /mnt/odmfile*
```

For example:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/odmstat -i 5 /db/odmfile*
```

FILE NAME	OPERATIONS		FILE BLOCKS		AVG TIME (ms)	
	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE	READ	WRITE
Mon May 11 16:21:10 2015						
/db/cust.dbf	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0
/db/system.dbf	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0
Mon May 11 16:21:15 2015						
/db/cust.dbf	371	0	371	0	0.2	0.0
/db/system.dbf	0	371	0	371	0.0	5.7
Mon May 11 16:21:20 2015						
/db/cust.dbf	813	0	813	0	0.3	0.0
/db/system.dbf	0	813	0	813	0.0	5.5
Mon May 11 16:21:25 2015						
/db/cust.dbf	816	0	816	0	0.3	0.0
/db/system.dbf	0	816	0	816	0.0	5.3
Mon May 11 16:21:30 2015						
/db/cust.dbf	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0
/db/system.dbf	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0

About I/O statistics

When running your database through the file system, the read-write lock on each file allows only one active write per file. When you look at the disk statistics using `iostat`, the disk reports queueing time and service time. The service time is the

time that I/O spends on the disk, and the queueing time is how long it waits for all of the other I/Os ahead of it. At the volume level or the file system level, there is no queueing, so `vxstat` and `qiostat` do not show queueing time.

For example, if you send 100 I/Os at the same time and each takes 10 milliseconds, the disk reports an average of 10 milliseconds of service and 490 milliseconds of queueing time. The `vxstat`, `odmstat`, and `qiostat` report an average of 500 milliseconds service time.

About tuning Oracle databases

To achieve optimal performance on your Oracle database, the database needs to be tuned to work with VxFS. There are a number of Oracle parameters that you can tune to improve your Oracle database performance.

Sequential table scans

Quick I/O performs all I/O as direct I/O. In the case of single-threaded sequential scans (common in decision support system (DSS) workloads), using buffered reads can yield better performance. Because the file system detects these sequential reads and performs read-aheads, the next few blocks that Oracle requests are readily available in the system buffer cache and are simply copied to the Oracle system global area (SGA). Because access from memory is inherently faster than access from disk, this achieves a significant reduction in response time.

To handle large sequential scans when using Quick I/O, use the Oracle parallel query process to break the single large scan into multiple smaller scans. This is done by setting the Oracle parameters `PARALLEL_MAX_SERVERS`, `PARALLEL_MIN_SERVERS`, and `SORT_AREA_SIZE` suitably.

Note: Consult the Oracle documentation for your system and version of Oracle, and use the settings recommended for these parameters when provided.

Asynchronous I/O

Quick I/O and Oracle Disk Manager support kernel asynchronous I/O, which reduces CPU utilization and improves transaction throughput.

Enabling the following parameters lets Oracle take advantage of asynchronous I/O and avoids having to configure multiple DBWR slaves:

- If you are using Quick I/O datafiles with Oracle9, set `DISK_ASYNC_IO` to `TRUE` in `init.ora`.

- If you are using ODM on Oracle9, you do not need to change any `init.ora` parameters.

Your Oracle Installation Guide provides detailed instructions on implementing asynchronous I/O on your system.

Tuning buffer cache

The UNIX buffer cache plays an important role in performance when using HFS or JFS in buffered I/O mode.

When using Quick I/O, however, the database cache must be tuned as if raw devices are being used. You can allocate more memory to the database buffer cache because Quick I/O bypasses the file system cache to improve database performance.

Memory pages normally allocated to the file system cache can be allocated to the database buffer cache (SGA). With Oracle9i, you can adjust the SGA size without shutting down the database.

Setting Oracle block reads during sequential scans

The `DB_FILE_MULTIBLOCK_READ_COUNT` parameter specifies the maximum number of blocks Oracle reads in one I/O operation during a sequential scan. When the file system is created on a striped volume, set this parameter to a value that is a multiple of the full stripe size divided by `DB_BLOCK_SIZE`. Using a full stripe size allows the read operations to take advantage of the full bandwidth of the striped disks during sequential table scan.

Set the `DB_FILE_MULTIBLOCK_READ_COUNT` to a value that is a multiple of $(\text{read_pref_io} * \text{read_nstream}) / \text{DB_BLOCK_SIZE}$, but the value should not exceed the value of $\text{max_direct_iosz} / \text{DB_BLOCK_SIZE}$.

Use the `vxtunefs` command to display the value of `read_pref_io`, `read_nstream`, and `max_direct_iosz`, for example:

```
# vxtunefs /db01
```

The `vxtunefs` command displays output similar to the following:

```
Filesystem i/o parameters for /db01
```

```
read_pref_io   = 65536
read_nstream   = 4
read_unit_io   = 65536
write_pref_io  = 65536
write_nstream  = 4
write_unit_io  = 65536
```

```
pref_strength = 10
buf_breakup_size = 131072
discovered_direct_iosz = 262144
max_direct_iosz = 2097152
default_indir_size = 8192
```

Setting slave parameters

Quick I/O and ODM provide support for kernel asynchronous I/O, eliminating the need for multiple logwriter slaves or database writer slaves. This parameter is set to by default.

It is not necessary to set the DBWR_IO_SLAVES settings if you are using Quick I/O. The number of writer processes is set within DB_WRITER_PROCESSES, which performs asynchronous I/O.

Configuring memory allocation

Never configure Oracle to make use of more memory than is physically available on the system. Oracle may have to compete with other processes for system memory resources, and all of these potential processes must be considered when sizing and allocating memory. In the ideal configuration, a system that is dedicated to Oracle simplifies the tuning and monitoring issues and ensures best performance.

About tuning HP-UX

To achieve optimal performance, certain HP-UX parameters need to be tuned. Changing these parameters requires modifying the HP-UX kernel settings, rebuilding the kernel, and rebooting the system. See the HP-UX System Administration Tasks manual for the detailed procedure on how to reconfigure the HP-UX kernel. If you use SAM, the HP-UX system administration utility, to rebuild your kernel, make sure the

Note: The settings for all tunable parameters depend on such factors as the size of your system and database, the database load, and the number of users. In some cases we make suggestions for setting the parameters; however, you should always consult the Oracle Installation Guide for your system and version, and use the settings recommended by Oracle when provided.

max_thread_proc

This parameter sets the maximum number of threads that a process can create. The high performance of VxFS and the Quick I/O driver depend on the value of this tunable. Set the `max_thread_proc` parameter to 1200.

asyncdsk, asyncdsk_included, and max_async_ports

These parameters are used for including and configuring the asynchronous I/O driver in the HP-UX kernel, resulting in less I/O overhead and higher throughput. The parameter `max_async_ports` sets the maximum number of connections between user processes and the `asyncdsk` driver. See your Oracle documentation for the recommended value, or set `max_async_ports` to 1024 if a value is not recommended.

eqmemsize

The I/O subsystem uses a pool of memory allocated by the `eqmemsize` parameter for I/O system memory. The `eqmemsize` parameter specifies the minimum amount of this equivalently mapped memory. The exhaustion of this memory pool degrades I/O performance, thus impacting application performance. See your Oracle documentation for the recommended value, or set `eqmemsize` to 512 if a value is not recommended.

nproc

This parameter sets the maximum number of processes. The `nproc` parameter may need to be set higher for a large database. See your HP-UX and Oracle documentation for the recommended value.

maxuproc

This parameter sets the maximum number of processes a non-`root` user can create in parallel. The `maxuproc` parameter may need to be set higher for a large database. See your HP-UX and Oracle documentation for the recommended value.

semnmi

This parameter sets the number of semaphore set identifiers in the system. The `semnmi` parameter determines the number of semaphore sets that can be created at any one time, and may need to be set higher for a large database. See your HP-UX and Oracle documentation for the recommended value.

semnms

This parameter sets the maximum number of semaphores in the system. The `semnms` parameter may need to be set higher for a large database. See your HP-UX and Oracle documentation for the recommended value.

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Command Line Interface

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Overview of commands](#)
- [About the command line interface](#)

Overview of commands

Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle provides a command line interface (CLI) to many key operations also supplied from within the GUI application. The command line interface lets you incorporate command operations into scripts and other administrative processes. These commands can be executed using the CLI or the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle GUI.

Note: The Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle command line interface depends on certain tablespace, datafile, or container information (depending on your database) that is collected and stored in the SFDB repository. Some CLI commands update the repository by default. It is important to regularly ensure the repository is up-to-date by using the command.

All Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle commands supported in the command line interface are located in the `/opt/VRTS/bin` directory. Online manual pages are located in the `/opt/VRTS/man` directory. Follow the installation instructions provided in the *Veritas Storage Foundation Installation Guide* to ensure you can use these commands and view the online manual pages.

Warning: Unless explicitly stated, commands are not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

Table A-1 summarizes the commands available to you from the command line.

Table A-1 Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle commands

Command	Description
dbed_update This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Updates the SFDB repository in Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle.
dbed_checkconfig	Checks the configuration of an Oracle database in a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle environment.
dbed_saveconfig	Saves the configuration of an Oracle database in a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle environment.
dbed_ckptcreate This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Creates a Storage Checkpoint for an Oracle database.
dbed_ckptdisplay This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Displays Storage Checkpoints for an Oracle database.
dbed_ckptmount This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Mounts a Storage Checkpoint for an Oracle database.
dbed_ckptplan	Used to obtain estimates of space usage for Storage Checkpoints. dbed_ckptplan manages scheduled Storage Checkpoint creation and summarizes statistics from these Storage Checkpoints.
dbed_ckptpolicy	Creates and administers Storage Checkpoint allocation policies for a Multi-Volume File System (MVS). You can display, create, update, assign, and remove Storage Checkpoint allocation policies using this command.
dbed_ckptquota	Administers quotas for Storage Checkpoints.

Table A-1 Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle commands (continued)

Command	Description
<code>dbed_ckptremove</code> This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Removes a Storage Checkpoint for an Oracle database.
<code>dbed_ckptrollback</code> This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Rolls back an Oracle database to a Storage Checkpoint point-in-time image.
<code>dbed_ckptumount</code> This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Unmounts a Storage Checkpoint for an Oracle database.
<code>dbed_clonedb</code> This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Creates a copy of an Oracle database by cloning all existing database files and recreating the control file accordingly. This cloned database can only be started on the same host as the existing database as long as it uses a different SID.
<code>qio_convertdbfiles</code>	Converts VxFS files to Quick I/O files.
<code>qio_getdbfiles</code>	Extracts information on files used by the database and stores the names of these files in <code>mkqio.dat</code> . The <code>mkqio.dat</code> file is used by the <code>qio_convertdbfiles</code> command.
<code>qio_recreate</code>	Automatically recreates Quick I/O files when the database is recovered. The command expects to find a <code>mkqio.dat</code> file in the directory where the <code>qio_recreate</code> command is run.
<code>dbed_vmchecksnap</code> This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.	Creates and validates a snapplan that the <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> command uses to create a volume snapshot of an Oracle database. The snapplan specifies snapshot scenarios (such as online, offline, or instant). The command can also be used to validate a snapplan.

Table A-1 Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle commands *(continued)*

Command	Description
<p><code>dbed_vmsnap</code></p> <p>This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.</p>	<p>Creates a snapshot image of an Oracle database by splitting the mirror volumes used by the database. You can also use this command to resynchronize the snapshot image back to the current database. The command also allows you to reverse resynchronize a snapshot image of an Oracle database.</p>
<p><code>dbed_vmclonedb</code></p> <p>This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.</p>	<p>Mounts the file systems on the snapshot volumes and starts a clone database from snapshot volumes. You can also use this command to shut down or restart the clone database, unmount the file systems, or deport the clone database's volumes.</p>
<p><code>dbed_analyzer</code></p> <p>This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.</p>	<p>Maps tablespaces to physical disks and retrieves the information, including the percentage of disk space used by a tablespace.</p>
<p><code>edgetmsg2</code></p> <p>This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.</p>	<p>Manages message log files. You can use this utility to display and list message log files. You can also use this utility to write a message to a log file or to the console, or read the log file and print to the console.</p>
<p><code>vxstorage_stats</code></p> <p>This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.</p>	<p>Displays storage object I/O statistics.</p>

About the command line interface

You can use the Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle command line interface to perform administrative operations. For more detailed information about the commands and their syntax and available options, see the individual manual pages.

Warning: Unless explicitly stated in the "Usage notes" section, commands are not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

Updating the repository using `dbed_update`

You can use the `dbed_update` command to update the repository.

Any time you change the structure of the database (for example, by adding or deleting datafiles, converting `PFILE` to `SFILE`, or converting `SFILE` to `PFILE`), you must run `dbed_update`.

Before updating the repository, review the following information:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID <code>oracle</code>). |
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC. ■ The <code>dbed_update</code> command saves or updates the information related to the Oracle database in the SFDB repository. ■ The database must be up and running, and the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> and the <code>ORACLE_HOME</code> variable arguments must be specified with the <code>-S</code> and <code>-H</code> options, respectively. ■ See the <code>dbed_update(1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

[Table A-2](#) lists the options for updating the repository.

Table A-2 Options for updating the repository

Option	Description
-S	Specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle instance, for which a snapshot image will be created. In an Oracle RAC environment, the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> is the name of the local Oracle RAC instance. The command can be run on any Oracle RAC instance.
-H	Specifies the Oracle home directory that corresponds to the <code>ORACLE_HOME</code> .
-G	Specifies the name of the VCS service group for the database if the Oracle database is under VCS control.
-P	Specifies the Oracle pfile information.

To update the SFDB repository

- ◆ Use the `dbed_update` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_update -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i
```

Checking the database configuration environment using `dbed_checkconfig`

You can use the command to verify and report on the database environment from the command line.

Before checking the configuration environment, the following conditions must be met:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Prerequisites | ■ You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID <code>oracle</code>) |
| Usage notes | ■ The <code>dbed_checkconfig</code> command is used to verify various elements of the database environment. The utility attempts to use certain basic rules on database settings, file system and volume parameters and layout options to verify how resilient and well configured a configuration is. The information provided is valid for the supplied database.
■ See the <code>dbed_checkconfig(1M)</code> manual page. |

To check the database configuration environment

- ◆ Use the command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_checkconfig-S FLAS11r1 -H $ORACLE_HOME
```

```
VRTSodm          5.0.31.5.%20090524 Veritas Oracle Disk Manager
Examining file system attributes.
All file systems are VxFS.
Examining Quick I/O settings.

0 files are configured to use Quick I/O files.
It appears that your system is ODM enabled.
0 Quick I/O files should be converted to regular
files to use ODM feature.

Examining Cached Quick I/O settings.
No file systems have Cached Quick I/O enabled.
Examining File System tunable settings.

Parameters for all VxFS file systems used by FLAS11r1.
Filesystem i/o parameters for /snap_data11r1
read_pref_io = 2097152
read_nstream = 1
read_unit_io = 2097152
```

```
write_pref_io = 2097152
write_nstream = 1
write_unit_io = 2097152
pref_strength = 10
buf_breakup_size = 2097152
discovered_direct_iosz = 262144
max_direct_iosz = 1048576
default_indir_size = 8192
qio_cache_enable = 0
write_throttle = 0
max_diskq = 33554432
initial_extent_size = 8
max_seqio_extent_size = 2048
max_buf_data_size = 8192
hsm_write_prealloc = 0
read_ahead = 1
inode_aging_size = 0
inode_aging_count = 0
fcl_maxalloc = 317750272
fcl_keeptime = 0
fcl_winterval = 3600
fcl_ointerval = 600
oltp_load = 0
Examining Oracle volume and file system layout.
```

Data for database FLAS11r1 is contained in one volume group.
Examining Oracle internal information.

```
Oracle Version is 11.1.0.6.0.
Control file /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/control01.ctl is on file system
/snap_data11r1.
SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-999 Control file is on a VxVM
volume set
```

```
Control file /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/control02.ctl is on file system
/snap_data11r1.
SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-999 Control file is on a VxVM
volume set
```

```
Control file /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/control03.ctl is on file system
/snap_data11r1.
SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-999 Control file is on a VxVM
volume set
```

Total of 3 control files over 1 file systems.
SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-3122 Control files are not spread over multiple file systems. Spread control files over multiple file systems for better redundancy.

Examining Oracle automatic extension of datafiles.

Total of 1009 datafiles are configured to auto extend.
Total of 1015 datafiles are defined to the database.
Examining Oracle log modes.

The database is running in archivelog mode.
The database is running in automatic log archiving mode.

To check the database configuration environment and not update the repository

- ◆ Use the `dbed_checkconfig` command with the `-v` and `-n` options as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_checkconfig -S FLAS11r1 \  
-H $ORACLE_HOME -v -n
```

where:

- `-v` lists all files.
- `-n` stops the repository from being updated.

VRTSodm 5.0.31.5.%20090524 Veritas Oracle Disk Manager
Examining file system attributes.

All file systems are VxFS.

Examining Quick I/O settings.

0 files are configured to use Quick I/O files.
It appears that your system is ODM enabled.

Examining Cached Quick I/O settings.

No file systems have Cached Quick I/O enabled.

Examining File System tunable settings.

Parameters for all VxFS file systems used by FLAS11r1.
Filesystem i/o parameters for /snap_data11r1
read_pref_io = 2097152
read_nstream = 1

```
read_unit_io = 2097152
write_pref_io = 2097152
write_nstream = 1
write_unit_io = 2097152
pref_strength = 10
buf_breakup_size = 2097152
discovered_direct_iosz = 262144
max_direct_iosz = 1048576
default_indir_size = 8192
qio_cache_enable = 0
write_throttle = 0
max_diskq = 33554432
initial_extent_size = 8
max_seqio_extent_size = 2048
max_buf_data_size = 8192
hsm_write_prealloc = 0
read_ahead = 1
inode_aging_size = 0
inode_aging_count = 0
fcl_maxalloc = 317750272
fcl_keeptime = 0
fcl_winterval = 3600
fcl_ointerval = 600
oltp_load = 0
```

Examining Oracle volume and file system layout.

Data for database FLAS11r1 is contained in one volume group.

Examining Oracle internal information.

Oracle Version is 11.1.0.6.0.

Control file /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/control01.ctl is on file system
/snap_data11r1.

SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-999 Control file is on a
VxVM volume set

Control file /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/control02.ctl is on file system
/snap_data11r1.

SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-999 Control file is on a
VxVM volume set

Control file /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/control03.ctl is on file system

```
/snap_data11r1.  
SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-999 Control file is on a  
VxVM volume set  
  
Total of 3 control files over 1 file systems.  
SFORA dbed_checkconfig WARNING V-81-3122 Control files are not spread  
over multiple file systems. Spread control files over multiple file  
systems for better redundancy.  
  
Examining Oracle automatic extension of datafiles.  
  
Total of 1009 datafiles are configured to auto extend.  
The following datafiles are not configured to autoextend:  
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/test_big.dbf  
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/undotbs02.dbf  
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/tde_tbs1.dbf  
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/tde_tbs2.dbf  
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/16k_file.dbf  
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/32k_file.dbf  
  
Total of 1015 datafiles are defined to the database.  
  
Examining Oracle log modes.  
  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
The database is running in automatic log archiving mode.
```

Saving the database configuration environment using `dbed_saveconfig`

You can use the `dbed_saveconfig` command to save configuration information on the database, Symantec products, and system hardware from the command line.

Before saving the configuration environment, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`).

- Usage notes
- The `dbed_saveconfig` command is used to collect and record configuration information on the database, Symantec products, and system hardware. Information is gathered in the context of a specified database. The utility attempts to gather enough information to allow an administrator to reconstruct a system and database from scratch, in the case of a complete system failure.
 - Information collected is in the form of many system configuration files and the results of querying the system hardware, Symantec products, and the database. The location where configuration information has been saved is displayed as output from the `dbed_saveconfig` command. Alternatively, you can use the `-l` option to designate this location.
 - See the `dbed_saveconfig(1M)` manual page.

To save the database configuration environment

- ◆ Use the `dbed_saveconfig` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_saveconfig -S FLAS10r2 -H $ORACLE_HOME

Saving System and Oracle Information, please wait ...

... Saving HP-UX Information ...
... Saving Oracle Information ...
... Saving Overall Veritas Information ...
... Saving VxFS Information ...
... Saving VxVM Information ...

System configuration information saved to directory:

/tmp/saveconfig.23772
```

To save the database configuration environment without updating the repository

- ◆ Use the `dbed_saveconfig` command with the `-n` option as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_saveconfig -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i -n

Saving System and Oracle Information, please wait ...

System configuration information saved to directory:

/tmp/vxdbed/DR.1149
```

Creating Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptcreate`

You can use the `dbed_ckptcreate` command to create a Storage Checkpoint from the command line.

Storage Checkpoints can be either online, offline, or instant. By default, Storage Checkpoints are offline. If `online` is specified, the database is put into hot-backup mode when the Storage Checkpoint is created. If `offline` is specified, the database is expected to be down. If `instant` is specified, the database must be online and a Storage Checkpoint will be taken for a “crash recovery”-type Storage Rollback.

Before creating a Storage Checkpoint, the following conditions must be met:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID <code>oracle</code>).■ For best recoverability, always keep <code>ARCHIVELOG</code> mode enabled when you create Storage Checkpoints. |
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.■ In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle environment, <code>dbed_ckptcreate</code> stores Storage Checkpoint information under the following directory:
<code>/etc/vx/vxdbed/\$ORACLE_SID/checkpoint_dir</code>■ See the <code>dbed_ckptcreate(1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

To create Storage Checkpoints while the database is online

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptcreate` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o online  
  
Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_971672042 created.
```

To create Storage Checkpoints without updating the repository while the database is online

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptcreate` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o online -n  
  
Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_971672043 created.
```


To create Storage Checkpoints while the database is offline

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptcreate` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o offline  
  
Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_971672044 created.
```

The default option is `online`.

To create instant Storage Checkpoints

- ◆ Ensure that the database is online and use the `dbed_ckptcreate` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o instant  
  
Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_971672045 created.
```

To assign a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy to a Storage checkpoint

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptcreate` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o online -p ckpt_data,ckpt_metadata  
  
Creating online Storage Checkpoint of database PROD.  
  
Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_971672044 created.
```

Scheduling Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptcreate` and `cron`

You can use the `dbed_ckptcreate` command to schedule Storage Checkpoint creation in a `cron` job or other administrative script.

Before scheduling Storage Checkpoints, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`).

Usage notes

- Although `dbed_ckptcreate` is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, this feature is not supported.
- Create a new `crontab` file or edit an existing `crontab` file to include a Storage Checkpoint creation entry with the following space-delimited fields:
minute hour day_of_month month_of_year day_of_week\
`/opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate`
where:
minute - numeric values from 0-59 or *
hour - numeric values from 0-23 or *
day_of_month - numeric values from 1-31 or *
month_of_year - numeric values from 1-12 or *
day_of_week - numeric values from 0-6, with 0=Sunday or *
Each of these variables can either be an asterisk (meaning all legal values) or a list of elements separated by commas. An element is either a number or two numbers separated by a hyphen (meaning an inclusive range).
- See the `dbed_ckptcreate(1M)`, `cron(1M)`, and `crontab(1)` manual pages for more information.

Scheduling Storage Checkpoint creation in a cron job

Although the `dbed_ckptcreate` command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, this feature is not supported.

- To create a Storage Checkpoint twice a day, at 5:00 a.m. and 7:00 p.m., every Monday through Friday, include the following entry in your `crontab` file:

```
0 5,19 * * 1-5 /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o instant
```

- To create a Storage Checkpoint at 11:30 p.m., on the 1st and 15th day of each month, include the following entry in your `crontab` file:

```
30 23 1,15 * * /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o instant
```

- To create a Storage Checkpoint at 1:00 a.m. every Sunday while the database is offline, include the following entry in your `crontab` file:

```
0 1 * * 0 /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptcreate -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o offline
```

Displaying Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptdisplay`

You can use the `dbed_ckptdisplay` command to display the Storage Checkpoints associated with an Oracle database from the command line.

You can also use it to display fileset quota values.

Before displaying Storage Checkpoints, the following conditions must be met:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ You may be logged in as either the database administrator or root. If you execute the command as <code>root</code>, use the <code>-n</code> option. |
| Usage Notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC. ■ In addition to displaying the Storage Checkpoints created by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, <code>dbed_ckptdisplay</code> also displays other Storage Checkpoints (for example, Storage Checkpoints created by the Capacity Planning Utility and NetBackup). ■ The Status field identifies if the Storage Checkpoint is partial (P), complete (C), invalid (I), mounted (M), read-only (R), writable (W), or of type online (ON), offline (OF), instant (IN), or unknown (UN). ■ In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle environment, Database FlashSnap commands are integrated with Storage Checkpoint functionality. It is possible to display and mount Storage Checkpoints carried over with snapshot volumes to a secondary host. However limitations apply.
See “Mounting the snapshot volumes and backing up” on page 277. ■ See the <code>dbed_ckptdisplay(1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

To display Storage Checkpoints created by Veritas Storage foundation for Oracle

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptdisplay` command as follows to display information for Storage Checkpoints created by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptdisplay -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i
```

Storage Checkpoint	Creation Time	Status
Checkpoint_1239780697	Wed Apr 15 13:01:37 2009	C+R+ON
Checkpoint_974424522_wr001	Thu May 16 17:28:42 2009	C+R+ON

To display other Storage Checkpoints

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptdisplay` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptdisplay -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o other  
  
Storage Checkpoint                Creator    Location  
-----  
NetBackup_incr_PROD_955133480     NBU       /db01  
NetBackup_full_PROD_9551329 52       NBU       /db01
```

To display other Storage Checkpoints without updating the repository

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptdisplay` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptdisplay -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o other -n  
  
NetBackup_incr_PROD_955133480     NBU       /db01  
NetBackup_full_PROD_9551329     52 NBU       /db01
```

To display all Storage Checkpoints

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptdisplay` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptdisplay -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -o all  
  
Checkpoint_971672042             Sun May 15 13:55:53 2005      C+R+IN  
Checkpoint_903937870             Fri May 13 22:51:10 2005      C+R+ON  
Checkpoint_901426272             Wed May 11 16:17:52 2005      P+R+ON  
NetBackup_incr_PROD_955133480     NBU       /db01  
NetBackup_full_PROD_9551329     52 NBU       /db01
```

To display all Storage Checkpoints without updating the repository

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptdisplay` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptdisplay -S PROD \
-H /oracle/product/9i -o all -n

Checkpoint_971672042      Sun May 15 13:55:53 2005      C+R+IN
Checkpoint_903937870     Fri May 13 22:51:10 2005      C+R+ON
Checkpoint_901426272     Wed May 11 16:17:52 2005      P+R+ON

NetBackup_incr_PROD_955133480      NBU      /db01
NetBackup_full_PROD_9551329        52      NBU      /db01
```

To display fileset quota values

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptdisplay` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptdisplay -S PROD -c \
Checkpoint_903937870 -Q

Checkpoint_903937870      Wed Mar 19 9:12:20 2005      C+R+ON

Filesystem                HardLim   SoftLim   CurrentUse

/oradata1/indx1_1        100000   50000     2028

/oradata1/user1_1        100000   50000     2028

/oradata1/temp            150000   80000     2142

/oradata1/system1        150000   70000     3092
```

Mounting Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptmount`

You can use the `dbed_ckptmount` command to mount a Storage Checkpoint for the database from the command line.

Before mounting Storage Checkpoints, review the following information:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`.)

- Usage notes
- This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.
 - The `dbed_ckptmount` command is used to mount a Storage Checkpoint into the file system namespace. Mounted Storage Checkpoints appear as any other file system on the machine and can be accessed using all normal file system based commands.
 - Storage Checkpoints can be mounted as read-only or read-write. By default, Storage Checkpoints are mounted as read-only.
 - If the `rw` (read-write) option is used, `_wrxxx`, where `xxx` is an integer, will be appended to the Storage Checkpoint name.
 - If the specified mount point directory does not exist, then `dbed_ckptmount` creates it before mounting the Storage Checkpoint, as long as the Oracle database owner has permission to create it.
 - Database FlashSnap commands are integrated with Storage Checkpoint functionality. It is possible to display and mount Storage Checkpoints carried over with snapshot volumes to a secondary host. However limitations apply.
See [“Mounting the snapshot volumes and backing up”](#) on page 277.
 - See the `dbed_ckptmount(1M)` manual page for more information.

To mount Storage Checkpoints with the read/write option

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptmount` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptmount -S PROD -c Checkpoint_971672042 \  
-m /tmp/ckpt_rw -o rw
```

```
Creating Storage Checkpoint on /tmp/ckpt_rw/share/oradata with  
name Checkpoint_971672042_wr001
```

Unmounting Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptmount`

You can use the `dbed_ckptmount` command to unmount a Storage Checkpoint from the command line.

Before unmounting Storage Checkpoints, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`.)

- Usage notes
- This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.
 - The `dbed_ckptumount` command is used to unmount a mounted Storage Checkpoint from the file system namespace. Mounted Storage Checkpoints appear as any other file system on the machine and can be accessed using all normal file system based commands. When mounted Storage Checkpoints are not required, they can be unmounted.
 - See the `dbed_ckptumount(1M)` manual page for more information.

To unmount Storage Checkpoints

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptumount` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptumount -S PROD \  
-c Checkpoint_971672042_wr001
```

Creating and working with Storage Checkpoint allocation policies using `dbed_ckptpolicy`

You can use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command to create and administer Storage Checkpoint allocation policies for Multi-Volume File Systems (MVFSs). Storage Checkpoint allocation policies specify a list of volumes and the order in which to allocate data to them.

Before creating or working with Storage Checkpoint allocation policies, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`).

- Usage notes
- The `dbed_ckptpolicy` command can be used on file systems using disk layout Version 6 and beyond.
 - The VxVM volume set and VxFS Multi-Volume File System features must be enabled to use Storage Checkpoint allocation policies.
 - If you want to set a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy for a particular file system in the database, the VxFS Multi-Volume File System feature must be enabled on that file system.
 - The status of a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy is either `partial` or `complete`. A partial policy is one that does not exist on all file systems used by the database. A complete policy is one that exists on all file systems.
 - After an allocation policy is assigned to a Storage Checkpoint, the allocation mechanism attempts to satisfy requests from each device in the order specified in the allocation policy. If the request cannot be satisfied from any of the devices in the allocation policy, the request will fail, even if other devices that have space exist in the file system. Only devices listed in the policy can be allocated.
 - See the `dbed_ckptpolicy(1M)` manual page for more information.

To create a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptpolicy -S FLAS11r1 \  
-o create -p ckpt_sample
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
File System: /snap_data11r1 (MVS volumes: datavol-b4vset,datavol1,  
datavol2)  
Assigned Data Policy: - (MVS Volumes: )  
Assigned Meta Data Policy: - (MVS Volumes: )  
Please enter the volume name(s), separated by space, for the policy  
  
ckpt_sample [skip,quit]: datavol1
```

```
The following information will be used to create policy ckpt_sample  
ckpt_sample      /snap_data11r1      datavol1
```

This example assumes the following:

- One MVS file system is used for datafiles
- Filesystem `/snap_data11r1` is created on volume set `datavolvset`
- Volume set `datavolvset` contains volumes `datavol-b4vset,datavol1,datavol2`

To display Storage Checkpoint allocation policy within the database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID \  
-n -o display [-c storage_ckpt | -p ckpt_policy]
```

If `-p ckpt_policy` and `-c storage_ckpt` options are not specified, output similar to the following is displayed:

Policy Name	File System Coverage
ckpt	Complete
ckpt_data	Complete
ckpt_metadata	Complete
new_ckpt	Partial
ckpt_sample	Complete

If `-p ckpt_policy` option is specified, output similar to the following is displayed:

Policy Name	File System	MVS volumes
ckpt_sample	/mvsfs/v2	mvsv4
ckpt_sample	/mvsfs/v1	mvsv2

If the `-c storage_ckpt` option is specified, output similar to the following is displayed:

Storage Checkpoint	File System	Data Policy	Meta Data Policy
Checkpoint_1095125037	/mvsfs/v2	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata
Checkpoint_1095125037	/mvsfs/v1	ckpt_data	ckpt_metadata

To update a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID \  
-n -o update -p ckpt_policy
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
File System: /mvsfs/v2 (MVS volumes: mvsv4,mvsv5)  
Policy: ckpt_sample (MVS volumes: mvsv4)  
Please enter the volume name(s), separated by space,  
for the policy ckpt_sample [skip,quit]: mvsv5
```

```
File System: /mvsfs/v1 (MVS volumes: mvsv1,mvsv2,mvsv3)  
Policy: ckpt_sample (MVS volumes: mvsv2)  
Please enter the volume name(s), separated by space,  
for the policy ckpt_sample [skip,quit]: mvsv2,mvsv3
```

```
The following information will be used to create policy ckpt_sample  
ckpt_sample          /mvsfs/v2            mvsv5  
ckpt_sample          /mvsfs/v1            mvsv2,mvsv3
```

To assign a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command as follows to assign an allocation policy to a specified Storage Checkpoint:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID \  
-n -o assign -c ckpt_name -p ckpt_policy[,ckpt_metadata_policy]
```

To remove a Storage Checkpoint allocation policy

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptpolicy` command as follows to remove an allocation policy from a specified Storage Checkpoint:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptpolicy -S ORACLE_SID \  
-n -o remove -p ckpt_policy
```

Administering Storage Checkpoint quotas using `dbed_ckptquota`

You can use the `dbed_ckptquota` command to administer file system quotas for Storage Checkpoint for a database from the command line.

Before administering Storage Checkpoint quotas, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`).
 - The repository entry for the database must exist and the DBA must be the owner of all file systems to be affected.
- Usage notes
- See the `dbed_ckptquota(1M)` manual page for more information.

To set quota limits for all file systems in the database and enable quota enforcement

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptquota` command as follows to set the hard and soft limits for all file systems in the database and enable quota enforcement:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptquota -S PROD -H /ora10i \  
-o set=50000,40000,enable
```

To set quota limits for all file systems specified in a list file

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptquota` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptquota -S PROD -H /ora10i \  
-o set=25000,20000 -f quotacfg
```

To disable quota limits for a file system

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptquota` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptquota -S PROD -H /ora10i \  
-o disable /ora/testvol03
```

To display quota values for all file systems in the database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptquota` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptquota -S PROD -H /ora10i \  
-o display
```

Filesystem	Hardlimit	Softlimit	CurrentUse
/ora/prod	50000	40000	136
/ora/testvol01	25000	20000	128
/ora/testvol02	50000	40000	128
/ora/testvol03	50000	40000	0
/ora/testvol04	25000	20000	128
/ora/testvol05	50000	40000	128

The numbers in the “Hardlimit” and “Softlimit” columns represent the total numbers of file system blocks allowed.

`CurrentUse` displays the number of filesystem blocks currently used by all Storage Checkpoints in the filesystem. If there are no Storage Checkpoints, or if quotas have been disabled, `CurrentUse` will display 0.

Performing Storage Rollback using `dbed_ckptrollback`

You can use the `dbed_ckptrollback` command to rollback an Oracle database to a Storage Checkpoint.

Before performing a Storage Rollback, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged on as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle.`)

- Usage notes
- This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.
 - The `dbed_ckptrollback` command rolls an Oracle database back to a specified Storage Checkpoint. You can perform a Storage Rollback for the entire database, a specific tablespace, or list of datafiles.
Database rollback for the entire database requires that the database be inactive before Storage Rollback commences. The `dbed_ckptrollback` command will not commence if the Oracle database is active. However, to perform a Storage Rollback of a tablespace or datafile, only the tablespace or datafile to be rolled back must be offline (not the entire database).
 - You must run the `dbed_update` command after upgrading to Veritas Storage Foundation Product version: 5.0.1 for Oracle from a previous release. This will allow you to roll back to a Storage Checkpoint that was created with an earlier version of this product.
 - See the `dbed_ckptrollback(1M)` manual page for more information.

To roll back an Oracle database to a Storage Checkpoint

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptrollback` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptrollback -S PROD -H \  
/oracle/product/9i -c Checkpoint_903937870
```

To rollback a tablespace to a Storage Checkpoint

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptrollback` command with the `-T` option as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptrollback -S PROD -H \  
/oracle/product/9i -T DATA01 -c Checkpoint_903937870
```

If the Oracle database is running, you must take the tablespace offline before running this command. If the tablespace is online, the command will fail.

In the case of an instant Storage Checkpoint, rolling back a tablespace does not apply.

To rollback datafiles to a Storage Checkpoint

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptrollback` command with the `-F` option as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptrollback -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i\  
-F /share/oradata1/data01.dbf /share/oradata2/index01.dbf \  
-c Checkpoint_903937870
```

If the Oracle database is running, you must take the datafile offline before running this command. If the datafile is online, the command will fail.

In the case of an instant Storage Checkpoint, rolling back datafiles does not apply.

Removing Storage Checkpoints using `dbed_ckptremove`

You can use the `dbed_ckptremove` command to remove a Storage Checkpoint for an Oracle database at the command line.

Before removing Storage Checkpoints, the following conditions must be met:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | ■ You may be logged in as either the database administrator or <code>root</code> . |
| Usage notes | ■ This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.
■ The <code>dbed_ckptremove</code> command is used to remove a Storage Checkpoint from the file system, or file systems, it is associated with. The Storage Checkpoint must have been created using the GUI or the <code>dbed_ckptcreate(1M)</code> command.
■ You must unmount the Storage Checkpoint before you can remove it.
■ See the <code>dbed_ckptremove(1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

To remove Storage Checkpoints

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptremove` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptremove -S PROD \  
-c Checkpoint_971672042_wr001
```

Managing the Capacity Planning Utility using `dbed_ckptplan`

You can use the `dbed_ckptplan` command to manage the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility at the command line.

Before using `dbed_ckptplan` to manage the Capacity Planning utility, note the following:

- The `dbed_ckptplan` command is used to obtain estimates on space usage for Storage Checkpoints. It obtains estimates by managing scheduled Storage Checkpoint creation and summarizing statistics from these Storage Checkpoints. You can only use the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning Utility in an environment that contains no Storage Checkpoints created by other tools or products.
- See the `dbed_ckptplan(1M)`, `cron(1M)`, and `crontab(1M)` manual pages for more information.

To start the Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility

- ◆ Use the `dbed_ckptplan` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_ckptplan
```

The Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning utility starts up and displays the associated operations:

```
VERITAS Storage Foundation for Oracle (ORACLE_SID 'PROD')  
Menu: Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning
```

```
1 Create Capacity Planning Schedules  
2 Display Capacity Planning Schedules  
3 Display Space Usage Information  
4 Remove Capacity Planning Schedules
```

```
? Display Help About the Current Menu  
q Exit From Current Menu  
x Exit From Capacity Planning Utility
```

```
Select Operation to Perform:
```

Cloning the Oracle instance using `dbed_clonedb`

You can use the `dbed_clonedb` command to clone an Oracle instance using a Storage Checkpoint in either a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle or Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment.

In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle environment, cloning an existing database using a Storage Checkpoint must be done on the same host. In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment, cloning an existing database can be done on any node within the RAC database cluster. The clone database is

started as a single instance on the node on which the `dbed_clonedb` command is executed.

You have the option to manually or automatically recover the database when using the `dbed_clonedb` command:

- Manual (interactive) recovery, which requires using the `-i` option, of the clone database allows the user to control the degree of recovery by specifying which archive log files are to be replayed.
- Automatic (non-interactive) recovery, which is the default usage of the command, recovers the entire database and replays all of the archive logs. You will not be prompted for any archive log names.

Before cloning the Oracle instance, review the following information:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ You must first create a Storage Checkpoint. See “Creating Storage Checkpoints using <code>dbed_ckptcreate</code>” on page 328.■ You must be logged in as the database administrator.■ Make sure you have enough space and system resources to create a clone database on your system.■ A clone database takes up as much memory and machine resources as the primary database.■ In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment, the archive log destination is required to be on a Veritas Cluster File System file system. |
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.■ In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment, cloning an Oracle database with an instant Storage Checkpoint is not supported.■ The <code>dbed_clonedb</code> command is used to create a copy of a database, cloning all existing database files to new locations.■ The <code>ORACLE_SID</code> and <code>ORACLE_HOME</code> environment variables must be set to the primary database.■ It is assumed that the user has a basic understanding of the database recovery process.■ See the <code>dbed_clonedb(1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

[Table A-3](#) lists the options for cloning the Oracle database.

Table A-3 dbed_clonedb command options

Option	Description
-S CLONE_SID	Specifies the name of the new Oracle SID, which will be the name of the new database instance.
-m MOUNT_POINT	Indicates the new mount point of the Storage Checkpoint.
-c CKPT_NAME	Indicates the name of the Storage Checkpoint.
-i	Runs the command in interactive mode where you must respond to prompts by the system. The default mode is non-interactive. (Optional)
-o umount	Shuts down the clone database and unmounts the Storage Checkpoint file system.
-o restartdb	Mounts the Storage Checkpoint file system and starts the clone database. The -o restartdb option will not attempt to recover the clone database.
-d	Used with the -o umount option. If the -d option is specified, the Storage Checkpoint used to create the clone database will be removed along with the clone database.
-p pfile_modification_file	Specifies a file containing initialization parameters to be modified or added to the clone database's initialization parameter file prior to startup. The format is the same as the Oracle initialization parameter file.

To clone an Oracle instance with manual Oracle recovery

- ◆ Use the dbed_clonedb command as follows:

```
$ dbed_clonedb -S test2cln -m /tmp/test2cln \  
-c Checkpoint_1239013340 -i
```

```
Primary Oracle SID is FLAS11r1  
New Oracle SID is test2cln  
Cloning an online Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_1239013340.  
Mounting Checkpoint_1239013340 at /tmp/test2cln.  
All redo-log files found.  
Creating inittest2cln.ora from /tmp/vxdba.rel.tmp.27511/initFLAS11r1.ora.  
Altering db_name parameter in inittest2cln.ora.  
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in inittest2cln.ora.  
Altering control file locations in inittest2cln.ora.  
Copying inittest2cln.ora to /oracle/11gr1/dbs/inittest2cln.ora.
```

About to start up new database and begin reconfiguration.
Database test2cln is being reconfigured.
Did not see error regarding database name.
Altering clone database archive log directory.
Updating log_archive_dest in clone database init file.
Found archive log destination at /snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1.
The latest archive log(s) must now be applied. To apply
the logs, open a new window and perform the following steps:

1. You must copy required archive log(s) from primary to clone:
Primary archive logs in /snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1
Clone archive logs expected in /tmp/test2cln/snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1.
2. ORACLE_SID=test2cln; export ORACLE_SID # sh and ksh, OR
setenv ORACLE_SID test2cln #csh
3. /oracle/11gr1/bin/sqlplus /nolog
4. CONNECT / AS SYSDBA
5. RECOVER DATABASE UNTIL CANCEL USING BACKUP CONTROLFILE
6. enter the archive log(s) you would like to apply
7. EXIT

Press <Return> after you have completed the above steps

To clone an Oracle instance with automatic Oracle recovery

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ dbed_clonedb -S test1cln -m /tmp/test1cln \  
-c Checkpoint_1239012493
```

```
Primary Oracle SID is FLAS11r1  
New Oracle SID is test1cln  
Cloning an online Storage Checkpoint Checkpoint_1239012493.  
Mounting Checkpoint_1239012493 at /tmp/test1cln.  
All redo-log files found.  
Creating inittest1cln.ora from /tmp/vxdba.rel.tmp.25063/initFLAS11r1.ora.  
Altering db_name parameter in inittest1cln.ora.  
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in inittest1cln.ora.  
Altering control file locations in inittest1cln.ora.  
Copying inittest1cln.ora to /oracle/11gr1/dbs/inittest1cln.ora.  
About to start up new database and begin reconfiguration.  
Database test1cln is being reconfigured.  
Did not see error regarding database name.  
Starting automatic database recovery.  
Shutting down clone database.  
Altering clone database archive log directory.
```

```
Updating log_archive_dest in clone database init file.  
Found archive log destination at /snap_arch11r1/FLAS11r1.  
Mounting clone database.  
Resetting logs on new database test1cln.  
The sql script for adding tempfiles to test1cln is at /tmp/add_tf.test1cln.  
Database instance test1cln is up and running.
```

To shut down the clone database and unmount the Storage Checkpoint

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_clonedb -S NEW9 -o umount
```

To mount a Storage Checkpoint file system and start the clone database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_clonedb -S NEW9 -o restartdb
```

```
Database instance NEW9 is up and running.
```

To delete a clone database and the Storage Checkpoint used to create it

- ◆ Use the `dbed_clonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_clonedb -S NEW9 -o umount -d
```

Creating and working with snapplans using `dbed_vmchecksnap`

A snapplan specifies snapshot scenarios for a database (such as `online`, `instant`, or `offline`). You can name a snapplan file whatever you choose.

The `dbed_vmchecksnap` command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

You can use the `dbed_vmchecksnap -o setdefaults` option to create the snapplan and set default values for the parameters. You may then modify the snapplan file using a text editor.

You can also use the command to validate, copy, list, or remove a snapplan and check the storage to make sure it is configured appropriately for the Database FlashSnap feature.

See “[Validating a snapplan \(dbed_vmchecksnap\)](#)” on page 263.

Note: You must have the Enterprise Edition of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle to use this command.

Snapplan parameters

When using `dbed_vmchecksnap -o setdefaults` option to create the snapplan, the following parameters are set:

Table A-4 Snapplan parameters

Parameter	Value
SNAPSHOT_VERSION	Specifies the snapshot version for this release of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle
PRIMARY_HOST	Specifies the name of the host where the primary database resides. In Oracle RAC, PRIMARY_HOST specifies the host name of the CVM master node.
SECONDARY_HOST	Specifies the name of the host where the clone database will reside. In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle environment, if the primary and secondary hosts are the same, the snapshot volumes will not be deported. In Oracle RAC, SECONDARY_HOST specifies the host name of the CVM master node in a single host environment and the host name of the CVM slave node in an offhost environment.
PRIMARY_DG	Specifies the name of the Volume Manager disk group used by the primary database.
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX	The prefix to be attached to the primary disk groups to create corresponding snapshot disk groups. Snapshot disk groups will take the name using a combination of SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX and the corresponding primary disk group name. It's default value will be SNAP_
ORACLE_SID	The name of the Oracle database.

Table A-4 Snapplan parameters (*continued*)

Parameter	Value
ARCHIVELOG_DEST	<p>Specifies the full path of the archive logs.</p> <p>There are several archive log destinations that can be used for database recovery if you are multiplexing the archive logs. You must specify which archive log destination to use.</p> <p>It is recommended that you have the archive log destination on a separate volume if <code>SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG</code> is yes .</p>
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG	<p>yes or no</p> <p>Specifies whether to create a snapshot of the archive log volumes. Specify yes to split the archive log volume mirrors and deport them to the secondary host. When using the Oracle remote archive log destination feature to send the archive logs to the secondary host, you can specify no to save some space.</p> <p>Because the archive logs may not always be delivered to the secondary host reliably, it is recommended that you specify .</p>

Table A-4 Snapplan parameters (*continued*)

Parameter	Value
SNAPSHOT_MODE	<p>online or offline or instant</p> <p>Specifies whether the database snapshot should be online, offline, or instant.</p> <p>Only online snapshot mode is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.</p> <p>If the snapshot is created while the database is online, the <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> command will put the tablespaces into backup mode. After <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> finishes creating the snapshot, it will take the tablespaces out of backup mode, switch the log files to ensure that the extra redo logs are archived, and create a snapshot of the archived logs.</p> <p>If the database is offline, it is not necessary to put the tablespaces into backup mode.</p> <p>If the snapshot mode is <code>instant</code>, a snapshot will be taken regardless of whether the database is online or offline. If it is online <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> will skip putting the tablespace into backup mode.</p> <p>Note: If <code>SNAPSHOT_MODE</code> is set to <code>offline</code> or <code>instant</code>, a two-host configuration is required and the <code>-r relocate_path</code> option is not allowed.</p>
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR	<p>The default value is database and cannot be changed.</p> <p>Specifies the database object for which you want to create a snapshot.</p>
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG	<p>Specifies the name of the tag set to the plexes that will be used by <code>dbed_vmsnap</code> to take the snapshot. The <code>dbed_vmchecksnap</code> command will use this tag name to search if all the volumes in the database have the plexes with this tag name set.</p> <p>By default, <code>SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap</code>.</p>
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX	<p>Specifies the snapshot volume prefix. Use this variable to specify a prefix for the snapshot volumes split from the primary disk group. A volume name cannot be more than 32 characters.</p>

Table A-4 Snapplan parameters (*continued*)

Parameter	Value
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC	<p>yes or no</p> <p>By default, reverse resynchronization is off (set equal to <code>no</code>). If it is set to <code>yes</code>, this parameter allows you to restore the original volume from a snapshot. The original database, however, must be down for this operation.</p> <p>In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment, this parameter must be set to no.</p>
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR	<p>Specifies the number of plexes to be snapshot. The default value is 1.</p>

Creating a snapplan

Before creating a snapplan, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be the Oracle database administrator.
 - The disk group must be version 110 or later. For more information on disk group versions, see the `vxddg(1M)` manual page.
 - Be sure that a DCO and DCO volume are associated with the volume(s) for which you are creating the snapshot.
 - Snapshot plexes and their associated DCO logs should be on different disks than the original plexes, and should be configured correctly for creating snapshots by the system administrator.
 - Persistent FastResync must be enabled on the existing database volumes and disks must be assigned for the snapshot volumes.
 - The database must be running in archive log mode. Archive log mode is set in the Oracle initialization parameter file (`init.ora`).
 - `ORACLE_HOME` cannot reside on disk which will be used for snapshot.

- Usage notes
- This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.
 - In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC environment, the snapplan can be created on any node within the Oracle RAC cluster; the `-o validate` option can be run on the Veritas Volume Manager CVM master or slave node.
 - In a Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle environment, the snapplan must be created on the primary host.
 - After creating the snapplan using the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command, you can use a text editor to review and update the file, if necessary.
 - It is recommended that you create a local working directory to store your snapplans in. This applies to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle only.
 - See the `dbed_vmchecksnap(1M)` online manual page for more information.
 - If the `SNAPSHOT_MODE` for the database is set to `online`, the primary and secondary hosts can be the same. If the `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `offline` or `instant`, the primary and secondary hosts must be different. This applies to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle only.

[Table A-5](#) lists the options for creating a snapplan.

Table A-5 Options for creating a snapplan

Option	Description
<code>-s</code>	For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle database instance, for which a snapshot image will be created. For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle database instance where the Veritas Volume Manager CVM master node resides.
<code>-H</code>	Specifies the Oracle home directory that corresponds to the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> .
<code>-f SNAPPLAN</code>	Specifies the local path or the full path of the snapplan that you are creating.
<code>-o setdefaults</code>	Creates a default snapplan. This option can be used with the <code>-o validate</code> option to validate that the configuration is correct.

Table A-5 Options for creating a snapplan (*continued*)

Option	Description
<code>-o validate</code>	Validates each parameter in the snapplan and checks whether the snapshot volumes have been configured correctly for creating snapshots, and copies the snapplan to the repository.
<code>-o list</code>	Lists all the snapplans associated with a specific \$ORACLE_SID.
<code>-o copy</code>	Copies the snapplan from the repository to your current local directory.
<code>-o remove</code>	Removes the snapplan from the repository.
<code>-t SECONDARY_HOST</code>	Specifies the name of the host to which the snapshot image will be deported. If it is the same as the primary server, the snapshot volumes will not be deported. This argument is required if <code>-o setdefaults</code> is used. It is ignored if specified for <code>-o validate</code> . In Oracle RAC, <code>SECONDARY_HOST</code> specifies the host name for the CVM master node in a single host environment and the host name of the CVM slave node in an offhost environment.
<code>-p plex_tag</code>	Specifies the tag name for the plexes used to create the snapshot. This argument is required if <code>-o setdefaults</code> is used.

To create a snapplan and set the default values for a single host or an Oracle RAC cluster

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i \
-f snap1 -o setdefaults -t host1
```

```
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=host1
SECONDARY_HOST=host1
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDG
ORACLE_SID=PROD
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
```

```
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

To create a snapplan and set the default values in a two-host configuration

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD \  
-H /oracle/product/9i -f snap2 -o setdefaults -t host2
```

Warning: This procedure does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

```
Snapplan snap2 for PROD.
=====
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=host1
SECONDARY_HOST=host2
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDG
ORACLE_SID=PROD
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/mytest/arch
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

Validating a snapplan

You can use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command with the `-o validate` option to validate a snapplan and check the storage to make sure it is configured appropriately for the Database FlashSnap feature.

To validate a snapplan for a snapshot image to be used on the primary host (single instance Oracle)

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i \  
-f snap1 -o validate
```

```
PRIMARY_HOST is host1  
SECONDARY_HOST is host1  
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg is 110.  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODDg  
SNAPSHOT_MODE is online  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST is /prod_ar  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR is database  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG is yes  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar is mount on /dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/prod_ar.  
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot  
Volume prod_db on PRODDg is ready for snapshot.  
Original plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDg01.  
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDg02.  
SNAP_PRODDg for snapshot will include: PRODDg02  
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC is yes  
The snapplan snap1 has been created.
```

To validate a snapplan for a snapshot image to be used on the VxVM CVM master node (Oracle RAC)

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H /oracle/product/9i \  
-f snap1 -o validate
```

```
PRIMARY_HOST is host1  
SECONDARY_HOST is host1  
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg is 110.  
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODDg  
SNAPSHOT_MODE is online  
The database is running in archivelog mode.  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST is /prod_ar  
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR is database  
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG is yes  
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar is mount on /dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/prod_ar.
```

```
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot
Volume prod_db on PRODDg is ready for snapshot.
Original plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDg01.
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDg02.
SNAP_PRODDg for snapshot will include: PRODDg02
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC is no
The snapplan snap1 has been created.
```

To validate a snapplan for a snapshot image to be used on the secondary host

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -H \  
/oracle/product/9i -f snap2 -o validate
```

Warning: This procedure does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

```
PRIMARY_HOST is host1
SECONDARY_HOST is host2
The version of PRIMARY_DG-PRODDg is 110.
SNAPSHOT_DG is SNAP_PRODDg
SNAPSHOT_MODE is online
The database is running in archivelog mode.
ARCHIVELOG_DEST is /mytest/arch
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR is database
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG is yes
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/mytest/arch is mount on /dev/vx/dsk/PRODDg/rch.
Examining Oracle volume and disk layout for snapshot.
Volume prod_db on PRODDg is ready for snapshot.
Original plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDg01.
Snapshot plex and DCO log for prod_db is on PRODDg02.
SNAP_PRODDg for snapshot will include: PRODDg02
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC is yes
The snapplan snap2 has been created.
```

Listing and viewing snapplans using `dbed_vmchecksnap`

The `dbed_vmchecksnap` command allows you to list and view existing snapplans.

To list all available snapplans for a specific Oracle database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -o list
```

The following snapplan(s) are available for PROD:

SNAP_PLAN	SNAP_STATUS	DB_STATUS	SNAP_READY
snap1	init_full	-	yes
snap2	init_full	-	yes
snap3	init_full	-	yes

The command output displays all available snapplans, their snapshot status (SNAP_STATUS), database status (DB_STATUS), and whether a snapshot may be taken (SNAP_READY).

See [“Database FlashSnap snapshot status and database status”](#) on page 397.

To view a snapplan in a single-instance Oracle or Oracle RAC environment

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o list
```

```
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=host1
SECONDARY_HOST=host1
PRIMARY_DG=PRODDG
ORACLE_SID=PROD
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/prod_ar
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=yes
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1

STORAGE_INFO
PRODDG02
SNAP_PLEX=prod_db-02 prod_ar-02
```

```
STATUS_INFO  
SNAP_STATUS=init_full
```

Copying or removing a snapplan using `dbed_vmchecksnap`

The `dbed_vmchecksnap` command allows you to copy or remove snapplans.

To copy a snapplan from the repository to your local directory

- ◆ Assuming that the snapplan is not already present in your local directory, use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o copy  
  
Copying 'snap1' to '/export/snap_dir'
```

To remove a snapplan

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmchecksnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o remove  
  
The snapplan snap1 has been removed from the repository.
```

Creating, resynchronizing, or reverse resynchronizing a snapshot database using `dbed_vmsnap`

You can use the `dbed_vmsnap` command to create a snapshot image of a database. The snapshot can be used locally or on another host that is physically attached to the shared storage. You can also resynchronize the snapshot image back to the primary database.

The `dbed_vmsnap` command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC; however, only creating and resynchronizing a database are supported.

Before creating, resynchronizing, or reverse resynchronizing a snapshot database, review the following information:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged in as the Oracle database administrator.
 - You must create and validate a snapplan using `dbed_vmchecksnap` before you can create a snapshot image with `dbed_vmsnap`.

- Usage notes
- Creating and resynchronizing a database are supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC. Reverse resynchronization is not supported.
 - The `dbed_vmsnap` command can only be used on the primary host. In an Oracle RAC environment, the `dbed_vmsnap` command can only be used on the Veritas Volume Manager CVM volume.
 - If possible, do not share volumes between Oracle database files and other software.
 - When creating a snapshot volume, create the snapshot on a separate controller and on separate disks from the primary volume.
 - Make sure your archive log destination is separate from your Oracle database volumes.
 - Do not place any datafiles, including control files, in the `$ORACLE_HOME/dbs` directory.
 - Resynchronization speed varies based on the amount of data changed in both the primary and secondary volumes when the mirror is broken off.
 - See the `dbed_vmsnap(1M)` manual page for more information.

Options for the `dbed_vmsnap` command are:

Table A-6 `dbed_vmsnap` command options

Option	Description
<code>-S ORACLE_SID</code>	For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle database instance, for which a snapshot image will be created. For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle database instance where the Veritas Volume Manager CVM master node resides.
<code>-f SNAPPLAN</code>	Specifies the name of the snapplan you are using.
<code>-o snapshot [-F] resync</code>	Specifies whether to create a snapshot or synchronize the snapshot image with the current database image. The <code>-F</code> option prepares the volumes for being snapshot and forces snapshot creation.
<code>-o reverse_resync_begin</code>	Begins reverse resynchronization. Not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

Table A-6 dbed_vmsnap command options (*continued*)

Option	Description
-o reverse_resync_commit	Commits the reverse resynchronization changes after you have verified that they are acceptable. Not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.
-o reverse_resync_abort	Aborts reverse resynchronization and mounts the original volumes back with the file systems that are configured to use the volume. Not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

To create a snapshot image on the primary host (single instance Oracle)

- ◆ Use the dbed_vmsnap command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o snapshot
```

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2005-04-02 14:15:27
```

```
The database is running in archive log mode.
```

```
A snapshot of ORACLE_SID PROD is in DG SNAP_PRODdg.
```

```
Snapplan snap1 is used for the snapshot.
```

```
Oracle Database server is orasvr.
```

```
If -r <relocate_path> is used in dbed_vmclonedb, make sure  

<relocate_path> is created and owned by Oracle DBA. Otherwise,  

the following mount points need to be created and owned by  

Oracle DBA:
```

```
    /prod_db.
```

```
    /prod_ar.
```

```
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2004-04-02 14:16:11
```


To create a snapshot image on the CVM master node (Oracle RAC)

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmsnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o snapshot

dbed_vmsnap started at 2005-04-02 14:15:27
The database is running in archivelog mode.
A snapshot of ORACLE_SID PROD is in DG SNAP_PRODDG.
Snapplan snap1 is used for the snapshot.
Oracle Database server is orasvr.
If -r <relocate_path> is used in dbed_vmclonedb, make sure
<relocate_path> is created and owned by Oracle DBA. Otherwise,
the following mount points need to be created and owned by
Oracle DBA:

    /prod_db.
    /prod_ar.

dbed_vmsnap ended at 2004-04-02 14:16:11
```

To resynchronize a snapshot to your database

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmsnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o resync

dbed_vmsnap started at 2005-03-15 10:07:10

The option resync has been completed.

dbed_vmsnap ended at 2005-03-15 10:07:21
```

To resynchronize your database to a snapshot

- ◆ Assuming the mount point for the primary database was created and owned by the Oracle DBA user before mounting the VxFS file system, use the `dbed_vmsnap` command as follows:

```
$ dbed_vmsnap -S FLAS10r1 -f snaptst \  
-o reverse_resync_begin
```

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2009-07-30 14:06:38  
SFORA dbed_vmsnap WARNING V-81-5725 After reverse_resync_commit is  
performed, you need to recreate the Authentication Password  
File using the ORAPWD utility.
```

```
Database FLAS10r1 (SID=FLAS10r1) is running.  
The option reverse_resync_begin has been completed.  
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2009-07-30 14:12:22  
dbed_vmsnap started at  
2009-03-30 03:06:22
```

Warning: The procedure is not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

To abort resynchronizing your database to a snapshot

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmsnap` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S PROD -f snap1 -o \  
reverse_resync_abort
```

```
dbed_vmsnap started at 2004-04-02 16:16:44
```

```
The option reverse_resync_abort has been completed.
```

```
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2004-04-02 16:16:51
```

This option is only allowed when `reverse_resync_begin` has been run. It is not allowed if `reverse_resync_commit` has been executed.

Warning: The procedure is not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

To commit reverse resynchronization changes

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmsnap` command as follows:

Warning: Upon completion of reverse resynchronization, the content of the original database is discarded. Storage Checkpoints taken on either the original database or the clone database before or after the snapshot was created are discarded. Storage Checkpoints taken before the snapshot was created are preserved. The `dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_commit` command cannot be undone and should be used with extreme caution.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S FLAS10r1 -f snaptst \  
-o reverse_resync_commit  
  
dbed_vmsnap started at 2009-07-30 14:14:47  
Oracle instance FLAS10r1 successfully started.  
The database is not running in archivelog mode.  
SFORA dbed_vmsnap WARNING V-81-5725 After reverse_resync_commit is  
performed, you need to recreate the Authentication Password  
File using the ORAPWD utility.  
  
The option reverse_resync_commit has been completed.  
dbed_vmsnap ended at 2009-07-30 14:20:07
```

This option is only allowed after `reverse_resync_begin` has been run.

It is important to note that the procedure is not supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

Creating or shutting down a clone database using `dbed_vmclonedb`

You can use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command to create or shutdown a clone database on either the primary or secondary host using snapshot volumes from the primary host.

In an Oracle RAC environment, you can create or shutdown a clone database using snapshot volumes on the CVM master or slave node.

Before creating or shutting down a clone database, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must be logged in as the Oracle database administrator to use `dbed_vmclonedb` command.
 - Before you can use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command, you must create and validate a snapplan and create a snapshot.
 - The volume snapshot must contain the entire database.
 - The system administrator must provide the database administrator with access to the necessary volumes and mount points.
 - Before you can use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command with the `-r relocate_path` option (which specifies the initial mount point for the snapshot image), the system administrator must create the mount point and then change the owner to the Oracle database administrator. This parameter is required for Oracle RAC.
 - If `SNAPSHOT_MODE` is set to `offline` or `instant`, a two-host configuration is required and `-r relocate_path` is not allowed. (This does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.)
- Usage notes
- This command is supported by Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.
 - For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, the `dbed_vmclonedb` command can be run from on the CVM master or slave node.
 - For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, the `dbed_vmclonedb` command can be used on the secondary host.
 - In a single-host configuration, the primary and secondary hosts are the same. In an Oracle RAC environment, the primary and secondary hosts are set to the CVM master node.
 - In single-host and Oracle RAC configurations, `-r relocate_path` is required.
 - In a two-host configuration, the `server_name=svr_name` option is required. This option is required in an Oracle RAC environment as well.
 - Database FlashSnap commands are integrated with Storage Checkpoint functionality. It is possible to display and mount Storage Checkpoints carried over with snapshot volumes to a secondary host. However limitations apply.
 - See the `dbed_vmclonedb(1M)` manual page for more information.

Options for `dbed_vmclonedb` are:

Table A-7 dbed_vmclonedb options

Option	Description
-S ORACLE_SID	For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle, specifies the ORACLE_SID, which is the name of the Oracle database instance, for which a snapshot image will be created. For Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC, specifies the ORACLE_SID, which is the name of the Oracle database instance where the Veritas Volume Manager CVM master node resides.
-o mount	Mounts the file systems so you can use them to do a backup.
-o mountdb	Starts the database to allow manual database recovery.
-o recoverdb	Automatically recovers the database.
-o restartdb	Restarts the database if the clone database is shut down. A clone database must exist to use the -o restartdb option.
-o update_status	Updates the database status information in the repository.
-o umount	Shuts down the clone database and unmounts all snapshot files.
new_sid=new_sid	Specifies the new ORACLE_SID for the snapshot image. This is a required argument.
server_name=	Specifies the host on which the primary Oracle instance runs.
-f SNAPPLAN	Indicates the name of the snapplan that you are using.
-H ORACLE_HOME	Specifies the Oracle home directory that corresponds to the ORACLE_SID.
-p pfile_modification_file	Specifies a file containing initialization parameters to be modified or added to the clone database's initialization parameter file prior to startup. The format is the same as the Oracle initialization parameter file.

Table A-7 dbed_vmclonedb options (*continued*)

Option	Description
-r relocate_path	<p>Specifies the initial mount point for the snapshot image.</p> <p>If you are creating a clone in a single-host configuration or cloning an Oracle RAC database, -r is required. Otherwise, it is an optional argument.</p> <p>If -r relocate_path is used with the -o mount mountdb reccoverdb options, it will also be required to restart or unmount the clone database.</p> <p>Note: Do not use -r relocate_path if the SNAPSHOT_MODE parameter is set to instant or offline.</p>

To clone the primary database automatically in a single-host configuration or a RAC cluster

- ◆ Use the dbed_vmclonedb command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \
-o recoverdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap1 -r /clone

dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-05-26 09:29:39

Editing remote_login_passwordfile in initclone1.ora.

All redo-log files found.

Altering instance_name parameter in initclone1.ora.

Altering instance_number parameter in initclone1.ora.

Altering thread parameter in initclone1.ora.

Database CLONE1 (SID=clone1) is running.

dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-05-26 09:32:16
```

To clone the primary database on a secondary host automatically in a two-host configuration

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \  
-o recoverdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap2  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-05-26 09:29:39  
  
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in initclone1.ora.  
All redo-log files found.  
  
Altering instance_name parameter in initclone1.ora.  
  
Altering instance_number parameter in initclone1.ora.  
  
Altering thread parameter in initclone1.ora.  
  
Database CLONE1 (SID=clone1) is running.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-05-26 09:32:16
```

Warning: This procedure does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

To clone the primary database manually in a single-host configuration or a RAC cluster

- 1 Mount the file systems.
- 2 Create a clone using the `dbed_vmclonedb` command.

```
$ dbed_vmclonedb -S FLAS11r1 -o mountdb \  
new_sid=test5cln,server_name=slia19 -f snap1 -r /tmp/test5cln  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-04-07 18:16:01  
Editing remote_login_passwordfile in inittest5cln.ora.  
All redo-log files found.  
Altering instance_name parameter in inittest5cln.ora.  
Altering instance_number parameter in inittest5cln.ora.  
Altering thread parameter in inittest5cln.ora.  
Database TEST5CLN (SID=test5cln) is in recovery mode.  
  
If the database test5cln is recovered manually, you must run  
dbed_vmclonedb -o update_status to change the snapshot status.  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-04-07 18:17:58
```

- 3 Recover the database manually.
- 4 Update the snapshot status (`database_recovered`) for the clone database on the primary host after manual recovery has been completed.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -o
update_status,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap1 -r /clone

dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-02 15:19:16

The snapshot status has been updated.

dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-02 15:19:42
```

To clone the primary database manually in a two-host configuration

- 1 Mount the file systems.
- 2 Create a clone using the `dbed_vmclonedb` command.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \
-o mountdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap2

dbed_vmclonedb started at 2009-05-27 23:17:09

Editing remote_login_passwordfile in initclone1.ora.

All redo-log files found.

Altering instance_name parameter in initclone1.ora.

Altering instance_number parameter in initclone1.ora.

Altering thread parameter in initclone1.ora.

Database CLONE1 (SID=clone1) is in recovery mode.

If the database clone1 is recovered manually, you must run
dbed_vmclonedb -o update_status to change the snapshot status.
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2009-05-27 23:18:50
```


- 3 Recover the database manually.
- 4 Update the snapshot status (`database_recovered`) for the clone database on the secondary host after manual recovery has been completed.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -o \  
update_status,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap2  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-06 09:22:27  
  
The snapshot status has been updated.  
  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-06 09:22:40
```

Warning: This procedure does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

To shut down the clone database and unmount all snapshot file systems in a single-host configuration or in a RAC cluster

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -o umount,new_sid=NEWPROD,\  
server_name=orasvr -f snap1 -r /clone  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-02 15:11:22  
  
Unmounting /clone/prod_db.  
  
Unmounting /clone/prod_ar.  
  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-02 15:11:47
```

To shut down the clone database and unmount all snapshot file systems in a two-host configuration

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -o umount,new_sid=NEWPROD,\  
server_name=orasvr -f snap2
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-09 23:09:21
```

```
Unmounting /clone/arch.
```

```
Unmounting /clone/prod_db.
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-09 23:09:50
```

This shuts down the clone database, unmounts file systems, and departs the snapshot disk group for a clone on a secondary host.

Warning: This procedure does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

To restart a clone database in a single-host configuration or a RAC cluster

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \  
-o restartdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap1 -r /clone
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2004-04-02 15:14:49
```

```
Oracle instance NEWPROD successfully started.
```

```
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2004-04-02 15:15:19
```

To restart a clone database in a two-host configuration

- ◆ Use the `dbed_vmclonedb` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmclonedb -S PROD \  
-o restartdb,new_sid=NEWPROD,server_name=orasvr -f snap2  
  
dbed_vmclonedb started at 2003-04-09 23:03:40  
  
Oracle instance NEWPROD successfully started.  
  
dbed_vmclonedb ended at 2003-04-09 23:04:50
```

Warning: This procedure does not apply to Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC.

Managing log files using `edgetmsg2`

You can use the `edgetmsg2` utility to manage message log files. You can use the `edgetmsg2` utility to write a message to a log file or to the console, read the log file and print to the console, and display the available log files.

Before managing log files with the `edgetmsg2` command, review the following information:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ You must be logged in as the Database Administrator or root to use this command. |
| Usage notes | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The default log file for a database is located in the following directory:
<code>/etc/vx/vxdbed/logs/sfua_database.log</code>
where <i>database</i> is the <code>ORACLE_SID</code>. ■ By default, only messages with a severity equal to or greater than <code>ERROR</code> will be logged. ■ See the <code>edgetmsg2(1M)</code> manual page for more information. |

[Table A-8](#) lists options for `edgetmsg2`.

Table A-8 `edgetmsg2` options

Option	Description
<code>-s set_num</code>	Specifies the message catalogue set number. The default is 1.

Table A-8 edgetmsg2 options (*continued*)

Option	Description
-M msgid[:severity]	Specifies the message ID and severity to be printed.
-f msg_catalog logfile log_directory	Specifies the message catalogue path, log file, or log directory.
-v severity severity	Overwrites the minimum log severity or creates a severity filter. The severity values are either 0-8 or 100-108.
-p	Pauses the cursor at the end of a display message. By default, a line feed is added to each display message. Use the -p option to indicate that no line feed is to be added.
-o list [,suppress_time]	Displays the content of a log file. You can specify ,suppress_time to exclude time information in the utility output.
-o report[,no_archive]	Displays the available log files. You can specify ,no_archive to exclude log files from the utility output.
-t from_time[,to_time]	Reduces the length of the utility output by specifying the time range to include. This option must be used together with the -o list option. Use the following format: yyy-mm-dd HH:MM:SS.
-S ORACLE_SID	Specifies the ORACLE_SID for an Oracle database.
"default format string"	Specifies the C language printf() format string.
[args]	Specifies arguments for the format string conversion characters.

To print a message

- ◆ Use the edgetmsg2 command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/edgetmsg2 [-s set_num] \  

[-M msgid[:severity]] \  

[-f msg_catalog] [-v severity] [-p] [-m value] \  

["default format string" [args]]
```

To read a message log file

- ◆ Use the `edgetmsg2` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/edgetmsg2 -o list[,suppress_time] \  
-S ORACLE_SID | [-f logfile] \  
[-v severity] [-t from_time,to_time]
```

To list available log files

- ◆ Use the `edgetmsg2` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/edgetmsg2 -o report[,no_archive] \  
[-f log_directory]
```

Displaying I/O mapping and statistics using `vxstorage_stats`

You can use the `vxstorage_stats` command to display I/O mapping and statistics about Veritas File System files one file at a time. The statistics are recorded only for VxFS files and VxVM volumes. These statistics show I/O activity.

Before displaying I/O mapping and statistics, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You may be logged in as either the database administrator or `root`.

Command usage for `vxstorage_stats` is as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/vxstorage_stats [-m] [-s] [-i interval -c count ] \  
-f file_name
```

[Table A-9](#) lists options for the `vxstorage_stats` command.

Table A-9 vxstorage_stats command options

Option	Description
<code>-m</code>	Displays the I/O topology for the specified file.
<code>-s</code>	Displays the file statistics for the specified file.
<code>-c count</code>	Specifies the number of times to display statistics.
<code>-i interval</code>	Specifies the interval frequency for displaying updated I/O statistics.
<code>-f filename</code>	Specifies the file to display I/O mapping and statistics for.

To display I/O mapping information

- ◆ Use the `vxstorage_stats` command with the `-m` option as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/vxstorage_stats -m -f \  
/oradata/system01.dbf
```

For file type (`fi`), the `SIZE` column is number of bytes, and for volume (`v`), plex (`pl`), sub-disk (`sd`), and physical disk (`da`), the `SIZE` column is in 512-byte blocks. Stripe sizes are given in sectors.

To display the entire I/O mapping and statistics for each I/O stack

- ◆ Use the `vxstorage_stats` command with the `-m` and `-s` options as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/vxstorage_stats -m -s -f /data/system01.dbf
```

For example, to display statistics two times with a time interval of two seconds:

```
$ /opt/VRTSdbed/bin/vxstorage_stats -s -i2 -c2 \  
-f /snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/system01.dbf
```

I/O OPERATIONS		I/O BLOCKS (512 byte)			AVG TIME (ms)				
OBJECT	READ	WRITE	B_READ	B_WRITE	AVG_RD	AVG_WR			
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/system01.dbf			27740	7370	255998	78336	2.10	2511688.04	
/dev/vx/rdisk/flashdg12/datavol			289925	185184	4472384	4306008	1.03	9.36	
vxvm:flashdg12/datavol-01			310820	185184	9821504	4306008	1.22	9.16	
/dev/rdisk/c5t1d0			310820	185184	9821504	4306008	1.22	9.16	
vxvm:flashdg12/datavol-02			0	143456	0	2115024	0.00	0.55	
/dev/rdisk/c5t3d0			40	143458	129	2115072	0.18	0.55	

I/O OPERATIONS		I/O BLOCKS (512 byte)			AVG TIME (ms)				
OBJECT	READ	WRITE	B_READ	B_WRITE	AVG_RD	AVG_WR			
/snap_data11r1/FLAS11r1/system01.dbf	0		0	0	0	0	0.00	0.00	
/dev/vx/rdisk/flashdg12/datavol			1	3	16	48	0.19	0.67	
vm:flashdg12/datavol-01			1	3	16	48	0.16	0.58	
/dev/rdisk/c5t1d0			1	3	16	48	0.16	0.54	
vxvm:flashdg12/datavol-02			0	3	0	48	0.00	0.63	
/dev/rdisk/c5t3d0			0	3	0	48	0.00	0.63	

Mapping tablespaces to disks using `dbed_analyzer`

The `dbed_analyzer` command provides tablespace-to-physical disk mapping information for all the datafiles in a specified database. In addition, `dbed_analyzer` provides information about the percentage of disk space being used by a tablespace.

Because the `dbed_analyzer` command output can be long, it is written to a file for easier viewing. The file name is `dbed_analyzer_${ORACLE_SID}.log` and it is located `/tmp`.

Before mapping tablespaces to disks, the following conditions must be met:

- Prerequisites
- You must log in as the database administrator (typically, the user ID `oracle`).
- Usage notes
- For more information, see the `dbed_analyzer(1M)` online manual page.

[Table A-10](#) lists options for the `dbed_analyzer` command.

Table A-10 `dbed_analyzer` command options

Option	Description
<code>-o sort=tbs</code>	Provides the layout of the specified tablespaces on the physical disk as well as the percentage of disk space they are using.
<code>-o sort=disk</code>	Provides the name of the disks containing the specified tablespaces as well as the percentage of disk space the tablespaces are using.
<code>-f filename</code>	Specifies the name of a file containing a list of the tablespaces for which to obtain mapping information.
<code>-t tablespace</code>	Specifies the name of a tablespace for which to obtain mapping information.

To obtain storage mapping information sorted by tablespace

- ◆ Use the `dbed_analyzer` command with the `-f filename` and `-o sort=tbs` options:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_analyzer -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME \  
-o sort=tbs -f filename
```

Output similar to the following is displayed in the file `filename`:

TBSNAME	DATAFILE	DEVICE	SIZE (sectors)
SYSTEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/PROD.dbf	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	819216
TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	2048016
SYSAUX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/sysaux.dbf	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	819216
ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
PRODIG_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/prodid_idx_3000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ORDERS	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/orders_4000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
ORD_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/ord_idx_10000	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1021968
TY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7002	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	1024016
ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1001	c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	4096016

To obtain storage mapping information sorted by disk

- ◆ Use the `dbed_analyzer` command with the `-f filename` and `-o sort=disk` options:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_analyzer -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME -o \
sort=disk -f filename
```

Output similar to the following is displayed in the file `filename`:

DEVICE	TBSNAME	DATAFILE	SIZE(sectors)
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	SYSTEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/PROD.dbf	819216
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	TEMP	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/temp_20001	2048016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	SYSAUX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/sysaux.dbf	819216
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	PRODIG_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/prodid_idx_3000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ORDERS	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/orders_4000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ORD_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/ord_idx_10000	1021968
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITM_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/itm_idx_2001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_1	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_1_5001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	QTY_IDX	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/qty_idx_7002	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ROLL_2	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/roll_2_6001	1024016
c3t21000020379DBD5Fd0	ITEM	/usr1/oracle/rw/DATA/item_1001	4096016

Defining database parameters for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_admin`

Running the `dbdst_admin` command defines parameters for the entire database. You must run this command at least once to define the database parameters for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering. Three pre-defined storage classes will be created (PRIMARY, SECONDARY, and BALANCE). Parameter values are stored in the SFDB repository.

Set at least one of the parameters in `maxclass`, `minclass`, `statinterval`, `sweepetime`, `sweepinterval`, `purgetime`, or `purgeinterval`, to enable default values. Add at least one class to enable the default classes.

Before defining your database parameteres using the `dbdst_admin` command, review the following information:

- Prerequisites**
- An Oracle database must be up and running.
 - Run the `dbed_update` command before running any of the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands. You should also run the `dbed_update` command if any of the database files change. Because the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands retrieve database information from the repository, the repository must be up to date.
 - Change the owner of the mount point on which you want to implement Database Dynamic Storage Tiering to oracle.
- Usage notes**
- Only the Oracle database administrator can run Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands.
 - If you are using any of the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering commands in a high availability (HA) environment, the time on each system in the cluster must be synchronized.
 - Create the volumes that you want to add to the multi-volume file system in the same disk group as the file system volume. As root, use the following command to change the owner of each volume:
- ```
/opt/VRTS/bin/vxedit -g disk_group \
set user=oracle volume
```

[Table A-11](#) lists the options for the Oracle `dbdst_admin` command.

**Table A-11** Oracle `dbdst_admin` command options

| Option                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-S \$ORACLE_SID</code> | Specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle instance.                                                                                               |
| <code>list</code>            | Lists all the Database Dynamic Storage Tiering parameters of the database, including class name and description. This option should be used exclusively from the other options. |
| <code>maxclass=</code>       | Maximum number of storage classes allowed in the database. Default value is 4.                                                                                                  |
| <code>minclass=</code>       | Minimum number of storage classes allowed in the database. Default value is 2.                                                                                                  |
| <code>sweepinterval=</code>  | Interval for file sweeping for file relocation. Default value is 1, which means one per day. If this value is set to 0, all scheduled sweep tasks will become unscheduled.      |

**Table A-11** Oracle dbdst\_admin command options (*continued*)

| Option         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sweeptime=     | Time per day for the file sweep to take place. Times are entered in 24-hour periods and should list hour: minute. For example, 8:30 AM is represented as 08:30 and 10:00 PM is represented as 22:00. Default value is 22:00.                                                                        |
| statinterval=  | Interval in minutes for gathering file statistics. Default value is 30, which represents every 30 minutes. If this value is set to 0, all scheduled tasks will become unscheduled.                                                                                                                  |
| purgeinterval= | Number of days after which the file statistics in the repository will be summarized and purged. Default value is 30. It is recommended that you set your purge interval sooner because you will not be able to view any statistics until the first 30-day interval is over, if you use the default. |
| purgetime=     | Time per day for the file purge to take place. Times are entered in 24-hour periods and should list hour: minute. For example, 8:30 AM is represented as 08:30 and 8:00 PM is represented as 20:00. Default value is 20:00.                                                                         |
| addclass=      | Parameter that allows you to add a class to a database. The information should be entered as <i>class:"description"</i> , where <i>class</i> represents the class name and <i>description</i> is a string of up to 64 characters enclosed by double quotes used to describe the class.              |
| rmclass=       | Parameter that allows you to remove a class from a database. Enter the class name as it appears in the database.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| definechunk=   | Defines a chunksize in bytes for a specific storage class to extent balance the files in this storage class. The information should be entered as <i>classname: valid chunksize value</i> . Valid chunksizes are 128k, 256k, 512k or 1m bytes.                                                      |

### To define database parameters

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S ORACLE_SID-o setup-parameters,\
[storage_class operations]
setup-parameters
 maxclass=number,minclass=number,statinterval=minutes,\
 sweeptime=HH:MM,sweepinterval=days
 purgetime=HH:MM,purgeinterval=days
storage_class operations
 addclass=classname:"description", rmclass=classname
 definechunk=classname:128k | 256k | 512k | 1m
```

For example, to add a class called `tier1` for database `PROD`, and to set up a purge interval of one, meaning that the file statistics will be gathered for one day and then summarized and purged, use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S PROD -o addclass=tier1:"Fast Storage",\
purgeinterval=1
```

## Setting up storage classes for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_admin`

The `dbdst_admin` command allows you to add, remove, or display storage classes required for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering.

### To add a storage class

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o addclass=class:\
"description"
```

For example, to create a storage class named `"FAST"` for an EMC array, use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o addclass=FAST:\
"fast EMC array"
```

### To remove a storage class

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$dbdst_admin -S FLAS11r1 -o rmclass=class
```

For example, to remove a storage class called "SLOW," use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$dbdst_admin -S FLAS11r1 -o rmclass=SLOW
```

### To display existing storage classes and properties

◆ Use the `dbdst_admin` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S $ORACLE_SID -o list
```

#### For example

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_admin -S FLAS10r1 -o list
```

```
TSDB Parameters for FLAS10r1
```

```

```

```
Maxclass = 4
Minclass = 2
Stat-Interval = 30
Sweep Information = 22HH:0MM, Frequency = 1
Purge Information = 20HH:0MM, Frequency = 30
```

```
TSDB Storage Classes for FLAS10r1
```

```

```

```
Name = PRIMARY : Description = PRIMARY Storage Class
Name = SECONDARY : Description = SECONDARY Storage Class
Name = BALANCE : Description = BALANCE Storage Class
```

## Converting a VxFS file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_convert`

To convert your existing VxFS file system to a VxFS multi-volume file system, you must convert a single volume to a volume set.

When you convert to a volume set using the `dbdst_convert` command, the original volume will be renamed to a new volume name. The mount device name will become the new volume set name. Creating the new volume set name with the mount device name nullifies the need to rename the mount device in various locations.

Before converting to a volume set, make sure the following conditions have been met:

- |               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The database must be shutdown.</li><li>■ Create at least one additional volume.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Usage notes   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ You must convert the single-volume file system on which you plan to implement Database Dynamic Storage Tiering.</li><li>■ The file system can be mounted or unmounted when you run the <code>dbdst_convert</code> command.</li><li>■ If the file system has <i>n</i> volumes, volumes 1 through <i>n</i>-1 will be placed in the storage class "PRIMARY" and volume <i>n</i> will be placed in the storage class "SECONDARY."</li><li>■ The volumes specified when running the conversion must be in the same disk group as the mount device.</li></ul> |

### To convert a mount device from a single volume device to a volume set

- 1 Use the `dbdst_convert` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_convert -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device -v \
volume_name, volume_name
```

- 2 Bring database objects online.

For example, to convert a volume-based oradata file system to a Database Dynamic Storage Tiering-ready volume set file system on mount device `/dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata`, use the `dbdst_convert` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_convert -S PROD -M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata -v \
new_vol1, new_vol2
```

After conversion, you will have a volume set named `oradata` containing three volumes (`oradata_b4vset`, `new_vol1`, and `new_vol2`). The file system will have two storage classes defined as `PRIMARY` and `SECONDARY`. The volumes will be assigned as follows:

- `PRIMARY` storage class will contain volumes `oradata_b4vset` and `new_vol1`.
- `SECONDARY` storage class will contain volume `new_vol2`.

## Classifying volumes into a storage class for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_classify`

Before creating a DST policy or manually moving data, assign classes to your volumes.

Before assigning classes to volumes, review the following information:

- Usage notes
- You must convert your VxFS file system to a multi-volume file system first.
  - Storage classes must be registered using the `dbdst_admin` command before assigning classes to volumes.
  - The database can be online or offline.

### To classify a volume

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_classify` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device \
-v volume_name:class[,volume_name:class]
```

For example, to assign the class "FAST" to volume `new_vol1`, use the `dbdst_classify` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_classify -S $ORACLE_SID -M /dev/vx/dsk/oradg/oradata \
-v new_vol1:FAST
```

## Displaying free space on storage classes for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_show_fs`

To see the free space, class information, and volume information on your storage classes, use the `dbdst_show_fs` command.

[Table 11-2](#) shows the Oracle `dbdst_show_fs` command options.

**Table A-12** Oracle `dbdst_show_fs` command options

| Option                       | Description                                                                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-S \$ORACLE_SID</code> | Specifies the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> , which is the name of the Oracle instance. |
| <code>-o volume</code>       | Displays the free space on volumes in each class.                                 |
| <code>-m</code>              | Specifies the mount point.                                                        |

Before displaying the free space on a storage class, review the following information:

- Prerequisites
- Make sure the file system is mounted.
- Usage notes
- See the `dbdst_show_fs(1M)` manual page.

### To display the free space on a storage class

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_show_fs` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_show_fs -S $ORACLE_SID -o volume \
-m mount_point

$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_show_fs -S FLAS10r2 -m /snap_data10r2

MAXCLASS=4
MINCLASS=2
TOTAL CLASS=3

VOLUME NAME SIZE USED AVAILABLE

CLASS=FAST
datavol1 1024000 20692 1003308

CLASS=MEDIUM
datavol2 4608000 221075 4386925

CLASS=PRIMARY
datavol-b4vset 3072000 2765061 306939
```

## Adding new volumes to a storage class for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_addvol`

Use the `dbdst_addvol` command to add volumes to a volume set.

Before adding a volume, review the following information:

- Usage notes
- The database must be inactive when adding volumes to a storage class.

### To add a volume to a volume set

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_addvol` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_addvol -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device \
-v volume_name:class[,volume_name:class]
```



## Removing volumes from a storage class for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_rmvol`

You may need to remove a volume from a volume set. To remove a volume, use the `dbdst_rmvol` command.

Before removing a volume, review the following information:

- Usage notes
- The database must be inactive when removing volumes from a storage class.
  - Only a volume that does not contain any file system data can be removed

### To remove a volume from a volume set

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_rmvol` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_rmvol -S $ORACLE_SID -M mount_device \
-v volume_name[, volume_name]
```

## Starting or stopping I/O statistic collection for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_fstat`

To start or stop I/O statistic collection on one or more files in the database, the `dbdst_fstat` command is used.

See the `dbdst_fstat(1M)` manual page.

Use the `dbdst_fstat` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o start|stop file-name
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o start|stop -f spec-file
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o start|stop -t tablespace-name
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o stopall|list
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S orcldb -o start /datavol/orcldb/system01.dbf

$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o stop -t SYSAUX

$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S ORACLE_SID -o list
```

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_fstat -S FLAS2 -o list
```

```
Task Name Status
```

```

```

```
Statistic Datafile

/datavol/orclpdb/system01.dbf
```

## Relocating files for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_file_move`

Use the `dbdst_file_move` command to relocate flashback logs, archive logs, datafiles, and external files if the files are no longer being used frequently.

[Table A-13](#) shows the Oracle `dbdst_file_move` command options.

**Table A-13** Oracle `dbdst_file_move` command options

| Option                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-o archive[n]   flashback</code> | Specifies which archive logs or Flashback logs to move. Do not use this option with the <code>-f</code> option. Flashback is supported by Oracle 10g or later.                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>-o external   datafile</code>    | Specifies whether to move external files or datafiles. Use this option with the <code>-f</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>-f listfile</code>               | Specifies a listfile that contains a list of files or directories to be moved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>-c class[:days]</code>           | Specifies the storage class to which the files should be moved. If the <code>days</code> option is used, the files will be moved to the class specified if they have not been accessed in the number of days specified. Do not specify <code>days</code> if you are using the <code>-o datafile</code> option. |
| <code>-R</code>                        | Removes the policy for the specified object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

Before relocating a file, review the following information:

- Usage notes
- Multiple partitions cannot reside on the same tablespace.

### To relocate a file

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_file_move` command as follows:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_file_move -S $ORACLE_SID -o datafile \
-f listfile -c storage_class
```

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_file_move -S FLAS10r2 -o datafile -f /home/extern
-c MEDIUM
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

## Relocating tablespaces for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_tbs_move`

Use the `dbdst_tbs_move` command to move tablespaces to the desired storage class. The command queries the SFDB repository for the tablespace file names, then performs a one-time move based on your immediate requirements.

### To relocate a tablespace

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_tbs_move` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_tbs_move -S $ORACLE_SID -t tablespace \
-c class
```

where

- *tablespace* indicates which tablespace to move.
- *class* indicates to which class the tablespace should be moved.

For example:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_tbs_move -S FLAS10r2 -t MYTBS \
-c MEDIUM
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

## Relocating table partitions for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_partition_move`

Use the `dbdst_partition_move` to move table partitions. The command queries the database to validate the names of the table and partition. From this information, a list of datafiles is derived and a one-time move of the files to the desired class is executed.

Before relocating a table partition, review the following information:

**Prerequisites**      The database must be up when you run the `dbdst_partition_move` command.

### To relocate a table partition

◆ Use the `dbdst_partition_move` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S $ORACLE_SID -T table_name \
-p partition_name -c class
```

where

- `-T` indicates the table name.
- `-p` indicates the partition name.
- `-c` indicates the class to which the table partition is to be moved.

For example, to move the P3 partition of the EMP1 table to storage class MEDIUM, use the `dbdst_partition_move` as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_partition_move -S FLAS10r2 -T EMP1 \
-p P3 -c MEDIUM
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

## Using preset policies for Database Dynamic Storage Tiering using `dbdst_preset_policy`

Use the `dbdst_preset_policy` command to set a policy based on file name patterns before the files are created.

Use the `dbdst_preset_policy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_preset_policy -S $ORACLE_SID -d directory \
-P pattern_spec
```

**Table A-14** dbdst\_preset\_policy command options

| Option                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -d <i>directory</i>    | Indicates the directory on which the placement policy will be applied.                                                                                                                                                              |
| -e                     | Enforces the file system of the specified directory. Use this option if there was an error in the previous enforcement that has been corrected and needs to be enforced again.                                                      |
| -R                     | Removes all pattern-based placement policies related to this directory.                                                                                                                                                             |
| -l                     | Lists the existing file placement that is set to the specified directory.                                                                                                                                                           |
| -P <i>pattern_spec</i> | Specifies file patterns and class assignment. This option will automatically place files in the desired class as soon as they are created. Existing files and newly created files will be moved immediately to the class specified. |
| -f <i>pattern_file</i> | Specifies a file that contains a particular class and pattern. New files with this pattern will be placed in the class immediately. Existing files will be moved as well.                                                           |
| -E                     | Specifies that existing files should be moved to the designated class in a one-time move to be scheduled at a later time, such as the sweeptime specified in the <code>dbdst_admin</code> command.                                  |

**To create a preset policy**

- ◆ Use the `dbdst_preset_policy` command as follows:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_preset_policy -S $ORACLE_SID -d directory \
-P pattern_spec
```

**For example:**

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbdst_preset_policy -S FLAS10r2 -d /snap_data10r2 \
/FLAS10r2 -P "PRIMARY=*.dbf:MEDIUM=*.log"
```

```
Assign placement policy file successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
Begin enforcing filesystem /snap_data10r2 ...
```

```
Enforce placement policy successful on filesystem /snap_data10r2
```

## Recreating Quick I/O files using `qio_recreate`

You can use the `qio_recreate` command to automatically recreate Quick I/O files when the database is recovered.

Before converting files to Quick I/O, the following conditions must be met:

- |               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Prerequisites | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To use this command for Oracle, the <code>ORACLE_SID</code> environment variable must be set.</li><li>■ You may be logged in as either the database administrator or root.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Usage notes   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The command expects to find a file named in the directory where the command is run. The <code>mkqio.dat</code> file contains a list of the Quick I/O files used by the database and their sizes. If the file is not in the directory, you will be prompted to create it using <code>.</code></li><li>■ The <code>qio_recreate</code> command supports conventional Quick I/O files only (that is, Quick I/O files in the following form: <code>file --&gt; .file::cdev:vxfs:</code>). In creating a Quick I/O file, the <code>qio_convertdbfiles</code> command renames the regular VxFS file, <code>file</code>, to <code>.file</code> with the Quick I/O extension (<code>:cdev:vxfs:</code>) and creates a symbolic link to it. By default, the symbolic link uses a relative path name.</li><li>■ There are no options for the <code>qio_recreate</code> command and no output is returned when the command runs successfully.</li><li>■ See the <code>qio_recreate(1M)</code> manual page for more information.</li></ul> |

The `qio_recreate` command follows these rules in recreating Quick I/O files when a database is recovered:

- If a Quick I/O file (`.file::cdev:vxfs:`) is missing, then `qio_recreate` recreates it.
- If both a symbolic link (`file`) and its associated Quick I/O file (`.file::cdev:vxfs:`) are missing, `qio_recreate` recreates both the symbolic link and the Quick I/O file.
- If a symbolic link (`file`) from a regular VxFS file to its associated Quick I/O file (`.file::cdev:vxfs:`) is missing, then `qio_recreate` recreates the symbolic link.
- If a Quick I/O file (`.file::cdev:vxfs:`) is missing and the regular VxFS file that is symbolically linked to it is not the same one that originally created it, then `qio_recreate` issues a warning message and does not recreate the Quick I/O file.
- If a Quick I/O file (`.file::cdev: vxfs:`) is smaller than the size listed in `mkqio.dat`, `qio_recreate` issues a warning message.

**To automatically recreate Quick I/O files when the database is recovered**

- ◆ Use the `qio_recreate` command as follows:

```
/opt/VRTSdbed/bin/qio_recreate -T ora
```





# Using third-party software to back up files

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [About backing up and restoring Quick I/O files using Oracle RMAN](#)
- [About backing up and restoring Oracle Disk Manager files using Oracle RMAN](#)
- [About backing up and restoring Quick I/O files using Legato NetWorker](#)
- [About using backup software other than Veritas NetBackup to back up and restore ODM files](#)

## About backing up and restoring Quick I/O files using Oracle RMAN

Quick I/O files are treated as raw devices by Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN) and must be backed up and restored the same way as raw devices. A Quick I/O file consists of two components: a regular file with space allocated to it and a link pointing to the Quick I/O interface for the file.

When a Quick I/O file is created with the `qiomkfile` command, the regular file with the preallocated space is a hidden file. For example, `dbfile` points to `.dbfile::cdev:vxfs:` and `.dbfile` is the hidden file with the space allocated. (These names are used in the examples throughout this section.)

For backup, RMAN reads the Oracle datafile using the Quick I/O interface, but does not process or store the special link between the hidden file with the allocated space (`.dbfile`) and the link to its Quick I/O interface (`dbfile`, which points to `.dbfile::cdev:vxfs:`). This has implications for the restore operation, as described in the rest of this section.

Because Quick I/O files are treated as raw devices, the Quick I/O file must exist and have the necessary space preallocated to it before the file is restored using RMAN. Space can be preallocated to the file when the file is created using the `qiomkfile` command. In this case, the file can be restored using RMAN with no other special handling, and the file can be accessed after the restore as a Quick I/O file:

- If both the Quick I/O link name and the hidden file are missing, use `qiomkfile` to preallocate and set up the Quick I/O file.
- If either the Quick I/O link name or the hidden file alone exist, delete these files and recreate the Quick I/O file of the required size using `qiomkfile`.
- If both the Quick I/O link name and the hidden file are intact, you may proceed to restoring the file.
- If you attempt to restore a Quick I/O file and the original is smaller than the required size, the restore will fail with an Oracle error `ORA-27069 (I/O attempt beyond the range of the file)`. The failure results because Quick I/O does not allow extending writes (in other words, attempts to increase the size of a file by writing beyond the end of the file). This same behavior is encountered when attempting to restore Oracle datafiles built on raw devices. If the restore fails with the above error, delete the Quick I/O link and its hidden file, then recreate or extend the file using `qiomkfile`.

---

**Note:** The space needed for the Oracle datafile is the size of the datafile plus one Oracle block (as specified by the `init.ora` parameter, `db_block_size`).

---

## About backing up and restoring Oracle Disk Manager files using Oracle RMAN

Oracle allocates Oracle Disk Manager files with contiguous extent layouts for good database performance. When you restore database files they are allocated using these extent attributes. If you are using Oracle RMAN's conventional backup method with any backup software, datafiles are also restored with the proper extent layouts.

If you are using RMAN's "proxy copy" backup method with a backup software other than NetBackup, the extent attributes may not be backed up. To ensure the restored datafiles have proper extent layouts, preallocate the lost datafiles using the `odmmkfile` command. This command preallocates contiguous space for files prior to restoring them.

See the `odmmkfile(1)` manual page.

To preallocate an Oracle datafile with size 100M, assuming the Oracle database block size is 8K, use the `odmmkfile` command and enter:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/odmmkfile -h 8k -s 100m filename
```

## About backing up and restoring Quick I/O files using Legato NetWorker

When Quick I/O files are created using the command `qiomkfile`, a hidden file with storage space allocated to it and a link are created. The link points to the Quick I/O interface of the hidden file. Using `qiomkfile` ensures that the space for the file is allocated in a contiguous manner, which typically improves performance.

Legato NetWorker does not follow symbolic links during backups because doing so would result in the data getting backed up twice: once using the symbolic link and once as the file itself. As a result, Quick I/O files must be backed up as two separate files and restored accordingly.

Because Legato NetWorker deletes and recreates files before they are restored, the restored files lose their contiguous allocation and could be restored as fragmented files with indirect extents. While this does not impact the integrity of the data being restored, it can degrade performance. Creating the file using `qiomkfile` before doing the backup does not resolve this problem because NetWorker deletes and recreates the file.

To avoid this potential performance degradation, Quick I/O files must be backed up and restored using the same methods used to back up and restore raw devices. This method involves using the NetWorker `rawasm` command to back up or `save` directories containing Quick I/O files. Because of the way the `rawasm` command works, NetWorker follows the Quick I/O symbolic link to back up the actual data in the hidden file. Skip the hidden file to avoid backing up the data twice. During restore, NetWorker looks at the attributes of the saved file and restores it using `rawasm`, bypassing the file deletion and recreation steps.

For example, to view all files in the `db01` directory:

```
$ ls -al /db01

total 2192

drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 96 Oct 20 17:39 .
drwxr-xr-x 9 root root 8192 Oct 20 17:39 ..
```

**About using backup software other than Veritas NetBackup to back up and restore ODM files**

```
-rw-r--r-- 1 oracle dba 1048576 Oct 20 17:39 .dbfile
lrwxrwxrwx 1 oracle dba 22 Oct 20 17:39 dbfile ->\
.dbfile::cdev:vxfs:
```

The command for backing up the /db01 directory using `rawasm` would look like:

```
<< /db01 >>
rawasm: dbfile
skip: .dbfile
```

To restore the file, preallocate the Quick I/O file using the `qiomkfile` command and enter:

```
$ cd /db01
$ recover -a /db01/dbfile
```

## About using backup software other than Veritas NetBackup to back up and restore ODM files

If you are using backup software other than Veritas NetBackup, ensure that it can back up and restore VxFS extent attributes. This is important because restored Oracle Disk Manager (ODM) files rely on proper extent layouts for best performance.

# Veritas Database FlashSnap status information

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Database FlashSnap snapshot status and database status](#)

## Database FlashSnap snapshot status and database status

The Veritas Database FlashSnap functionality provides both snapshot status information and snapshot database status information for various stages of snapplan and snapshot procedures. You can view the status information through the CLI and through the GUI.

For more information about Database FlashSnap GUI functionality, see the *Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle Graphical User Interface Guide*.

You can obtain both the snapshot status and the database status from the command line using the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command with the `-o list` option. The snapshot status and database status information may also appear in error messages.

### Snapshot status details

To view snapshot status information from the command line, use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command with the `-o list` option to list all available snapplans for a specified database. Snapshot status information is displayed in the command output under the column heading `SNAP_STATUS`.

[Table C-1](#) shows detailed information about each snapshot status (`SNAP_STATUS`) value.

**Table C-1** Snapshot status values

| SNAP_STATUS                                                                | Completed operations                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Allowed operations                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| init_full                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmchecksnap -o validate (successful)</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o resync (successful)</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_commit (successful)</code></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                               |
| init_db                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmchecksnap -o validate -f <i>snapplan</i> (failed)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that your storage configuration has been set up correctly.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                  |
| snapshot_start                                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot (failed)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Contact your system administrator for help. Use Veritas Volume Manager commands to resynchronize the snapshot volumes, and use <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot -F</code> to force snapshot creation.</li> </ul> |
| snapshot_end                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot (successful)</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_abort (successful)</code></li> </ul>                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o resync</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_begin</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o mount   mountdb   recoverdb</code></li> </ul>                               |
| snapshot_vol_start<br>snapshot_vol_end<br>resync_dg_start<br>resync_dg_end | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot (failed)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Re-run <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                        |
| resync_vol_start<br>resync_vol_end<br>snapshot_dg_start<br>snapshot_dg_end | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o resync (failed)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Re-run <code>dbed_vmsnap -o resync</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                          |
| resync_start                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o resync (failed)</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Contact your system administrator for help. Use Veritas Volume Manager commands to resynchronize the snapshot volumes, and use <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot -F</code> to force snapshot creation.</li> </ul> |

**Table C-1** Snapshot status values (*continued*)

| <b>SNAP_STATUS</b>          | <b>Completed operations</b>                        | <b>Allowed operations</b>                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| reverse_resync_begin_start  | ■ dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_begin (failed)     | ■ Contact Veritas support.                                                                                                                 |
| reverse_resync_begin_end    | ■ dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_begin (successful) | ■ dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_abort<br>■ dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_commit                                                            |
| reverse_resync_abort_end    | ■ dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_abort (successful) | ■ dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_begin<br>dbed_vmsnap -o resync<br>■ dbed_vmclonedb -o restartdb (with DB_STATUS set to database_recovered) |
| reverse_resync_commit_start | ■ dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_commit (failed)    | ■ Contact Veritas support.                                                                                                                 |
| mount_start                 | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o mount (failed)                 | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o umount                                                                                                                 |
| mount_end                   | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o mount (successful)             | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o umount                                                                                                                 |
| restartdb_start             | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o restartdb (failed)             | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o umount<br>■ Start the snapshot database manually.                                                                      |
| restartdb_end               | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o restartdb (successful)         | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o umount                                                                                                                 |
| mountdb_start               | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o mountdb (failed)               | ■ Recover the snapshot database manually, then run dbed_vmclonedb -o update_status                                                         |
| mountdb_end                 | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o mountdb (successful)           | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o update_status<br>■ dbed_vmclonedb -o umount                                                                            |
| recoverdb_start             | ■ dbed_vmclonedb -o recoverdb (failed)             | ■ Recover the snapshot database manually, then run dbed_vmclonedb -o update_status<br>■ dbed_vmclonedb -o umount                           |

**Table C-1** Snapshot status values (*continued*)

| SNAP_STATUS   | Completed operations                                                                                      | Allowed operations                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| recoverdb_end | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o recoverdb</code> (successful)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o umount</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                              |
| umount_start  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o umount</code> (failed)</li> </ul>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Verify that your file system(s) are not busy and retry the command.</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                                         |
| umount_end    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o umount</code> (successful)</li> </ul>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o mount</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o restartdb</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o resync</code></li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_begin</code></li> </ul> |

## Database status details

To view snapshot status information from the command line, use the `dbed_vmchecksnap` command with the `-o list` option to list all available snapplans for a specified database. Database status information is displayed in the command output under the column heading `DB_STATUS`.

[Table C-2](#) shows detailed information about each database status (`DB_STATUS`) value.

**Table C-2** Database status values

| DB_STATUS          | Completed operations                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| init               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmchecksnap -o validate</code> (successful)</li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o snapshot</code> (successful)</li> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmsnap -o reverse_resync_begin</code> (successful)</li> </ul> |
| database_recovered | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>dbed_vmclonedb -o recoverdb</code> (successful)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                        |



# Glossary

|                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>address-length pair</b>                  | Identifies the starting block address and the length of an extent (in file system or logical blocks).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>archived log mode</b>                    | Used to retrieve information on transactions that occur during a hot backup.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>asynchronous I/O</b>                     | A format of I/O that performs non-blocking reads and writes. This enables the system to handle multiple I/O requests simultaneously.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>atomic operation</b>                     | An operation that either succeeds completely or fails and leaves everything as it was before the operation was started. If the operation succeeds, all aspects of the operation take effect at once and the intermediate states of change are invisible. If any aspect of the operation fails, then the operation aborts without leaving partial changes.       |
| <b>autoextend</b>                           | An Oracle feature that automatically grows a database file by a prespecified size, up to a prespecified maximum size.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>backup mode</b>                          | A state of the Oracle tablespace that lets you perform online backup.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Block-Level Incremental (BLI) Backup</b> | A method used to back up only changed data blocks, not changed files, since the last backup.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>block map</b>                            | A file system is divided into fixed-size blocks when it is created. As data is written to a file, unused blocks are allocated in ranges of blocks, called extents. The extents are listed or pointed to from the inode. The term used for the data that represents how to translate an offset in a file to a file system block is the “block map” for the file. |
| <b>boot disk</b>                            | A disk used for booting an operating system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>buffered I/O</b>                         | A mode of I/O operation (where I/O is any operation, program, or device that transfers data to or from a computer) that first transfers data into the Operating System buffer cache.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>cache</b>                                | Any memory used to reduce the time required to respond to an I/O request. The read cache holds data in anticipation that it will be requested by a client. The write cache holds data written until it can be safely stored on non-volatile storage media.                                                                                                      |
| <b>Cached Quick I/O</b>                     | Cached Quick I/O allows databases to make more efficient use of large system memory while still maintaining the performance benefits of Quick I/O. Cached Quick I/O provides an efficient, selective buffering mechanism to complement asynchronous I/O.                                                                                                        |

|                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>cluster</b>                      | A set of hosts that share a set of disks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>cluster-shareable disk group</b> | A disk group in which the disks are shared between more than one host.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>cold backup</b>                  | The process of backing up a database that is not in active use.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>command launcher</b>             | A graphical user interface (GUI) window that displays a list of tasks that can be performed by Veritas Volume Manager or other objects. Each task is listed with the object type, task (action), and a description of the task. A task is launched by clicking on the task in the Command Launcher. concatenation A Veritas Volume Manager layout style characterized by subdisks that are arranged sequentially and contiguously.                       |
| <b>concurrent I/O</b>               | A form of Direct I/O that does not require file-level write locks when writing to a file. Concurrent I/O allows the relational database management system (RDBMS) to write to a given file concurrently.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>configuration database</b>       | A set of records containing detailed information on existing Veritas Volume Manager objects (such as disk and volume attributes). A single copy of a configuration database is called a configuration copy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>control file</b>                 | An Oracle control file specifies the physical structure of an Oracle database, including such things as the database name, names and locations of the datafiles and redo log files, and the timestamp of when the database was created. When you start an Oracle database, the control file is used to identify the database instance name redo log files that must be opened for transaction recording and recovery and datafiles where data is stored. |
| <b>copy-on-write</b>                | <p>A technique for preserving the original of some data. As data is modified by a write operation, the original copy of data is copied.</p> <p>Applicable to Storage Checkpoint technology, where original data, at the time of the Storage Checkpoint, must be copied from the file system to the Storage Checkpoint when it is to be overwritten. This preserves the frozen image of the file system in the Storage Checkpoint.</p>                    |
| <b>data block</b>                   | A logical database data storage unit. Blocks contain the actual data. When a database is created, a data block size is specified. The database then uses and allocates database space in data blocks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>data change object (DCO)</b>     | A Veritas Volume Manager object used to manage FastResync map information in the DCO log volume. A DCO and a DCO log volume must be associated with a volume in order to implement persistent FastResync on that volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Data Storage Checkpoint</b>      | A Storage Checkpoint that is a complete image of a file system. For more information, see "Storage Checkpoint."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>database</b>                     | A database is a collection of information that is organized in a structured fashion. Two examples of databases are Relational Databases (such as Oracle, Sybase, or                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

DB2), where data is stored in tables and generally accessed by one or more keys and Flat File Databases, where data is not generally broken up into tables and relationships. Databases generally provide tools and/or interfaces to retrieve data.

|                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>datafile</b>                 | A physical database attribute that contains database data. An Oracle datafile can only be associated with a single database. One or more datafiles form a logical database storage unit called a tablespace.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>DCO</b>                      | See "data change object (DCO)."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>DCO log volume</b>           | A volume used to hold persistent FastResync change maps.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Decision Support Systems</b> | Decision Support Systems (DSS) are computer-based systems used to model, identify, and solve problems, and make decisions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>defragmentation</b>          | The act of reorganizing data to reduce fragmentation. Data in file systems become fragmented over time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>device file</b>              | A block- or character-special file located in the /dev directory representing a device.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>device name</b>              | The name of a device file, which represents a device. AIX syntax is Disk_#; HP-UX syntax is c#t#d#; Linux syntax is sda, where "a" could be any alphabetical letter; Solaris syntax is c#t#d#s#.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>direct I/O</b>               | An unbuffered form of I/O that bypasses the kernel's buffering of data. With direct I/O, data is transferred directly between the disk and the user application.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Dirty Region Logging</b>     | The procedure by which the Veritas Volume Manager monitors and logs modifications to a plex. A bitmap of changed regions is kept in an associated subdisk called a log subdisk.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>disk access name</b>         | The name used to access a physical disk, such as Disk_1 on an AIX system, c1t1d1 on an HP-UX system, sda on a Linux system, or c0t0d0s0 on a Solaris system. The term device name can also be used to refer to the disk access name.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>disk array</b>               | A collection of disks logically and physically arranged into an object. Arrays provide benefits including data redundancy and improved performance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>disk cache</b>               | A section of RAM that provides a cache between the disk and the application. Disk cache enables the computer to operate faster. Because retrieving data from hard disk can be slow, a disk caching program helps solve this problem by placing recently accessed data in the disk cache. Next time that data is needed, it may already be available in the disk cache; otherwise a time-consuming operation to the hard disk is necessary. |
| <b>disk group</b>               | A collection of disks that share a common configuration.<br><br>A disk group configuration is a set of records containing detailed information on existing Veritas Volume Manager objects (such as disk and volume attributes) and their relationships. Each disk group has an administrator-assigned name and an                                                                                                                          |

|                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                             | internally defined unique ID. The root disk group (rootdg) is a special private disk group                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>disk name</b>            | A Veritas Volume Manager logical or administrative name chosen for the disk, such as disk03. The term disk media name is also used to refer to the disk name.                                                                                                      |
| <b>DMP</b>                  | See “Dynamic Multipathing.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>DSS</b>                  | See “Decision Support Systems.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Dynamic Multipathing</b> | Dynamic Multipathing (DMP) is a Veritas Volume Manager feature that allows the use of multiple paths to the same storage device for load balancing and redundancy.                                                                                                 |
| <b>error handling</b>       | Routines in a program that respond to errors. The measurement of quality in error handling is based on how the system informs the user of such conditions and what alternatives it provides for dealing with them.                                                 |
| <b>evacuate</b>             | Moving subdisks from the source disks to target disks.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>exabyte</b>              | A measure of memory or storage. An exabyte is approximately 1,000,000,000,000,000 bytes (technically 2 to the 60th power, or 1,152,921,504,606,846,976 bytes). Also EB.                                                                                            |
| <b>extent</b>               | A logical database attribute that defines a group of contiguous file system data blocks that are treated as a unit. An extent is defined by a starting block and a length.                                                                                         |
| <b>extent attributes</b>    | The extent allocation policies associated with a file and/or file system. For example, see “address-length pair.”                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>failover</b>             | The act of moving a service from a failure state back to a running/available state. Services are generally applications running on machines and failover is the process of restarting these applications on a second system when the first has suffered a failure. |
| <b>file system</b>          | A collection of files organized together into a structure. File systems are based on a hierarchical structure consisting of directories and files.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>file system block</b>    | The fundamental minimum size of allocation in a file system.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>fileset</b>              | A collection of files within a file system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>fixed extent size</b>    | An extent attribute associated with overriding the default allocation policy of the file system.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>fragmentation</b>        | Storage of data in non-contiguous areas on disk. As files are updated, new data is stored in available free space, which may not be contiguous. Fragmented files cause extra read/write head movement, slowing disk accesses.                                      |
| <b>free space</b>           | An area of a disk under Veritas Volume Manager control that is not allocated to any subdisk or reserved for use by any other VxVM object.                                                                                                                          |

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>gigabyte</b>               | A measure of memory or storage. A gigabyte is approximately 1,000,000,000 bytes (technically, 2 to the 30th power, or 1,073,741,824 bytes). Also GB, Gbyte, and G-byte.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>HFS</b>                    | High Performance File System. The HP-UX name for the file system derived from the 4.2 Berkeley Fast File System.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>high availability (HA)</b> | The ability of a system to perform its function continuously (without significant interruption) for a significantly longer period of time than the combined reliabilities of its individual components. High availability is most often achieved through failure tolerance and inclusion of redundancy; from redundant disk to systems, networks, and entire sites.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>hot backup</b>             | The process of backing up a database that is online and in active use.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>hot pluggable</b>          | To pull a component out of a system and plug in a new one while the power is still on and the unit is still operating. Redundant systems can be designed to swap disk drives, circuit boards, power supplies, CPUs, or virtually anything else that is duplexed within the computer. Also known as hot swappable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>inode list</b>             | An inode is an on-disk data structure in the file system that defines everything about the file, except its name. Inodes contain information such as user and group ownership, access mode (permissions), access time, file size, file type, and the block map for the data contents of the file. Each inode is identified by a unique inode number in the file system where it resides. The inode number is used to find the inode in the inode list for the file system. The inode list is a series of inodes. There is one inode in the list for every file in the file system. |
| <b>instance</b>               | When you start a database, a system global area (SGA) is allocated and the Oracle processes are started. The SGA is the area of memory used for database information shared by all database users. The Oracle processes and the SGA create what is called an Oracle instance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>intent logging</b>         | A logging scheme that records pending changes to a file system structure. These changes are recorded in an intent log.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>interrupt key</b>          | A way to end or break out of any operation and return to the system prompt by pressing Ctrl-C.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>JFS</b>                    | Journalized File System, the HP-UX name for a light version of the Veritas File System that includes only the journaling feature.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>kilobyte</b>               | A measure of memory or storage. A kilobyte is approximately a thousand bytes (technically, 2 to the 10th power, or 1,024 bytes). Also KB, Kbyte, kbyte, and K-byte.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>large file</b>             | A file more than two gigabytes in size. An operating system that uses a 32-bit signed integer to address file contents will not support large files; however, the Version 4 disk layout feature of VxFS supports file sizes of up to two terabytes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>large file system</b>   | A file system more than two gigabytes in size. VxFS, in conjunction with VxVM, supports large file systems.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>latency</b>             | The amount of time it takes for a given piece of work to be completed. For file systems, this typically refers to the amount of time it takes a given file system operation to return to the user. Also commonly used to describe disk seek times.                                                                                |
| <b>load balancing</b>      | The tuning of a computer system, network tuning, or disk subsystem in order to more evenly distribute the data and/or processing across available resources. For example, in clustering, load balancing might distribute the incoming transactions evenly to all servers, or it might redirect them to the next available server. |
| <b>load sharing</b>        | The division of a task among several components without any attempt to equalize each component's share of the load. When several components are load sharing, it is possible for some of the shared components to be operating at full capacity and limiting performance, while others components are under utilized.             |
| <b>Logical Unit Number</b> | A method of expanding the number of SCSI devices that can be placed on one SCSI bus. Logical Unit Numbers address up to seven devices at each SCSI ID on an 8-bit bus or up to 15 devices at each ID on a 16-bit bus.                                                                                                             |
| <b>logical volume</b>      | See "volume."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>LUN</b>                 | See "Logical Unit Number."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>master node</b>         | A computer which controls another computer or a peripheral.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>megabyte</b>            | A measure of memory or storage. A megabyte is approximately 1,000,000 bytes (technically, 2 to the 20th power, or 1,048,576 bytes). Also MB, Mbyte, mbyte, and K-byte.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>metadata</b>            | Data that describes other data. Data dictionaries and repositories are examples of metadata. The term may also refer to any file or database that holds information about another database's structure, attributes, processing, or changes.                                                                                       |
| <b>mirror</b>              | A duplicate copy of a volume and the data therein (in the form of an ordered collection of subdisks). Each mirror is one copy of the volume with which the mirror is associated. The terms mirror and plex can be used synonymously.                                                                                              |
| <b>mirroring</b>           | A layout technique that mirrors the contents of a volume onto multiple plexes. Each plex duplicates the data stored on the volume, but the plexes themselves may have different layouts.                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>mount point</b>         | The directory path name at which a file system attaches to the file system hierarchy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>multithreaded</b>       | Having multiple concurrent or pseudo-concurrent execution sequences. Used to describe processes in computer systems. Multithreaded processes are one means by which I/O request-intensive applications can use independent access to volumes and disk arrays to increase I/O performance.                                         |

|                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>NBU</b>                           | See “Veritas NetBackup (NBU).”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>node</b>                          | One of the hosts in a cluster.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>object (VxVM)</b>                 | An entity that is defined to and recognized internally by the Veritas Volume Manager. The VxVM objects include volumes, plexes, subdisks, disks, and disk groups. There are two types of VxVM disk objects—one for the physical aspect of the disk and the other for the logical aspect of the disk.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>OLTP</b>                          | See “Online Transaction Processing.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>online administration</b>         | An administrative feature that allows configuration changes without system or database down time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>OnlineJFS</b>                     | The HP-UX name for the advanced Online Journalled File System, the full-featured version of the Veritas File System.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Online Transaction Processing</b> | A type of system designed to support transaction-oriented applications. OLTP systems are designed to respond immediately to user requests and each request is considered to be a single transaction. Requests can involve adding, retrieving, updating or removing data.                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>paging</b>                        | The transfer of program segments (pages) into and out of memory. Although paging is the primary mechanism for virtual memory, excessive paging is not desirable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>parity</b>                        | A calculated value that can be used to reconstruct data after a failure. While data is being written to a RAID-5 volume, parity is also calculated by performing an exclusive OR (XOR) procedure on data. The resulting parity is then written to the volume. If a portion of a RAID-5 volume fails, the data that was on that portion of the failed volume can be recreated from the remaining data and the parity. |
| <b>partition</b>                     | The logical areas into which a disk is divided.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>persistence</b>                   | Information or state that will survive a system reboot or crash.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>petabyte</b>                      | A measure of memory or storage. A petabyte is approximately 1,000 terabytes (technically, 2 to the 50th power).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>plex</b>                          | A duplicate copy of a volume and its data (in the form of an ordered collection of subdisks). Each plex is one copy of a volume with which the plex is associated. The terms mirror and plex can be used synonymously.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>preallocation</b>                 | Prespecifying space for a file so that disk blocks will physically be part of a file before they are needed. Enabling an application to preallocate space for a file guarantees that a specified amount of space will be available for that file, even if the file system is otherwise out of space.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Quick I/O</b>                     | Quick I/O presents a regular Veritas File System file to an application as a raw character device. This allows Quick I/O files to take advantage of asynchronous                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

I/O and direct I/O to and from the disk device, as well as bypassing the UNIX single-writer lock behavior for most file system files.

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Quick I/O file</b>      | A regular UNIX file that is accessed using the Quick I/O naming extension (::cdev:vxfs:).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>RAID</b>                | A Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) is a disk array set up with part of the combined storage capacity used for storing duplicate information about the data stored in that array. This makes it possible to regenerate the data if a disk failure occurs.                                                                                   |
| <b>recovery mode</b>       | The process of recovering the file systems once the file systems have been restored. In a media failure scenario, the backups must be restored before the database can be recovered.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>redo log files</b>      | Redo log files record transactions pending on a database. If a failure prevents data from being permanently written to datafiles, changes can be obtained from the redo log files. Every Oracle database has a set of two or more redo log files.                                                                                                     |
| <b>repository</b>          | <p>A repository holds the name, type, range of values, source, and authorization for access for each data element in a database. The database maintains a repository for administrative and reporting use.</p> <p>Pertinent information, needed to display configuration information and interact with the database, is stored in the repository.</p> |
| <b>root disk</b>           | The disk containing the root file system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>root disk group</b>     | A special private disk group on the system. The root disk group is named rootdg. However, starting with the 4.1 release of Veritas Volume Manager, the root disk group is no longer needed.                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>root file system</b>    | The initial file system mounted as part of the UNIX kernel startup sequence.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>script</b>              | A file, containing one or more commands that can be run to perform processing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>shared disk group</b>   | A disk group in which the disks are shared by multiple hosts (also referred to as a cluster-shareable disk group).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>sector</b>              | <p>A minimal unit of the disk partitioning. The size of a sector can vary between systems.</p> <p>A sector is commonly 1024 bytes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>segment</b>             | Any partition, reserved area, partial component, or piece of a larger structure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>SGA</b>                 | See "System Global Area."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>single threading</b>    | The processing of one transaction to completion before starting the next.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>slave node</b>          | A node that is not designated as a master node.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>snapped file system</b> | A file system whose exact image has been used to create a snapshot file system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |



|                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>snapped volume</b>       | A volume whose exact image has been used to create a snapshot volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>snapshot</b>             | A point-in-time image of a volume or file system that can be used as a backup.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>snapshot file system</b> | An exact copy of a mounted file system, at a specific point in time, that is used for online backup. A snapshot file system is not persistent and it will not survive a crash or reboot of the system.                                                                                            |
| <b>snapshot volume</b>      | An exact copy of a volume, at a specific point in time. The snapshot is created based on disk mirroring and is used for online backup purposes.                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>spanning</b>             | A layout technique that permits a volume (and its file system or database) too large to fit on a single disk to distribute its data across multiple disks or volumes.                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Storage Checkpoint</b>   | An efficient snapshot technology for creating a point-in-time image of a currently mounted VxFS file system. A Storage Checkpoint presents a consistent, point-in-time view of the file system by identifying and maintaining modified file system blocks.                                        |
| <b>storage class</b>        | Set of volumes with the same volume tag.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Storage Rollback</b>     | On-disk restore capability for faster recovery from logical errors, such as accidentally deleting a file. Because each Storage Checkpoint is a point-in-time image of a file system, Storage Rollback simply restores or rolls back a file or entire file system to a Storage Checkpoint.         |
| <b>stripe</b>               | A set of stripe units that occupy the same positions across a series of columns in a multi-disk layout.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>stripe unit</b>          | Equally sized areas that are allocated alternately on the subdisks (within columns) of each striped plex. In an array, this is a set of logically contiguous blocks that exist on each disk before allocations are made from the next disk in the array.                                          |
| <b>stripe unit size</b>     | The size of each stripe unit. The default stripe unit size for VxVM is 32 sectors (16K). For RAID 0 stripping, the stripe unit size is 128 sectors (64K). For VxVM RAID 5, the stripe unit size is 32 sectors (16K). A stripe unit size has also historically been referred to as a stripe width. |
| <b>striping</b>             | A layout technique that spreads data across several physical disks using stripes. The data is allocated alternately to the stripes within the subdisks of each plex.                                                                                                                              |
| <b>subdisk</b>              | A consecutive set of contiguous disk blocks that form a logical disk segment. Subdisks can be associated with plexes to form volumes.                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>superuser</b>            | A user with unlimited access privileges who can perform any and all operations on a computer. In UNIX, this user may also be referred to as the “root” user. On Windows/NT, it is the “Administrator.”                                                                                            |
| <b>System Global Area</b>   | The area of memory used for database information shared by all database users. Each SGA contains the data and control information for a single Oracle instance.                                                                                                                                   |

|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>tablespace</b>                                | In an Oracle database, an allocation of space used to hold schema objects (triggers, stored procedures, tables, etc.). A tablespace is associated with one or more datafiles.                                                                                        |
| <b>terabyte</b>                                  | A measure of memory or storage. A terabyte is approximately 1,000,000,000,000 bytes (technically, 2 to the 40th power, or 1,000 GB). Also TB.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>throughput</b>                                | A measure of work accomplished in a given amount of time. For file systems, this typically refers to the number of I/O operations in a given period of time.                                                                                                         |
| <b>unbuffered I/O</b>                            | I/O that bypasses the file system cache for the purpose of increasing I/O performance (also known as direct I/O).                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Veritas Enterprise Administrator</b>          | Application that is required to access graphical user interface (GUI) functionality.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager</b> | A feature of Veritas Storage Foundation for Oracle that lets Oracle create and manage database storage, as well as performing I/Os in a file system without the performance degradation typically associated with running databases on file systems.                 |
| <b>Veritas NetBackup (NBU)</b>                   | A product that lets you back up, archive, and restore files, directories, or raw partitions that reside on your client system.                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR)</b>           | A feature of Veritas Volume Manager, VVR is a data replication tool designed to contribute to an effective disaster recovery plan.                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>volume</b>                                    | A logical disk device that appears to applications, databases, and file systems as a physical disk partition. A logical disk can encompass multiple or one to many physical volumes.                                                                                 |
| <b>volume layout</b>                             | A variety of layouts that allows you to configure your database to meet performance and availability requirements. This includes spanning, striping (RAID-0), mirroring (RAID-1), mirrored stripe volumes (RAID-0+1), striped mirror volumes (RAID-1+0), and RAID 5. |
| <b>volume manager objects</b>                    | Volumes and their virtual components. See “object (VxVM).”                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>VVR</b>                                       | See “Veritas Volume Replicator (VVR).”                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>vxfs or VxFS</b>                              | The acronym for Veritas File System.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>vxvm or VxVM</b>                              | The acronym for Veritas Volume Manager.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

# Index

## Symbols

/etc/vx/vxdba/logs/ckptplan.log 210

## A

- absolute path names
  - using with Quick I/O 87
- absolute pathnames
  - use with symbolic links 84
- accessing
  - Quick I/O files with symbolic links 84
- allocating
  - memory to buffer cache 313
- allocating file space 80
- ALTER DATABASE 175
- analyzing I/O statistics 109
- ARCHIVELOG mode 163
- archiving
  - using NetBackup 42
- asyncdsk 315
- asyncdsk\_included 315
- asynchronous I/O 76
- autoextend
  - using with Quick I/O files 97
- automatic backups 42
- availability
  - using mirroring for 25

## B

- backing up
  - using NetBackup 42
  - using Storage Checkpoints 163
  - using Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback 149
- backing up a database 274
- balancing I/O load 310
- benefits of Concurrent I/O 116
- benefits of Quick I/O 76
- BLI Backup. *See* Block-Level Incremental Backup
- Block-Level Incremental Backup
  - overview 43

buffer cache 313

## C

- cache advisory
  - checking setting for 114
- cache hit ratio
  - calculating 110
- Cached Quick I/O
  - caching statistics 308
  - customizing 111
  - determining files to use 108
  - disabling individual files 111
  - enabling individual files 112
  - making settings persistent 112
  - overview 32
  - prerequisite for enabling 104
- calculating cache hit ratio 110
- Capacity Planning
  - creating schedules 212
  - dbed\_ckptplan command 342
  - displaying schedules 215
  - displaying space usage 216
  - log file 210, 218
  - managing 342
  - overview 210
  - removing schedules 219
  - starting 211
- changing file sizes 80
- Checkpoints . *See* Storage Checkpoints
- chgrp command 82
- chmod command
  - commands
    - chmod 104
- chown command 82
  - commands
    - chown 104
- clone databases
  - creating 170, 278, 343, 363
  - restarting 285
  - shutting down 284, 363
  - unmounting file systems 284

- clone databases, creating 170, 278, 343, 363
- cloning a database. *See* clone databases
- Cluster Volume Manager 31
- collecting I/O statistics 108
- command line interface 317
- commands 135
  - chgrp 82
  - chown 82
  - cron 210
  - dbed\_analyzer 140, 320
  - dbed\_checkconfig 318, 322
  - dbed\_ckptcreate 318, 328
  - dbed\_ckptdisplay 318, 331
  - dbed\_ckptmount 318
  - dbed\_ckptplan 342
  - dbed\_ckptquota 318
  - dbed\_ckptremove 319, 342
  - dbed\_ckptrollback 318–319, 340
  - dbed\_ckptumount 319, 334
  - dbed\_clonedb 170, 319, 343
  - dbed\_saveconfig 318, 326
  - dbed\_update 318, 321
  - dbed\_vmchecksnap 319, 347, 356, 358
  - dbed\_vmclonedb 320, 363
  - dbed\_vmsnap 320, 358
  - edgetmsg2 320
  - fsadm 34, 64
  - fsadm command 95
  - fstyp 43
  - grep 106
  - ls 93
  - mkfs 35, 57–58
  - mount 35, 58, 78
  - overview 317
  - qio\_convertdbfiles 85, 89, 319
  - qio\_getdbfiles 85, 88, 319
  - qio\_recreate 319, 371, 390
  - qioadmin 111
  - qiomkfile 94, 96–97, 395
  - qiostat 108, 308–309
  - setext 82
  - umount 60
  - vxstorage\_stats 320, 373
  - vxtunefs 113, 313
  - vxupgrade 180
- concatenation 23–24
- Concurrent I/O
  - benefits 116
  - disabling 118

- Concurrent I/O (*continued*)
  - enabling 117
- configuration environment
  - checking 322
- control files
  - Oracle recovery 175
- converting
  - Quick I/O files back to regular files Quick I/O
    - converting back to regular files 87
  - regular files to Quick I/O files 89
- converting LVM volumes 177
- CREADS 110
- creating
  - a volume 53
  - Capacity Planning schedules 212
  - Quick I/O files 81
  - Storage Checkpoints 41
  - symbolic links to access Quick I/O files 79
- creating a snapplan 253
- cron 302, 329
  - scheduling Storage Checkpoints 330
- cron command 210
- crontab file 330
- cross-platform data sharing 34
- customizing Cached Quick I/O 111

## D

- data change object 29
- data redundancy 25
- data warehousing 26
- database
  - specifying type for Quick I/O 87
  - tuning 312
- Database Dynamic Storage Tiering
  - using 41
- Database FlashSnap
  - applications 225
  - backing up
    - databases 274
  - cloning a database 278
  - commands 227
  - copying a snapplan 267
  - creating a snapplan 253
  - creating a snapshot 270
  - creating a snapshot mirror 232
  - dbed\_vmchecksnap 253, 263, 267
  - dbed\_vmclonedb 274
  - dbed\_vmsnap 270, 287
  - dbed\_vmsnap -o resync 290

- Database FlashSnap *(continued)*
  - displaying a snapplan 267
  - host and storage requirements 231
  - options 228
  - Oracle RAC configuration 230
  - overview 38, 224, 249
  - planning considerations 229
  - removing a snapplan 267
  - removing a snapshot volume 292
  - removing a snapshot volumesnapshot volumes
    - removing 292
  - resynchronizing 290
  - reverse resynchronizing 287
  - selecting the snapshot mode 229
  - setting up hosts 229
  - single-host configuration 230
  - two-host configuration 230
  - upgrading from Veritas Database Edition 3.5 for Oracle 248
  - validating a snapplan 263
- database performance
  - using Quick I/O 76
- database snapshots
  - creating 270
- databases
  - backing up using BLI Backup 43
  - managing the state of 41
  - resynchronizing to a snapshot 287
- DB\_BLOCK\_SIZE 313
- DB\_FILE\_MULTIBLOCK\_READ\_COUNT 313
- dbed\_analyzer command 140, 320
- dbed\_checkconfig command 318, 322
- dbed\_ckptcreate command 318, 328
- dbed\_ckptdisplay command 318, 331
- dbed\_ckptmount command 318
- dbed\_ckptplan command 342
- dbed\_ckptquota command 318
- dbed\_ckptremove command 319, 342
- dbed\_ckptrollback command 318–319, 340
- dbed\_ckptumount command 319, 334
- dbed\_clonedb command 170, 319, 343
- dbed\_saveconfig command 326
- dbed\_update command 318, 321
- dbed\_vmchecksnap command 253, 263, 267, 319, 347, 356, 358
- dbed\_vmclonedb command 274, 278, 320, 363
- dbed\_vmsnap -o resync command 290
- dbed\_vmsnap command 270, 287, 320, 358
  - o reverse\_resync\_abort 289
- dbed\_vmsnap command *(continued)*
  - o reverse\_resync\_begin 288
  - o reverse\_resync\_commit 289
- DBWR processes 312
- DCO 29
  - log volume 29
- defragmentation 34
  - extent 302
  - scheduling 302
  - utility 34
- determining
  - if Quick I/O installed and enabled 94
- device interface 30
- direct I/O 77, 312
- direct-write
  - copy-behind 103
- Dirty Region Logging 26
- dirty region logging 27, 52
- dirty volumes 26
- disabling Cached Quick I/O for a file 111
- disabling Concurrent I/O 118
- disabling qio\_cache\_enable flag 105
- disabling Quick I/O 99
- discovered\_direct\_iosize tunable parameter 304
- disk arrays 23
  - DMP-supported 30
- disk group
  - naming a disk group 48
- disk groups
  - about 23
  - adding disks 50
  - configuration guidelines 47
  - creating
    - using the command line 49
  - defined 23
  - split and join 29
- disk space allocation 33
- disks
  - adding to a disk group 50
  - failure and hot-relocation 29
- displaying
  - Capacity Planning schedules 215
  - database 41
  - datafile 41
  - file system and Oracle space usage statistics 42
  - file system information 41
  - file system space usage 216
  - Storage Checkpoint space usage 216
  - Storage Checkpoints 41

- displaying (*continued*)
  - tablespace 41
- DMP 30
- DMP-supported disk arrays 30
- double buffering 77, 102
- DRL 26, 52. *See* Dirty Region Logging
- dropping temporary tablespaces 92
- DSS workloads
  - guidelines 53
- dynamic LUN expansion 30
- Dynamic Multipathing 30

**E**

- edgetmsg2 command 320
- enabling
  - Quick I/O 78
- enabling Cached Quick I/O for a file 112
- enabling Concurrent I/O 117
- enabling `qio_cache_enable` flag 105
- eqmemsize 315
- examining system configuration 42
- examining volumes 42
- excessive reads or writes 310
- exclusive OR 25
- expansion
  - file system 302
- extending a file 80
- extending Quick I/O files 94
- extent-based allocation 33
- extracting file list for Quick I/O conversion 88

**F**

- fast file system 33
- fast recovery 52
- FastResync
  - non-persistent 28
  - persistent 28
  - use with snapshots 28
- FastReysnc 28
- file
  - space allocation 80
- file fragmentation
  - reporting on 87
- file system locking 77
- file systems
  - configuration guidelines 55
  - growing to accommodate Quick I/O files 94
  - increasing the size 64

- file systems (*continued*)
  - mounting 59
  - overview 31
  - requirements 43
  - resizing 34, 64
  - running databases on 32
  - unmounting 60
- fragmentation 34, 61
  - controlling 61
  - monitoring 62, 302
  - reorganization facilities 302
  - reporting 302
  - types 61
- fragmented file system
  - characteristics 302
- free space 29, 302
  - monitoring 301–302
- fsadm
  - reporting extent fragmentation 303
  - scheduling 303
- fsadm command 34, 64, 95
  - largefiles option 58
- fsadm utility 34, 65
- fsapadm command 58
- fstyp command 43
- fsvoladm command 58
- full backups 42

**G**

- grep command 106
- growing
  - file systems 94
  - Quick I/O files 94
- guidelines
  - creating file systems 55
  - disk groups 47
  - for DSS workloads 53
  - for OLTP workloads 52
  - striped volumes 52
  - volumes 52

**H**

- High Availability (HA)
  - overview 20
- hot-relocation 29

**I**

## I/O

- asynchronous 76
- Cached Quick I/O 32, 39
- direct 77
- displaying Storage Mapping statistics 137
- kernel asynchronous 76
- load balancing 310
- mapping and statistics 373
- performance data 309
- Quick I/O 32
- sequential 33
- statistics
  - obtaining 300
- improving
  - database performance 76
- incremental backups 42
- initial\_extent\_size tunable parameter 305

**K**

- kernel asynchronous I/O 76
- kernel write locks 77

**L**

- large file systems 35
  - support for 58
- large files
  - enabling 58
  - support for 35, 58
- largefiles option 58
- Legato NetWorker 395
- license requirements 43
- list file for Quick I/O conversion 88
- log file
  - for Capacity Planning 210, 218
- LOG\_ARCHIVE\_DEST 175
- ls command 93
- LVM volumes 177

**M**

- managing
  - database state 41
  - Storage Checkpoints 41
  - volume and file movement 41
- max\_async\_ports 315
- max\_buf\_data\_size tunable parameter 305
- max\_direct\_iosize tunable parameter 305
- max\_direct\_iosz 313

- max\_diskq tunable parameter 305
- max\_seqio\_extent\_size tunable parameter 306
- max\_thread\_proc 301, 315
- maxuproc 315
- media recovery 175
- memory
  - persistence of FastResync in 28
- mirrored volume snapshots 28
- mirrored-stripe volumes 25
- mirroring 20, 24
  - choosing 52
  - defined 25
- mirroring and striping data 25
- mkfs command 35, 57–58
- mkqio.dat file 88–90, 100
- mkqio.sh script options
  - create extra links in SAP 87
- monitoring fragmentation 302
- mount command 35, 58, 78
- mounting
  - file systems 35
  - Storage Checkpoints 41
- mounting file systems 59
- moving hot files or busy file systems 310
- multi-volume support 35, 58
  - fsvoladm command 58
- mutli-volume support
  - fsapadm command 58

**N**

- naming convention
  - for Quick I/O files 78
- NetBackup
  - overview 42
- NetBackup BLI Extension
  - overview 43
- NetWorker 395
- nolargefiles option 35, 58
- non-persistent FastResync 28
- nproc 315

**O**

- OLTP. *See* online transaction processing
- OLTP workloads
  - guidelines 52
- OMF 122
  - working with Oracle Disk Manager 123
- online relayout 26

- online transaction processing 25, 78
- options
  - largefiles and nolargefiles 35
- Oracle
  - autoextend feature 97
  - media recovery 175
  - recovery 174
  - Recovery Manager (RMAN) 393
- Oracle configuration environment
  - saving 326
- Oracle datafile header size 80
- Oracle Disk Manager 119
  - benefits 120
  - converting Quick I/O files 129
  - disabling 132
  - migrating files to 129
  - preparing existing databases for use with 128
  - restoring files using NetBackup 297, 394
  - setting up 125
- Oracle Enterprise Manager 147
- Oracle Managed Files 122
  - working with Oracle Disk Manager 123
- Oracle tempfiles
  - recreating 285
- overview
  - of Quick I/O 32

## P

- parallel data transfer
  - using striping for 24
- PARALLEL\_MAX\_SERVERS 312
- PARALLEL\_MIN\_SERVERS 312
- parameters
  - default 303
  - tunable 303
  - tuning 303
- parity 25
- performance
  - obtaining statistics for volumes 300
  - RAID-5 25
  - tuning
    - for databases 312
- performance data
  - using 309
- performance tuning
  - list of guides 299
- persistence
  - for Cached Quick I/O settings 112
- persistent FastResync 28

- persistent snapshot 35
- planning space for Storage Checkpoints 210
- PREADs 110
- preallocating space for Quick I/O files 78, 82

## Q

- qio\_cache\_enable flag
  - disabling 105
  - enabling 105
- qio\_cache\_enable tunable parameter 306
- qio\_convertdbfiles command 85, 89, 319
- qio\_getdbfiles command 85, 88, 319
- qio\_recreate command 319, 371, 390
- qioadmin command 111
- qiomkfile command 94, 96–97, 395
  - options for creating files
    - symbolic links 79
- qiostat
  - output of 109
- qiostat command 108, 308–309
- Quick I/O
  - accessing regular VxFS files as 83
  - benefits 76
  - converting files to 89
  - converting files to Oracle Disk Manager 129
  - determining file fragmentation before
    - converting 87
  - determining status 94
  - disabling 99
  - enabling 78
  - extending files 94
  - extending files with autoextend 97
  - extracting file list for conversion 88
  - improving database performance with 76
  - list file for conversion 88
  - naming convention for files 78
  - overview 32
  - performance improvements 103
  - performance tuning for 315
  - preallocating space for files 78, 82
  - recreating files 371, 390
  - requirements 77
  - showing resolution to a raw device 94
  - using relative and absolute pathnames 84
- quotas 36

## R

- RAID 23



- RAID-0 24
- RAID-0+1 25
- RAID-1 24–25
- RAID-1+0 25
- RAID-5 25, 52
  - choosing 52
  - performance 52
- RAID-5 log 52
- raw devices
  - running databases on 32
- rawasm directive 395
- read-ahead algorithm
  - for Cached Quick I/O 103
- read\_nstream 313
- read\_nstream tunable parameter 304
- read\_pref\_io 313
- read\_pref\_io tunable parameter 303
- recovering
  - using Storage Checkpoints 163
- recreating
  - data using RAID-5 25
- recreating temporary tablespaces 92
- redo logs 43
  - configuration guidelines 56
  - creating a file system 56
  - for Oracle recovery 175
- relative pathnames
  - use with symbolic links 84
- relayout 26
- reliability
  - using mirroring for 25
- removing
  - Capacity Planning schedules 219
  - non-VxFS files from mkqio.dat file 89
  - Storage Checkpoints 41
- removing non-VxFS files from mkqio.dat 86
- removing snapshot volumes 292
- report
  - extent fragmentation 302
- requirements
  - file systems 43
  - license 43
- requirements of Quick I/O 77
- resizing a file 80
- resizing file systems 64
- resizing utility 34
- restoring
  - using NetBackup 42

- restoring (*continued*)
  - using Storage Checkpoints and Storage Rollback 149
- resynchronization
  - using DRL logs 52
  - using RAID-5 logs 52
- resynchronizing
  - volumes 26
- resynchronizing a snapshot 290
- reverse resynchronizing 287
- RMAN 393
- Rollback. *See* Storage Rollback

## S

- scheduling Storage Checkpoints 330
- SCSI devices 30
- selecting volume layouts 51
- semnmi 315
- semnms 316
- sequential I/O
  - using extent-based allocation 33
- sequential read/writes
  - using spanning for 24
- sequential scans 312
- setext command 82
- settings
  - making Cached Quick I/O persistent 105
- SGA. *See* System Global Area
- showing
  - Quick I/O file resolved to raw device 94
- single-threaded sequential scans 312
- SmartSync Recovery Accelerator 27
- snapplans
  - copying 267
  - creating 253, 347, 356, 358
  - displaying 267
  - removing 267, 358
  - validating 263, 347, 356, 358
  - viewing 357
- snapshot volume sets
  - creating
    - using the command line 237
- snapshot volumes
  - backing up a database 274
  - creating
    - using the command line 234
  - mounting 277
  - removing 292
  - resynchronizing 290

- snapshots
    - aborting resynchronization 362
    - aborting reverse resynchronization 362
    - and FastResync 28
    - committing reverse resynchronization
      - changes 363
    - creating 270, 358, 360
    - resynchronizing 358, 361
    - reverse resynchronizing 358, 362
  - SORT\_AREA\_SIZE 312
  - space usage
    - displaying statistics and monitoring 42
  - spanning 20, 23
    - defined 24
  - spare disks 29
  - sparse files 86, 90–91
  - starting
    - Capacity Planning utility 211
  - statistics
    - volume I/O 300
  - Storage Checkpoint Capacity Planning. *See* Capacity Planning
  - Storage Checkpoints 149–150
    - backing up and recovering 163
    - creating 328
    - defined 35
    - displaying 331
    - displaying space usage 216
    - file system restores 36
    - managing 41
    - operations 176
    - overview 35
    - performance 153
    - planning space for 210
    - removing 342
    - scheduling 330
    - space requirements 151
    - unmounting 334
    - verifying 164
  - Storage Expert 30
  - Storage Mapping
    - dbed\_analyzer command 140
    - displaying I/O statistics 137
    - displaying information 136
    - displaying information for a list of
      - tablespaces 141
    - enabling Oracle file mapping 145
    - mapping components 143
    - Oracle Enterprise Manager 147
    - Storage Mapping (*continued*)
      - Oracle file mapping 142
      - verifying Oracle file mapping setup 144
      - verifying setup 134
      - views 143, 146
      - vxstorage\_stats 135
    - Storage Mapping, overview 37
    - Storage Rollback 149–150, 340
      - datafiles 42
      - defined 36
      - guidelines for recovery 175
      - of databases 42
      - overview 35
      - tablespaces 42
    - stripe unit sizes
      - choosing 51
    - stripe units 24
    - striped volumes 52
      - configuration guidelines 52
    - striping 20, 24
      - defined 24
    - striping and mirroring data 25
    - support for large files 35
    - symbolic links
      - advantages and disadvantages 83
      - to access Quick I/O files 84
    - system buffer cache 103
    - system configuration
      - examining 42
    - system global area (SGA) 312
- T**
- tablespaces
    - dropping and recreating 92
    - temporary 86, 91
  - temporary tablespaces 86, 91
  - tunable I/O parameters 303
    - discovered\_direct\_iosize 304
    - initial\_extent\_size 305
    - max\_buf\_data\_size 305
    - max\_direct\_iosize 305
    - max\_diskq 305
    - max\_seqio\_extent\_size 306
    - qio\_cache\_enable 306
    - read\_nstream 304
    - read\_pref\_io 303
    - write\_nstream 304
    - write\_pref\_io 304
    - write\_throttle 307

- tunefstab file
  - adding tuning parameters to 106
- Tuning
  - file I/O statistics 308
  - VxFS 301
  - VxFS I/O parameters 303
- tuning
  - for database performance 312
  - vxfs 301
  - VxVM 299
- tuning I/O parameters 303
- tuning parameters
  - adding to tunefstab file 106

**U**

- umount command 60
- unattended backups 42
- unmounting
  - a file system 60
  - Storage Checkpoints 41
- unmounting file systems 60
- upgrade
  - from raw devices 129, 180
  - from UFS 178
- upgrading
  - from earlier VxFS layout versions 179
  - from UFS 179
- using Database Dynamic Storage Tiering 41
- using performance data 309
- utilities. *See* commands
  - fsadm 34, 65
  - See also* commands
  - online administration 33
  - vxvmconvert 177

**V**

- V\$ARCHIVE\_DEST 175
- V\$ARCHIVED\_LOG 175
- V\$LOG\_HISTORY 175
- V\$RECOVERY\_LOG 175
- validating a snapplan 263
- verifying caching using vxfstune parameters 106
- verifying vxtunefs system parameters 106
- Veritas extension for Oracle Disk Manager
  - overview 39
- Veritas FastResync. *See* FastResync
- Veritas File System
  - cluster functionality 37

- Veritas File System *(continued)*
  - cross-platfrom data sharing 34
  - defragmentation utility 34
  - fast file system 33
  - multi-volume support 35
  - online administration utilities 33
  - overview 31
  - quotas 36
  - resizing utility 34
  - support for large file systems 35
- Veritas Storage Foundation
  - license 43
- Veritas Volume Manager 20
  - and RAID 23
  - objects 22
  - overview 20
- Veritas Volume Replicator 31
- volume layouts 23
  - changing 26
  - concatenation 23
  - mirrored-stripe 25
  - mirroring 24
  - RAID-5 25
  - selecting 51
  - spanning 23
  - striping 24
- volume resynchronization 26
- volume snapshots. *See* snapshots
- volumes
  - about 22
  - configuration guidelines 52
  - creating 53
    - using the command line 54
  - definition 22
  - examining 42
  - layouts 23
  - marked as dirty 26
  - obtaining performance statistics 300
  - resynchronizing 26
- vxassist
  - used to remove DCOs from volumes 244
- VxFS
  - performance tuning 312
  - resizing utility 34
  - tuning 301
- VxFS.. *See* Veritas File System
- vxstat
  - used to obtain volume performance statistics 300

- vxstorage\_stat command 135
- vxstorage\_stats 135
- vxstorage\_stats command 320, 373
- vxtunefs command 113, 313
  - commands
    - vxtunefs 106–107
- vxupgrade command 180
- VxVM . *See* Veritas Volume Manager
  - overview 20
  - tuning 299
- vxvmconvert 177

## **W**

- workloads
  - write-intensive 52
- write\_nstream tunable parameter 304
- write\_pref\_io tunable parameter 304
- write\_throttle tunable parameter 307

## **X**

- XOR . *See* exclusive OR